A REFERENCE MANUAL

PORTUGUESE

SHEILA R. ACKERLIND AND REBECCA JONES-KELLOGG

PORTUGUESE

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PORTUGUESE: A REFERENCE MANUAL

Sheila R. Ackerlind

Rebecca Jones-Kellogg

University of Texas Press
Austin

For reasons of economy and speed, this volume has been printed from camera-ready copy furnished by the authors.

© 2011 by University of Texas Press
All rights reserved
Printed in the United States of America
First edition, 2011

Requests for permission to reproduce material from this work should be sent to:

Permissions
University of Texas Press
P.O. Box 7819
Austin, TX 78713-7819

www.utexas.edu/utpress/about/bpermission.html

♾ The paper used in this book meets the minimum requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48–1992 (R1997) (Permanence of Paper).

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Portuguese : a reference manual / Sheila R. Ackerlind, Rebecca Jones-Kellogg.
p. cm.
Text in English and Portuguese.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-0-292-72663-5 (cloth : alk. paper) —ISBN 978-0-292-72673-4 (pbk. : alk. paper)—ISBN 978-0-292-73495-1 (E-book)
1. Portuguese language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. 2. Portuguese language—Grammar I. Ackerlind, Sheila II. Jones-Kellogg, Rebecca. III. Title.
PC5075.E5A35 2011
469.82'421—dc22 2010048762

Dedicated to the memory of

Frederick C. H. Garcia

who taught Portuguese at the U.S. Military Academy (West Point)
from 1959 until his untimely death in 1984

Dr. Garcia's ***A Handbook of Portuguese Grammar***
helped countless cadets to understand the complexities of Portuguese and
inspired the authors to write ***Portuguese**: **A Reference Manual***.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CONTENTS

The Portuguese-Speaking World. xi
Preface and Acknowledgments xiii
Abbreviations, Symbols, and Diacritical Marks xvii
Phonetic Symbols xviii
Linguistic and Grammatical Terms in English and Portuguese xx
Definitions of Linguistic and Grammatical Terms xxv
Orthographic Reforms xxxii
Sound System 1
- Oral Vowels 2
- Oral Diphthongs 4
- Nasal Vowels 5
- Nasal Diphthongs 6
- Portuguese and Corresponding Spanish Vowels and Diphthongs 7
- Consonants 8

Writing System and Accentuation 11
- Alphabet 12
- Letters Used to Transcribe Portuguese Sounds 16
- Capitalization 20
- Punctuation Marks and Commonly Used Typographic Symbols 21
- Diacritical Marks 22
- Syllables and Word Division 24
- Stress and Accentuation 25
  - Words Stressed on the Second-to-Last Syllable (Proparoxytones) 26
  - Words Stressed on the Next-to-Last Syllable (Paroxytones) 27
  - Words Stressed on the Last Syllable (Oxytones) 28

Portuguese, Spanish, and English Cognates 29
- Cognates 30
- Portuguese and Corresponding Spanish and English Sounds and Letters 31
- Portuguese and Corresponding Spanish Sounds and Letters 37
- Portuguese and Corresponding Spanish and English Prefixes 39
- Portuguese and Corresponding Spanish and English Suffixes 40
- Differences in Stress between Portuguese and Spanish Cognates 48
- True, Partial, and False Cognates 49

Grammatical Categories 53
- Articles
  - Definite and Indefinite Articles 54
  - Contractions of Prepositions with Articles 56
- Nouns and Adjectives
  - Adjectives 57
  - Plural of Nouns and Adjectives 58
  - Gender of Nouns and Adjectives 62
  - Differences in Gender between Portuguese and Spanish Noun Cognates 67
  - Placement of Adjectives with Nouns 68
  - Diminutives and Augmentatives 69

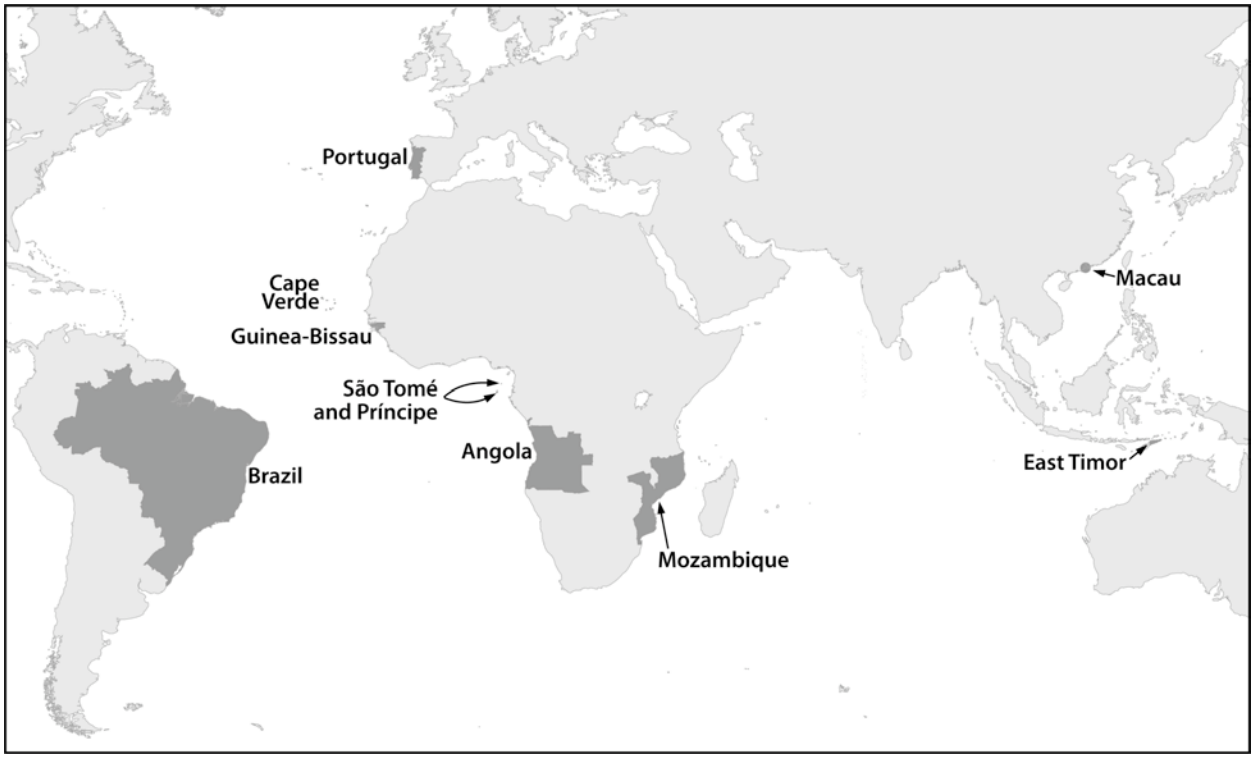
Numbers and Numerals 71
Adverbs 75
Comparatives and Superlatives
Comparisons of Equality 77
Comparisons of Superiority and Inferiority 78
Relative Superlatives 81
Absolute Superlatives 82
Personal Pronouns 84
Subject Pronouns 85
Forms of Address 88
Prepositional Pronouns and Contractions with Prepositions 89
Direct Object Pronouns 90
Indirect Object Pronouns 91
Placement of Object Pronouns 92
Reflexive Pronouns and Verbs 95
Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns 100
Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns 103
Contractions of Prepositions with Demonstratives 106
Relative Words 107
Interrogative Words 113
Affirmative, Negative, and Indefinite Words 117
Prepositions 124
Verbs and Corresponding Prepositions 129
Conjunctions 132
Verbs 135
Impersonal and Personal Infinitive 137
Past Participle and Compound Tenses and Forms 143
Passive Voice 148
Indicative Mood 151
Present Tense
Forms 152
Uses 160
Present Perfect Tense 161
Imperfect (Preterite Imperfect) Tense
Forms 162
Uses 164
Preterite (Preterite Perfect) Tense
Forms 166
Uses 169
Preterite versus Imperfect 170
Simple and Compound Past Perfect (Pluperfect) Tense 172
Future Tense 175
Future Perfect Tense 178
Conditional Tense 179
Conditional Perfect Tense 183

Subjunctive Mood 184
Present Tense 186
Present Perfect Tense 190
Past (Imperfect) Tense 191
Past Perfect (Pluperfect) Tense 193
Future Tense 194
Future Perfect Tense 196
Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses 197
Subjunctive in Noun Clauses 197
Subjunctive in Adjective Clauses 201
Subjunctive in Adverb Clauses 203
Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences 207
Subjunctive in Common Expressions 209
Present Participle and Progressive Tenses and Forms 210
Imperative Mood 214
Impersonal Verbs and Expressions 220
Verbs That Take an Indirect Object without a Direct Object 221
Ser versus *Estar* 222
Ficar 226
Ter and *Haver* 227
Haver and *Fazer* in Expressions of Time 229
Acabar 232
Saber versus *Conhecer* 233

Verb and Other Grammar Charts 235
Regular Verbs: Derivation of Tenses and Forms 237
Regular Verbs 238
Irregular Verbs 240
Verb Tenses and Forms 248
Present Indicative 249
Imperfect (Preterite Imperfect) Indicative 254
Preterite (Preterite Perfect) Indicative 255
Simple Past Perfect (Pluperfect) Indicative 257
Future Indicative 258
Conditional 259
Present Subjunctive 260
Past (Imperfect) Subjunctive 262
Future Subjunctive 263
Personal Infinitive 264
Past Participle 265
Compound Tenses 268
Present Participle and Progressive Tenses 269
Imperative (Command Forms) 270
Verbs and Expressions That Require the Subjunctive 272

Personal Pronouns and Possessives 275
Contractions of Direct with Indirect Object Pronouns 276
Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns, and Contractions 277
Contractions of Prepositions 278
Relative Words 279
Interrogative Words 280
Affirmative and Negative Words 281
Indefinite Words 282
Irregular Comparatives and Relative Superlatives 284
"Synthetic" Absolute Superlative Adjectives 285
Adverbs and Adverb Phrases 289
Prepositions 297
Verb List 301
Works Consulted
Reference Works 318
Textbooks 320
Index of Topics 321
Index of Portuguese Words and Phrases 329

THE PORTUGUESE-SPEAKING WORLD



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Portuguese: A Reference Manual is designed to be a comprehensive guide for students and instructors of the language, culture, and literature of the Portuguese-speaking world, as well as for specialists in other languages who are interested in learning more about the Portuguese language. It was originally written for university-level students of Portuguese to complement the few Portuguese-language textbooks available and to supplement the phonetic and grammatical explanations that those textbooks offered. In recent years, interest in learning Portuguese has steadily increased and has led to the publication of new textbooks that emphasize the global nature of the language. This reference manual complements these textbooks as well by reflecting the Portuguese language as it is currently taught at both the undergraduate and graduate levels. It provides detailed explanations of the sound and writing systems as well as the grammar of the principal Portuguese dialects. It also incorporates the new *Orthographic Accord* (in effect since 2009–2010), which attempts to standardize Portuguese orthography.

Portuguese is classified as a Romance language because it derives from Latin, the language of Rome. Following the Roman conquest of the Iberian Peninsula in 218 B.C., Latin gradually evolved into Galician-Portuguese, a language spoken in the Roman provinces of Gallaecia (the present-day Spanish region of Galicia) and northwestern Lusitania (present-day Portugal). "Lusitania" has come to be synonymous with "Portugal," and its root word *luso* has traditionally signified "Portuguese-speaking" or "related to Portuguese," as in "Lusophone." Over time, Galician and Portuguese developed into separate dialects. Galician would remain in Galicia, and Portuguese would extend southward to become the language of all Portugal. During the Age of Discoveries, fifteenth- and sixteenth-century Portuguese explorers and settlers spread their language, culture, and religion to Africa, South America, and Asia. Although the influence of the Portuguese empire waned in the following centuries, the Portuguese language has continued to thrive; Portuguese is, in fact, the second most spoken Romance language in the world today, after Spanish.

Portuguese is currently the official language of eight countries on four continents—Portugal, Brazil, Cape Verde, Guinea-Bissau, Angola, São Tomé and Príncipe, Mozambique, and East Timor—as well as the co-official language of Macau. These eight countries are also referred to as the CPLP (Comunidade dos Países de Língua Portuguesa), or Community of Portuguese-Language Countries. An estimated 250 million people in these countries are native speakers of Portuguese, which is also spoken by several million Portuguese, Brazilians, and Africans living in immigrant communities throughout the world. Despite the variations in pronunciation, vocabulary, and grammar which have developed in each country and community, the Portuguese language continues to unify diverse countries and peoples. The increasing number of students who study Portuguese at U.S. universities each year attests to the growing importance of the language, the countries in which it is spoken, and their vibrant culture and literature.

Recent worldwide interest in the Portuguese-speaking world has also been sparked by prestigious awards granted to three Portuguese speakers: the Nobel Prize for literature in 1998 to the Portuguese author José Saramago (1922–2010), and the Nobel Peace Prize in 1996 to José Ramos Horta (1949–) and Carlos Filipe Ximenes Belo (1948–) for their efforts on behalf of East Timorese independence.

Portuguese

There are two principal dialects of Portuguese: European Portuguese (EP), spoken in Portugal, Lusophone Africa, and East Timor; and Brazilian Portuguese (BP), spoken in Brazil by the vast majority of Portuguese speakers worldwide. The Portuguese spoken in Brazil, Lusophone Africa, and East Timor has been influenced to varying degrees by indigenous languages. To complicate Portuguese dialectology further, pronunciation and even grammar often differ among and within regions of Portugal and especially of Brazil. Although dialectal and subdialectal variations abound in Portuguese, we have endeavored to employ "standard" Portuguese throughout this manual. We define the official standard *(padrão)* of Portuguese as the form of the language that is generally acknowledged as the model for the speech and writing of literate speakers; standard Portuguese is understood by all native speakers, is taught in Lusophone universities, and is the form of the language presented in traditional Portuguese-language textbooks for non-native speakers. Because standard Portuguese unifies countries and peoples, learning standard Portuguese enables a non-native speaker to communicate effectively in any Portuguese-speaking country or community.

Although we use standard Portuguese grammar in the examples, we also address frequently used variations of "colloquial" Portuguese, a term that we define as informal, unmonitored speech and written communication (email, blogs, etc.) in which content matters more than correct form. We occasionally footnote the term *nonstandard* Portuguese when we refer to those usages of slang and colloquial speech that do not follow traditional grammar rules and are considered incorrect in standard Portuguese. We caution the reader about using colloquialisms before learning their nuances, however, since colloquialisms uttered by a non-native speaker might seem strange, inappropriate, or even offensive to a native speaker; in addition, a native speaker of one Portuguese dialect might misunderstand a colloquialism of another dialect.

We define the term *formal* Portuguese as monitored speech and texts in which both content and correct form are important and expected by the listener or reader (communiqués, reports, scholarly articles and books, etc.). We occasionally use the term *literary* to refer to classical written works, which tend to have a more formal structure, and *archaic* to refer to those elements of Portuguese that are no longer used in either formal or colloquial Portuguese but that appear in literary texts written from the Middle Ages to the nineteenth century. In order to assist students to read these texts, this manual includes archaic forms, which are often excluded from Portuguese textbooks (and even grammars of modern Portuguese) because they are not frequently used in colloquial Brazilian Portuguese. By becoming familiar with more formal and even archaic Portuguese, students will be able to recognize the structures that native speakers recognize as a result of having heard them in formal speeches and read them in literary works.

In accordance with the general tendency of Portuguese-language instruction in the United States since the end of World War II, we give preference to Brazilian vocabulary and grammar when European Portuguese variants occur. However, our intent is not to focus entirely on Brazilian Portuguese—which other books have already done—but also to incorporate variants of the language that are often found in Portugal, and consequently, in Lusophone African countries. By including these variants, we hope to provide a more complete description of the Portuguese language. Newer textbooks of Portuguese are likewise addressing non-Brazilian as well as Brazilian Portuguese, and this trend is common in postgraduate Portuguese studies.

We begin the manual with an explanation of the various abbreviations and symbols used throughout the book so that readers can become familiar with the terminology before encountering it in a particular section. Most of our phonetic symbols adhere to the International Phonetic Alphabet; the minor variations are intended to simplify an alphabet that might otherwise be confusing to nonlinguists. In addition to defining the linguistic and grammatical terms that we use, we provide a list of linguistic and grammatical terms in English and Portuguese so that readers will better understand the Portuguese terminology that their textbooks occasionally use. We have simplified the terminology used in the manual without excluding any information necessary for beginning-level learners to understand a particular concept. We use technical terminology only when necessary, and in those cases we provide definitions and/or explanations. In the last part of the front section, we outline the principal changes in Portuguese orthography as codified in the recent *Orthographic Accord;* by implementing these changes, readers will be able to write Portuguese in its most up-to-date form.

Since we expect that the Portuguese-language learners who use this book will generally have an English and/or Spanish language background, we employ the methodology of contrastive analysis, which we have found essential in teaching a foreign language to learners who already speak a sister language (in this case, Spanish) or a cousin language (English). By comparing and contrasting Portuguese patterns with those found in Spanish and English, we address a range of issues that students may encounter while learning Portuguese.

The "Sound System" section provides a description of the most common sounds found in Brazilian and European Portuguese, sounds that all Portuguese speakers recognize regardless of their dialect; consequently, a learner could emulate these sounds without risk of being misunderstood in either dialect. We have chosen not to focus exclusively on the sounds of either Brazilian or European Portuguese, nor do we attempt to give their subdialectal variations, which books specifically written about dialectology have effectively done. We do pay special attention to nasal vowels and diphthongs, which are a distinctive feature of Portuguese pronunciation.

The "Writing System and Accentuation" section begins with a description of the letters used to transcribe Portuguese sounds. Once we identify the sound or sounds associated with each individual letter, we compare and contrast the Portuguese letters or letter sequences with those used in Spanish and English. After describing Portuguese punctuation and diacritical marks, we discuss the Portuguese system of written accentuation, which differs considerably from the Spanish system.

The "Cognates" section shows how to recognize and form cognates by learning and applying the patterns that correspond between Portuguese, Spanish, and English; students who learn and apply these patterns can dramatically and easily increase their vocabulary. The chapter on true, partial, and false cognates gives advanced-level students the opportunity to see how or why they might be cross-contaminating Portuguese with Spanish and/or English.

The greater part of this manual is devoted to grammar. We address the grammatical topics found in current Portuguese textbooks, and we endeavor to provide cohesive and concise explanations that address the issues associated with these topics. Since we consider Portuguese a single language, with dialectal variants that learners should recognize, we emphasize the commonalities

of Portuguese grammar. When a European Portuguese variant occurs, we adhere to Brazilian Portuguese usage, but we clearly state the variant either in a footnote or in parentheses. We do make the assumption—admittedly problematic—that European variants tend to apply to the Portuguese spoken in Lusophone Africa.

Throughout this manual, in both the text and the footnotes, we offer explanations of issues commonly discussed in the language classroom. They include (a) Portuguese phonetics, word formation, and grammar; (b) comparative/contrastive Portuguese, Spanish, and English phonetics, word formation, and grammar; and (c) Portuguese etymology and historical linguistics. Numerous "Notes to Spanish Speakers" are included to highlight significant differences between Portuguese structures and their Spanish counterparts. Also included are details on historical linguistics, which we have found through classroom experience especially useful for learners who have studied Latin or another Romance language and who have questions concerning the evolution of Portuguese (and Spanish) from Latin.

Since this manual is intended for beginning as well as advanced learners of Portuguese, we provide extensive verb charts to complement material found in most textbooks. The charts are arranged not only by verb but also by verb tense, and they should be especially useful for beginning-level students, who must often understand the patterns of a tense before they are able to apply them to a particular verb. These charts can serve equally well as a reference tool for instructors. We also include other grammar charts (on pronouns, adverbs, prepositions, etc.), as well as a list of all verbs used or mentioned in the text, footnotes, and charts—including certain rather obscure verbs that exemplify rare or archaic grammatical points.

For readers who would like to continue their studies by specializing in one particular dialect of Portuguese, we provide at the end of the book a list of reference works.

We would like to thank our colleagues in the Department of Foreign Languages at the United States Military Academy (West Point)—in particular, the Portuguese Section—for their support and collegiality. We are grateful to the following current and former Brazilian exchange officers assigned to West Point for their invaluable help in proofreading the manuscript: Maj. Gen. Floriano Peixoto Vieira Neto, Maj. Gen. Luiz Guilherme Paul Cruz, and Lt. Col. Fernando Civolani Lopes. We are also grateful to two former visiting professors at the Academy, John B. Jensen (Florida International University) and Antônio R. M. Simões (Kansas University), for their insightful and constructive comments. We also extend our thanks to Geri Smith (French Section) and Laura Vidler (Spanish Section) for their encouragement and assistance during the revision process. We would like to thank the University of Texas Press for its dedication to publishing monographs in the field of foreign languages, Jim Burr (Humanities Editor) and Victoria Davis (Manuscript Editor) for their professionalism and promptness in responding to myriad questions, and Sheila Berg for her thoroughness in copy-editing the manuscript.

It is our hope that this manual will be a useful reference tool to readers who are learning the Portuguese language and mastering its complexities.

SRA and RJK
15 August 2010

ABBREVIATIONS, SYMBOLS, AND DIACRITICAL MARKS

ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
aff.	affirmative
BP	Brazilian Portuguese
cat.	category
conj.	conjugation(s)
def.	definite
demonstr.	demonstrative
dir.	direct
Eng.	English
EP	European Portuguese
f / fem.	feminine
gram.	grammatical
indef.	indefinite
indic.	indicative
indir.	indirect
interrog.	interrogative
invar.	invariable
irreg.	irregular
lett.	letter(s)
m / masc.	masculine
math.	mathematical
neg.	negative
obj.	object
orth.	orthographic
part.	participle
pers.	person
plur.	plural
Port.	Portuguese
prep.	preposition / prepositional
pres.	present
pron.	pronoun
refl.	reflexive
reg.	regular
sing.	singular
snd.	sound(s)
Sp.	Spanish
subj.	subject // subjunctive
sym.	symbol
var.	variable
vs.	versus

NONPHONETIC SYMBOLS

=	to be identical / equivalent to
<	to develop / derive from
>	to develop into / change (in)to / become

DIACRITICAL (= ACCENT) MARKS

´	(**á**)	acute accent
¸	(**ç**)	cedilla
ˆ	(**â**)	circumflex
¨	(**ü**)	dieresis (no longer used in Portuguese)
`	(**à**)	grave accent
˜	(**ã**)	tilde

(See pp. 22–23 for details on how these marks are used.)

PHONETIC SYMBOLS[1]

	SYMBOL	EXAMPLES	
VOWELS			
ORAL	[**a**]	*gato / sofá // lava* (BP)	
	[ɐ][2]	*lava // -amos* (EP)	
	[ɨ]	*bebe / beber* (EP)	
	[**i**]	*fica / rubi // bebe* (BP)	
	[**e**]	*bebo / sê / você*	(closed *e*)
	[ɛ]	*bebe / Sé / pé*	(open *e*)
	[ɔ]	*roda / pode / avó*	(open *o*)
	[**o**]	*rodo / pôde / avô*	(closed *o*)
	[**u**]	*lua / peru / lavo*	
NASAL	[ɐ̃]	*irmã / samba / canta*	
	[**ĩ**]	*jardim / pinto*	
	[**ẽ**]	*lembro / mente*	
	[**õ**]	*marrom / ponto*	
	[**ũ**]	*algum / fundo*	
SEMIVOWELS[3]			
ORAL	[ⁱ]	*pai / sei / foi / sóis*	
	[ᵘ]	*seu / sou // língua / qual // alto / hotel* (BP)	
NASAL	[ĩ]	*mãe / limões*	
	[ũ]	*mão / limão*	

---

[1] Most phonetic symbols used in this book are those of the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA); the few non-IPA symbols might be more accessible to a nonlinguist than their IPA counterparts. All phonetic symbols except /R/ are enclosed in brackets [ẽⁱ]; alphabet letters are italicized *(em)*. The sounds represented by these symbols are described on pp. 1–10.

[2] BP: Unstressed [ɐ] is a variant of [a], with which it alternates only in word-final position *(lava)*.
EP: [ɐ] is found in all unstressed positions *(lavar / lâmpada / lava);*
stressed [ɐ] is the sound of the *-a* in the 1st-pers. plur. present indicative ending *-amos.*

[3] Antônio R. M. Simões uses these commonsense phonetic symbols for semivowels in his *Pois Não;* IPA symbols for [ⁱ] / [ᵘ] are [j] / [w], respectively.

CONSONANTS	SYMBOL	EXAMPLES	
	[**p**]	*popular / apreciar*	
	[**b**]	*bebo / nobre*	
	[**β**]	*bebo*	(EP: variant of [b])
	[**t**]	*teto / três / alto*	
	[**tš**][1]	*ritmo / tio / noites*	(BP: variant of [t])
	[**d**]	*dedo / drama / aldeia*	
	[**dž**][1]	*dia / pede*	(BP: variant of [d])
	[**ð**]	*dedo*	(EP: variant of [d])
	[**k**]	*coca / acredito // que / conquista*	
	[**g**]	*gago / grande / guerra*	
	[**γ**]	*gago / águia*	(EP: variant of [g])
	[**f**]	*fofo / África*	
	[**v**]	*viver / lavrador*	
	[**s**]	*sol / isso / cem / dança*	
	[**z**]	*zero / rapazes / casa*	
	[**š**][2]	*cheiro / xícara / baixo*	
	[**ž**][2]	*janta / geral / agir*	
	[**m**]	*cama / mima*	
	[**n**]	*cana / nono*	
	[**ɲ**][3]	*canha / minha*	
	[**l**]	*lado / fala*	
	[**ł**]	*alto / hotel*	(EP: variant of [l])
	[**λ**]	*olho / milhão / lhes*	
	[**ɾ**]	*caro / trem / nobre*	
	/**R**/	*rosa / honra / carro*	
		NOTE: this book uses the symbol /**R**/ to include the variant sounds transcribed by letters *rr* and occasionally *r;* the most common of these sounds are as follows:	
	[**h**]		(similar to Eng. *ahoy*)
	[**x**]		(similar to Sp. *ojo*)
	[**R**][4]		(similar to a voiced gargling sound)
	[**r**][4]		(similar to Sp. *carro*)

---

[1] IPA symbols for [tš] / [dž] are [ʧ] / [ʤ], respectively.
[2] IPA symbols for [š] / [ž] are [ʃ] / [ʒ], respectively.
[3] Simões uses the phonetic symbol [ŋ] for Port. *nh* to indicate that the sound is produced farther back in the palate than the sound represented by [ɲ] (the traditional symbol used for Port. *nh* as well as Sp. *ñ*). Simões also accepts the symbol [ỹ] since Port. *nh* is normally produced with the tongue barely touching the roof of the mouth (*Pois Não* 424n3); in effect, *minha* is pronounced [mĩỹa]. Mário A. Perini considers *nh* to be a nasal semivowel (not a true consonant) (*Modern Portuguese* 13).
[4] These voiced variant sounds are less common in BP than in EP (in which [R] predominates).

LINGUISTIC AND GRAMMATICAL TERMS IN ENGLISH AND PORTUGUESE

ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE
General Terms	***Os Termos Gerais***
Portuguese	*(o) português*
English	*(o) inglês*
Spanish	*(o) espanhol*
Latin	*o latim / latino*
Lusophone	*(o) lusófono*
Romance language	*a língua românica / romance*
abbreviation	*a abreviatura / a abreviação*
antecedent	*(o) antecedente*
category	*a categoria*
clause	*a oração*
ending	*a terminação*
expression	*a expressão*
form	*a forma*
language	*a língua*
linguistics // linguistic	*a linguística // linguístico*[1]
marker	*o marcador*
phrase	*a frase / a locução / a expressão*
placement	*a colocação*
radical / root / stem	*o radical / a raiz*
semantics // semantic	*a semântica // semântico*
sentence	*a frase*
stress // stressed	*a acentuação tônica // tônico*
poststressed	*pós-tônico*
prestressed	*pré-tônico*
syllable	*a sílaba*
symbol	*o símbolo*
term // terminology	*o termo // a terminologia*
transcription	*a transcrição*
variant	*(a) variante*
word	*a palavra*

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *gu* to transcribe [g^u].

ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE
Sound System	***Os Sons***
aspirated	*aspirado*
consonant	*a consoante*
dental	*dental*
diphthong	*o ditongo*
hiatus	*o hiato*
intervocalic	*intervocálico*
nasal	*nasal*
oral	*oral*
phonetics // phonetic	*a fonética // fonético*
phonetic symbol	*o símbolo fonético*
semivowel	*a semivogal*
sound	*o som*
voiced	*sonoro*
voiceless	*surdo*
vowel	*a vogal*
Writing System	***A Ortografia***
accentuation	*a acentuação gráfica*
alphabet	*o alfabeto / o abecedário*
diacritical (= accent) mark[1]	*o acento gráfico*[1]
homograph	*o homógrafo*
homonym	*o homônimo*
letter (orth.)	*a letra*
capital / uppercase letter	*a letra maiúscula*
small / lowercase letter	*a letra minúscula*
orthography // orthographic	*a ortografia // ortográfico*
orthographic reform	*a reforma ortográfica*
punctuation	*a pontuação*
punctuation mark[2]	*o sinal de pontuação*[2]
typographic symbol[2]	*o símbolo tipográfico*[2]
word division	*a divisão de palavras*
word stressed on:	*a palavra:*
second-to-last syllable (proparoxytone)	*proparoxítona / esdrúxula*
next-to-last syllable (paroxytone)	*paroxítona / grave*
last syllable (oxytone)	*oxítona / aguda*

---

[1] See p. 22 for names of specific diacritical marks.
[2] See p. 21 for names of specific punctuation marks and typographic symbols.

ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE
Cognates	***Os Cognatos / Cognados***
derived word	*o derivado / a palavra derivada*
prefix	*o prefixo*
radical / root / stem	*o radical / a raiz*
root word	*a palavra-raiz*
suffix	*o sufixo*
Grammar	***A Gramática***
adjective:	*o adjetivo:*
demonstrative	*demonstrativo*
possessive	*possessivo*
adverb	*o advérbio*
adverb phrase	*a locução adverbial*
article (definite / indefinite)	*o artigo (definido / indefinido)*
augmentative	*(o) aumentativo*
clause:	*a oração:*
main (independent)	*principal (independente)*
subordinate (dependent):	*subordinada (dependente):*
noun	*substantiva*
adjective:	*adjetiva:*
restrictive	*restritiva*
nonrestrictive	*explicativa*
adverb:	*adverbial:*
conditional	*condicional*
comparative	*(o) comparativo*
comparison of:	*a comparação de:*
equality	*igualdade*
superiority / inferiority	*superioridade / inferioridade*
conjunction	*a conjunção*
contraction	*a contração*
diminutive	*(o) diminutivo*
feminine	*feminino*
form of address	*a forma de tratamento*
gender	*o gênero*
grammatical	*gramatical*
masculine	*masculino*
nominalization	*a nominalização*
noun	*o substantivo / o nome*
predicate noun	*o substantivo predicativo*
number (gram. / math.)	*o número*
numeral	*o numeral*

ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE
object:	*o objeto:*
direct / indirect	*direto / indireto*
prepositional	*preposicional*
reflexive	*reflexivo*
person	*a pessoa*
plural	*plural*
preposition // prepositional	*a preposição // preposicional*
prepositional phrase	*a frase / a locução preposicional*
pronoun:	*o pronome:*
demonstrative	*demonstrativo*
object	*oblíquo*
personal	*pessoal*
possessive	*possessivo*
prepositional	*preposicional*
reflexive	*reflexivo*
subject	*re(c)to*
sentence:	*a frase:*
conditional	*condicional*
singular	*singular*
subject	*o sujeito*
superlative:	*(o) superlativo:*
absolute ("synthetic" / "analytic")	*absoluto (sintético / analítico)*
relative	*relativo*
word:	*a palavra:*
affirmative / negative	*afirmativa / negativa*
indefinite	*indefinida*
interrogative	*interrogativa*
relative	*relativa*

Verbs	***Os Verbos***
conjugation	*a conjugação*
expression:	*a expressão:*
impersonal	*impessoal*
of time	*de tempo*
"progressive"	*progressivo / contínuo*
tense (simple / compound)	*o tempo (simples / composto)*
verb:	*o verbo:*
impersonal	*impessoal*
reflexive	*reflexivo*
transitive / ditransitive / intransitive	*transitivo / ditransitivo / intransitivo*
verb group	*a locução verbal*
voice (active / passive)	*a voz (ativa / passiva)*

ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE
Verb Moods and Tenses	***Os Modos e Tempos Verbais***
mood (gram.)	***o modo***
imperative	*o imperativo*
indicative	*o indicativo*
present	*o presente*
present perfect	*o pretérito perfeito composto*
preterite (preterite perfect)	*o pretérito perfeito simples*
imperfect (preterite imperfect)	*o pretérito imperfeito*
simple past perfect (pluperfect)	*o pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples*
compound past perfect (pluperfect)	*o pretérito mais-que-perfeito composto*
future	*o futuro do presente simples*
future perfect	*o futuro do presente composto*
conditional	BP: *o futuro do pretérito simples* EP: *o condicional simples*
conditional perfect	BP: *o futuro do pretérito composto* EP: *o condicional composto*
subjunctive	BP: *o subjuntivo* EP: *o conjuntivo*
present	*o presente*
present perfect	*o pretérito perfeito composto*
past (imperfect)	*o pretérito imperfeito*
past perfect (pluperfect)	*o pretérito mais-que-perfeito composto*
future	*o futuro simples*
future perfect	*o futuro composto*
Verb Forms	***As Formas Verbais***
verbal	*a forma nominal do verbo*
infinitive (impersonal / personal)	*o infinitivo (impessoal / pessoal)*
past participle	*o particípio passado*
present participle	*o particípio presente*
gerund	*o gerúndio*

DEFINITIONS OF LINGUISTIC AND GRAMMATICAL TERMS[1]

active voice: sentence in which the subject performs the action expressed by the verb (vs. passive voice)
(Maria abriu a janela.)

antecedent: word, phrase, or clause to which another word (usually a pronoun) refers
(Temos um amigo que vai para o Brasil.)

aspirated: consonant released with a puff of breath
(the *p* in Eng. *party*)

clause: group of words that contains a conjugated verb
(see "**main clause**" / "**subordinate clause**")

cognates: words that are related through derivation from the same ancestral root
(Port. / Sp. / Eng. *circular* [< Latin *circularis*])

conditional sentence: sentence in which the subordinate adverb clause expresses a condition and is introduced by *se* ("if"), and the main clause expresses the consequence
(Se quiséssemos, sairíamos.)

conjugation: class of verbs with similar forms;
a conjugation is identified by the final vowel of the infinitive:
1st conjugation *(falar)*
2nd conjugation *(comer)*
3rd conjugation *(partir)*

dental: sound produced when the tip of the tongue touches the back of the front teeth
(the *th* in Eng. *then / thin*)

diacritical mark: symbol added to a letter to show pronunciation (= accent mark)
(the tilde over the *a* in *pão*)

diphthong: sequence of a vowel and a semivowel occurring within the same syllable:
in a "falling" diphthong, the semivowel follows the vowel
(pai / sei / foi / dói / pau / seu / céu / sou / viu // mãe / põe / pão);
in a "rising" diphthong, the semivowel precedes the vowel[2]
(língua / quarto / quanto)

---

[1] Except as indicated, the definitions of the linguistic and grammatical terms used in this book refer specifically to Portuguese, and the examples are in Portuguese. Commonly used terms (e.g., such traditional grammatical categories as "noun" or "verb") are not defined in this list.

[2] "Rising" diphthongs (which are frequent in Spanish) are not as frequent in Portuguese as "falling" diphthongs since the sequences of *i / u* + vowel are often pronounced as vowels in hiatus (see pp. 4: 4, 6: 2 for details).

direct object: (pro)noun that receives the action of a transitive verb[1]
(Ana quer o livro.)
(Ana o quer.)

gender: classification of (pro)nouns and adjectives to differentiate masculine from feminine:
-o is the most common masculine gender marker *(nosso)*
-a is the most common feminine gender marker *(nossa)*

hiatus: sequence of vowels occurring in adjacent syllables
(po-e-ma / le-o-a / Ra-ul / Lu-ís)

homographs: words identical in spelling but different in meaning
(*para o carro* [= "for" / "to"] vs. *para o carro* [= "stops"])

homonyms: words identical in sound but different in meaning
(*paço* [= "palace"] vs. *passo* [= "pass" / "step"])

imperative: (see "**mood**")

indicative: (see "**mood**")

indirect object: (pro)noun that receives the direct object or is otherwise affected by the verb
(Elas nos deram a revista.)
(Dei o gravador para Ana.)
(A gramática lhe interessa?)

intervocalic: consonant occurring between vowels
(the *r* in *para*)

intransitive verb: verb that does not need an object (direct or indirect) to complete its meaning (vs. transitive verb)
(Nossos primos chegam amanhã.)

main clause: independent clause that does not depend on another clause for its existence
(Temos um amigo [que vai para o Brasil.])

marker: indicator of a linguistic category; for example:

-s	is the plural marker of (pro)nouns / adjectives	*(livros / bonitas)*
-r	is the infinitive marker	*(falar)*
-ndo	is the present participle marker	*(falando)*
-mos	is the 1st-person plural verb marker	*(falamos)*

---

[1] An infinitive or a noun clause may also be a direct object:
Ana quer: comprar o livro / que eu compre o livro.

mood: mode or manner that indicates the speaker's attitude to what (s)he is saying and how an utterance should be perceived;
the verb ending and/or the sentence structure, punctuation, or intonation of the utterance reveal the mood:

- **indicative**: expresses an action or state of being considered factual, certain, specific, or definite
  (Você não canta bem.)
- **subjunctive**: expresses what is felt, or what is uncertain, doubtful, unspecific, indefinite, or negated;
  also expresses the condition of a conditional sentence
  [future / past subjunctive only]
  (Duvidamos que você cante bem.)
  (Se você quisesse, cantaria bem.)
- **imperative**: expresses a command, request, instruction, or warning
  (Cante bem!)

nasal: sound produced when air is released through the nose as well as the mouth (vs. oral)
(the *ão* in *pão*)

nominalization: replacement of a noun by an article (+ adjective)
(umas [casas] novas / as nossas [casas])
(= Eng. "[the] one[s]" / "some")

nonrestrictive clause: subordinate clause that does not give essential information about the antecedent;
a nonrestrictive clause is usually contained within commas
(vs. restrictive clause)
(Nosso amigo, que é brasileiro, chega amanhã.)

number: classification of (pro)nouns, adjectives, and verb forms to differentiate singular from plural:
-*s* is the plural marker of (pro)nouns / adjectives *(livros / bonitas)*

object: (pro)noun that is acted upon or governed by a verb or a preposition;
an object completes the meaning of the verb or the preposition
(see "**direct object**" / "**indirect object**" / "**prepositional object**" / "**reflexive object**")

oral: sound produced when air is released through the mouth
(vs. nasal)
(the *au* in *pau*)

orthographic: relating to orthography (= rules of spelling);
before a letter, it also means "written but not necessarily pronounced"
(the *n* in *penso*)

orthography-changing verb: verb in which an orthographic change must be made in certain forms in order to transcribe correctly a sound in the radical of the infinitive
(proteger > protejo)

oxytone: word stressed on the last syllable
(animal)

paroxytone: word stressed on the next-to-last syllable
(classe)

passive voice: sentence in which the subject receives the action expressed by the verb and is acted upon by an "agent" (which may or not be expressed) (vs. active voice)
(A janela foi aberta [por Maria].)

person: classification of pronouns and corresponding verb forms to indicate the relationship between the speaker and the listener(s) of an utterance, and their relationship to another grammatical subject; the verb ending and/or the subject reveal the person:

1st person: used when the subject is the speaker (+ another person[s])
(eu canto // nós cantamos)

2nd person: used when the subject is the listener(s)
(tu cantas // vós cantais)

3rd person: used when the subject is not the speaker or the listener
(ele / ela canta // eles / elas cantam)

phonetic: relating to speech sounds

phrase: group of words that is not a complete sentence because it does not contain a conjugated verb
(Estando João na cozinha, Maria abriu a janela.)

poststressed: sound, letter, or syllable occurring after a stressed syllable
(the *a* in *usa*)

predicate noun: noun that describes or identifies the subject; a predicate noun normally follows the main verb
(Ricardo é o aluno que mais estuda.)

prepositional object: (pro)noun that follows a preposition and completes its meaning[1]
(de Pedro / para elas / no livro)

---

[1] An infinitive or a noun clause may also be a prepositional object:
Ana insiste em: comprar o livro / que eu compre o livro.

prepositional phrase: phrase consisting of a preposition and its (pro)noun object; prepositional phrases function as adjectives or adverbs
(O piano é de madeira.) (= adjective [prepositional] phrase)
(A festa é no clube.) (= adverb [prepositional] phrase)

prestressed: sound, letter, or syllable occurring before a stressed syllable
(the *u* in *usar*)

"**progressive**": verb tenses and forms consisting of *estar* ("to be") + present participle[1, 2]
(Vocês estavam comendo?)

proparoxytone: word stressed on the second-to-last syllable
(gramática)

radical: stem (= root) of a verb
(vs. ending)
(falar / comeu / partia)

radical-changing verb: verb in which a sound in the radical changes in certain forms
(= stem-changing verb)
(dormir > durmo)

reflexive object: direct or indirect object that reflects or refers back to the subject
(Ela se levantou.) ("herself") (= direct object)
(Eles se compraram uma moto.) ("themselves") (= indirect object)

reflexive verb: verb that needs a reflexive object to complete its meaning
(Quem se suicidou?)

restrictive clause: subordinate clause that gives essential information about the antecedent; a restrictive clause is not usually contained within commas
(vs. nonrestrictive clause)
(O único amigo nosso que é brasileiro chega amanhã.)

semantic: relating to meaning

---

[1] *andar / ficar / ir / vir* occasionally replace *estar* in the "progressive."
[2] EP: The "progressive" consists of *estar a* + impersonal infinitive *(Vocês estavam a comer?)*.

semivowel: vowel-like unstressed sound that functions as a consonant by forming a diphthong with a contiguous vowel articulated within the same syllable (= "glide");[1]
the two Portuguese semivowels are transcribed ***i*** [ⁱ] and ***u*** [ᵘ]
(pai / sei / foi / dói // pau / seu / céu / sou / viu)

stress(ed): relative force with which a sound or a syllable is uttered
(the *a* in *ano / sofá / caso / Mário*)

subject: (pro)noun about which something is being said;[2]
the subject often performs the action of the verb
(Quem comprou o livro? Ana o comprou.)

subjunctive: (see "**mood**")

subordinate clause: dependent clause that depends on the main clause for its existence;
subordinate clauses function as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs
(Quero que você vá para o Brasil.) (= noun clause)
(Temos um amigo que vai para o Brasil.) (= adjective clause)
(Ficaremos tristes quando você for para o Brasil.) (= adverb clause)

syllable-final: sound or letter occurring at the end of a syllable
(the *r* in *carne*)

syllable-initial: sound or letter occurring at the beginning of a syllable
(the *n* in *carne*)

tense: classification of verb forms to indicate the time of the action or state of being in relation to the time of the utterance; for example, in the utterance *"João diz que irá,"* the action of the future-tense verb *(irá)* will occur in the future with respect to the present time of the utterance *(diz);* in the utterance *"João disse que iria,"* the action of the conditional-tense verb *(iria)* would occur in the future with respect to the past time of the utterance *(disse).*

transitive verb: verb that needs a direct object to complete its meaning[3]
(vs. intransitive verb)
(Adoro o seu cachorro!)

---

[1] Some linguists distinguish between a "semivowel," which ends a "falling" diphthong *(causa),* and a "semiconsonant," which begins a "rising" diphthong *(quarto).*
[2] An infinitive or a noun clause may also be a subject:
É preciso: comprar o livro / que eu compre o livro.
[3] A ditransitive verb needs both a direct object and an indirect object to complete its meaning:
Os meus pais nos compraram uma casa.

verb group: conjugated verb + verbal
(quer dormir / tinham vendido o carro / está correndo)

verbals: infinitives / past participles / present participles;[1]
these forms derive from verbs but may also function as
nouns, adjectives, or adverbs, respectively
(é preciso dormir / o carro foi vendido / chegou correndo)

voiced: consonant sounds [**b**] / [**d**] / [**g**] / [**v**] / [**z**] / [**ž**] / [**l**] / [**λ**] / [ɾ] / [**m**] / [**n**] / [ɲ],
the voiced variants of /**R**/ (= [R] / [r]), and all vowels,
produced when the vocal cords vibrate

voiceless: consonant sounds [**p**] / [**t**] / [**k**] / [**f**] / [**s**] / [**š**]
and the voiceless variants of /**R**/ (= [h] / [x]),
produced when the vocal cords do not vibrate

word-final: sound or letter occurring at the end of a word
(the *ã* in *irmã*)

word-initial: sound or letter occurring at the beginning of a word
(the *i* in *irmã*)

---

[1] See p. 211nn1–2 concerning the terms *present participle* and *gerund*.

ORTHOGRAPHIC REFORMS

This book follows the orthographic reforms of the *Acordo Ortográfico da Língua Portuguesa,* which was written in an attempt to simplify and unify Portuguese orthography. Drafted in 1990, the *Acordo Ortográfico* was eventually ratified by all members of the Community of Portuguese-Language Countries (CPLP); it took effect in Brazil in 2009 and in Portugal in 2010. The following is a brief synopsis of the orthographic reforms.[1]

1) Diacritical marks

a) No dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *gu / qu* to transcribe the sounds [g^u] / [k^u]:[2]

lingu<u>i</u>ça / seq<u>u</u>ência / freq<u>u</u>ência

b) No acute accent (´) or circumflex (ˆ) to differentiate the following homographs (see p. 23: 3a for more examples):

para	(preposition / verb)
pelo	(contraction / verb / noun)
pela	(contraction / verb / noun)

c) No acute accent over stressed

i) *e / o* of *ei / oi* in words stressed on the next-to-last syllable:[2]

id<u>e</u>ia / assembl<u>e</u>ia / europ<u>e</u>ia / j<u>o</u>ia / her<u>o</u>ica

ii) *i / u* preceded by a diphthong:[2]

chei<u>i</u>nho / fei<u>u</u>ra

---

[1] In those cases in which the *Acordo Ortográfico* permits variant forms, this book follows Brazilian Portuguese usage.

[2] European Portuguese undertook this and other reforms in 1945. These reforms governed the orthography of the former Portuguese colonies in Africa until their independence in 1974–1975.

d) No circumflex over the first

i) *o* of *oo:*[1]

voo / enjoo / moo

ii) *e* of *ee* in the following 3rd-person plural present-tense forms of *crer / ler / ver / dar:*

creem / leem / veem	(indicative)
deem	(subjunctive)

e) Circumflex in BP over *e / o* before *m / n* in words stressed on the next-to-last or second-to-last syllable (including words ending in an unstressed vowel sequence); acute accent in EP:[2a]

bônus / bónus // acadêmico / académico // gêmea / gémea

f) Optional circumflex in EP over the *e* in the 1st-person plural present subjunctive form *dêmos (< dar),* to differentiate it from the corresponding preterite indicative form *demos.*[2b]

g) Optional acute accent in EP over the *a* in the 1st-person plural preterite indicative ending *-ámos,* to differentiate it from the corresponding present indicative ending *-amos:*[2c]

Ontem comprámos / compramos queijo; hoje compramos peixe.

2) Elimination of unpronounced letters

a) No unpronounced *c // p of cç / cc / ct // pç / pc / pt:*[3]

ação / acionar / ato / elétrico // adoção / batismo / ótimo

b) No initial *h* in *erva* and in root words preceded by a nonhyphenated prefix:[4]

desumano / inumano / reabilitar / lobisomem

---

[1] European Portuguese undertook this reform in 1945.
[2] Following Brazilian Portuguese usage, this book
(a) uses a circumflex;
(b) does not mark *demos;*
(c) does not mark *-amos.*
[3] Brazilian Portuguese undertook this reform in 1943. See pp. 13–15: 4 for alternative spelling of certain words.
[4] Initial *h* is retained when preceded by a hyphenated prefix *(pré-história).*

3) Hyphenation

a) No hyphen

i) in most expressions consisting of a noun + *de* + another noun:[1]

cartão de visita / fim de semana

ii) between *haver* and *de* (*hei de / havia de,* etc.);

iii) after the prefix *co* (even if the root word begins in *o*),
and after most other prefixes (except as listed in 3b below):

coadministração / coocorrência / coprodutor

iv) between a prefix ending in a vowel and a root word beginning either in a different vowel or in *r / s* (in which case the *r / s* is doubled):

autoestrada // extrarregular / antissemita

b) Hyphen

i) between a prefix ending in a vowel and a root word beginning in the same vowel (except after the prefix *co*):

anti-ibérica / micro-ondas

ii) between a prefix ending in *r* and a root word beginning in *r*:[2]

hiper-realista / inter-rei / super-rebelde

iii) after prefixes *pós // pré // pró // ex // vice // soto/a,*
if the root word is a noun or an adjective:[3]

pós-graduação // pré-histórico // pró-americano //
ex-presidente // vice-rei // soto-mestre / sota-piloto

iv) after prefixes *circum / pan,* if the root word begins in a vowel or *h / m / n:*

circum-navegação[4] */ pan-americano*

---

[1] Exception: *cor-de-laranja / cor-de-rosa,* etc.
[2] Exceptions: *interrogar / interrogação // interromper / interrupção.*
[3] Exception: *sotavento.*
No hyphen before most verbs *(pospor / prever / promover / sotopor).*
[4] Also *circunavegação.*

v) after *além / aquém / recém / sem* in compound words:

além-mar / aquém-mar / recém-casado / sem-vergonha

vi) after *bem / mal,* if the root word begins in a vowel or *h;*
after *bem,* if the root word begins in a consonant:

bem-estar	/	*mal-estar*
bem-humorado	/	*mal-humorado*
bem-criado	vs.	*malcriado*
bem-visto	vs.	*malvisto*

vii) in placenames beginning with *Grão / Grã* or joined by an article:

Grão-Pará / Grã-Bretanha // Trás-os-Montes

viii) between a verb and an object pronoun:

deixa-os / disse-lhe / senta-se / dá-la / tiram-no

ix) in contractions of direct with indirect object pronouns:

no-lo / vo-las

x) before and after an object pronoun in future- or conditional-tense verb forms:

enviar-lhe-emos / enviá-lo-íamos

xi) in compounds designating botanical or zoological species:

feijão-verde / andorinha-do-mar

xii) in most compounds in which each element retains its meaning and stress, and the first element is a noun, an adjective, or a verb:[1]

arco-íris / azul-escuro / guarda-chuva / luso-brasileiro / norte-americano / primeiro-ministro / segunda-feira / tenente-coronel / tio-avô

4) Capitalization

See p. 20 for details on capitalization, which incorporate the reforms of the *Acordo Ortográfico.*

---

[1] No hyphen in compounds in which the meaning of each element has faded or disappeared *(mandachuva // paraquedas / paraquedista // pontapé).*

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PORTUGUESE

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SOUND SYSTEM

ORAL VOWELS

1) The following is a chart of the Portuguese oral vowels.

		FRONT	CENTRAL	BACK
CLOSED	HIGH	[**i**]	[ɨ][1] (EP)	[**u**]
	MEDIUM	[**e**]	[ɐ][2]	[**o**]
	LOW-MEDIUM	[ɛ]	[ɔ]	
OPEN	LOW		[**a**]	

2) The following oral vowels occur in stressed position.

VOWEL		EXAMPLES	SOMEWHAT SIMILAR TO ENG.		
[**i**]		*fica / rubi*	*beat*	/	*beer*
[**e**]	(closed *e*)	*bebo / sê / você*	*bait*	/	*bare*
[ɛ][3]	(open *e*)	*bebe / Sé / pé*	*bet*	/	*berry*
[**a**]		*gato / sofá*	*Bach*	/	*bar*
[ɔ][3]	(open *o*)	*roda / pode / avó*	*bought*	/	*borrow*
[**o**]	(closed *o*)	*rodo / pôde / avô*	*boat*	/	*bore*
[**u**]		*lua / peru*	*boot*	/	*boor*

3) Since open vowels [ɛ] / [ɔ] are not variants of the respective closed vowels [e] / [o], the use of one for another may change the meaning of the intended word, as in *avó* ("grandmother") vs. *avô* ("grandfather"), or *Sé* ("[Holy] See") vs. *sê* ("be" [< *ser*]). To avoid ambiguity, the pronunciation of stressed *e / o* must be learned.

a) Sometimes a diacritical mark reveals whether a stressed *e / o* is open or closed (see pp. 22–23 for uses of diacritical marks):

the acute accent	marks an open *e / o*	[ɛ] / [ɔ]	*(péssimo / avó);*
the circumflex	marks a closed *e / o*	[e] / [o]	*(pêssego / avô).*

---

[1] EP: This unstressed vowel [ɨ] (a "schwa") sounds like a weak [i] and is found in prestressed and poststressed positions *(beber / pêssego / bebe).*

[2] BP: When unstressed, this vowel [ɐ] is similar to Eng. *focus* and is a variant of [a], with which it alternates only in word-final position *(lava)* (see p. 3: 5 for details on word-final vowels).
EP: [ɐ] is found in all unstressed positions *(lavar / lâmpada / lava).*
Stressed [ɐ] (similar to Eng. *fun*) occurs before a nasal consonant + vowel *(cama / cana / canha);* the [ɐ] in the 1st-pers. plur. present indic. ending *-amos* distinguishes it from the corresponding preterite ending (the [a] of which is optionally marked with an acute accent *[-ámos]).*

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: These open vowels do not occur in Spanish, although stressed *e / o* preceding *rr / l* may be slightly open (*perro* [ɛ] vs. *pero* [e] / *colmos* [ɔ] vs. *cosmos* [o]) (Antonio Quilis and Joseph A. Fernández, *Curso de fonética y fonología españolas* 45).

b) Often the orthography does not reveal the sound of stressed *e / o*.
Correct pronunciation is therefore essential, especially in distinguishing pairs of homographs (usually related nouns and verbs).

peso	[e]	("weight")	vs.	*peso*	[ɛ]	("I weigh")
gosto	[o]	("taste")	vs.	*gosto*	[ɔ]	("I like")

4) The following oral vowels occur in prestressed position.[1]

VOWEL SOUND BP	EP	LETTER	EXAMPLES
[**i**]	[**i**]	*i*	*ficar*
[**e**]	[ɨ][2]	*e*[3]	*beber*
[**a**]	[ɐ][2]	*a*	*lavar*
[**o**]	[**u**][2]	*o*[3]	*poder*
[**u**]	[**u**]	*u*	*luar*

5) The following oral vowels occur in unstressed word-final position.[1]

VOWEL SOUND BP	EP	LETTER	EXAMPLES
[**i**][2]	[ɨ][2]	*e*	*bebe / classe*
[**a**] / [ɐ][2]	[ɐ][2]	*a*	*lava / aula*
[**u**][2]	[**u**][2]	*o*	*lavo / carro*

6) [i] is often pronounced in BP between two clustered consonants beginning in *p / b / t / d / c / g / f / v,* and not ending in *l / r;* this inserted [i] facilitates the otherwise difficult phonetic transition from one consonant to another.[4]

pneu	>	*"pineu"*	*absoluto*	>	*"abisolutu"*
ritmo	>	*"ritimu"*[5]	*advérbio*	>	*"adivérbiu"*[5]
icnografia	>	*"iquinografia"*	*segmento*	>	*"seguimentu"*

---

[1] EP: Unstressed vowels are often so weak that they are barely pronounced.
[2] These variant unstressed vowel sounds have been "raised" (e.g., from "medium" [o] to "high" [u]; see vowel chart on p. 2: 1).
[3] Prestressed *e* before syllable-final *s* is pronounced [i] in BP *(espero > "isperu")* and [ɨ] in EP. Prestressed *o* is occasionally pronounced [u] in BP *(poder > "puder")* and normally so in EP. Perini details the inconsistencies of BP unstressed-vowel-raising in his *Modern Portuguese* 37–38, as does Milton M. Azevedo in his *Portuguese* 39–43.
[4] Note to Spanish Speakers: This insertion process has a parallel in Spanish: the "official" insertion of [d] to facilitate the transition from [n] / [l] to [ɾ] (e.g., *tendré / saldría;* see pp. 175n3, 179n3) and the frequent but "unofficial" insertion of [d] in unmonitored speech (e.g., *honra > "hondra"*).
[5] In many dialects of BP, *t / d* before [i] are pronounced [tš] / [dž], respectively (*ritmo* [tši] / *advérbio* [dži]; see p. 8 for details).

ORAL DIPHTHONGS

1) A diphthong is a sequence of a vowel and a semivowel occurring within the same syllable. The vowel (not the semivowel) forms the nucleus of the syllable *(coi-sa)*.[1]

2) The two Portuguese semivowels are transcribed ***i*** [ⁱ] and ***u*** [ᵘ].

3) Most Portuguese oral diphthongs are sequences of an oral vowel + semivowel; these sequences are often called "falling" diphthongs since the semivowel follows the vowel.

SYM.	LETT.	EXAMPLES	SYM.	LETT.	EXAMPLES
[**aⁱ**]	*ai*	*pai / animais*	[**aᵘ**][2]	*au*	*pau / auto // alto / animal* (BP)
[**eⁱ**][3]	*ei*	*sei / cantei*	[**eᵘ**][2]	*eu*	*seu / comeu // feltro* (BP)
[**ɛⁱ**][7]	*éi / ei*	*papéis / ideia*	[**ɛᵘ**][2, 7]	*éu*	*céu / chapéu // papel* (BP)
[**oⁱ**][4]	*oi*	*foi / oito // ouro* (EP)	[**oᵘ**][2, 5]	*ou*	*sou / cantou // soldado* (BP)
[**ɔⁱ**][7]	*ói / oi*	*dói / espanhóis / joia*	[**ɔᵘ**][2, 7]	*óu*	*sol / espanhol* (BP)
[**uⁱ**]	*ui*	*fui*[8] */ azuis*	[**iᵘ**][2]	*iu*	*viu // vil* (BP)

4) With the exception of [gᵘ] / [kᵘ] + oral vowel *(língua / quarto),* the sequences in words like *piano* are often pronounced as vowels in hiatus and thus form two syllables *(pi-a-no);* they become "rising" diphthongs (= semivowel + vowel) only in fast speech.[6] Since Portuguese orthography treats these sequences as vowels in hiatus, it marks the vowel of the stressed syllable preceding two sequentially unstressed vowels *(lín-gu-a / gê-ni-o);* that is, it counts these unstressed vowels as two syllables.[9] For the purpose of word division, however, Portuguese counts these same unstressed sequences as one syllable *(lín-gua / gê-nio).*

5) BP: [ⁱ] is often pronounced between a stressed vowel and word-final *s / z.*

faz > "faiz" *nós > "nóis"* *luz > "luiz"*

---

[1] See p. 24 for details on syllables and word division.
[2] BP: *l* is often pronounced [ᵘ] when syllable-final / word-final before a pause *(alto = auto).*
[3] BP: *ei* is often pronounced [e]; EP: *ei* is often pronounced [ɐⁱ].
[4] EP: Stressed syllable-final *ou* is often pronounced [oⁱ] (and even written *oi*) *(ouro > "oiru").*
[5] BP: *ou* is often pronounced [o].
[6] Oral triphthongs (which are rare in Portuguese) are sequences of [gᵘ] / [kᵘ] + oral vowel + [ⁱ] / [ᵘ] (*Paraguai / Uruguai / quais // qual / igual* [BP; see note 2 above]).

Notes to Spanish Speakers:
[7] These diphthongs do not occur in Spanish, although stressed *e / o* in "falling" diphthongs may be slightly open (*deuda* [ɛ] vs. *dedo* [e] / *boina* [ɔ] vs. *bono* [o]) (Quilis and Fernández, *Curso* 45).
[8] Port. *fui* is a "falling" diphthong [uⁱ]; Sp. *fui* is a "rising" diphthong [ᵘi].
[9] Since Spanish sequences of semivowel + vowel are considered diphthongs, Spanish does not mark the vowel of the stressed syllable preceding a semivowel + unstressed vowel *(len-gua / ge-nio);* i.e., Spanish counts these sequences as one syllable.

NASAL VOWELS

1) The following is a chart of the Portuguese nasal vowels.[1]

		FRONT		CENTRAL		BACK
CLOSED	HIGH	[ĩ]				[ũ]
	MEDIUM		[ẽ]	[ɐ̃]	[õ]	
OPEN	LOW					

2) Since nasal vowels are <u>not</u> variants of their respective oral vowels, the use of one for another may change the meaning of the intended word, as in *lá* ("there") vs. *lã* ("wool").

3) Written Portuguese indicates a nasalized vowel in two ways:

a) marking it with a tilde (˜), which is used to transcribe only:

i) *ã* (usually word-final, except in diminutives) *(irmã / órfã // irmãzinha)*
ii) nasal diphthongs *ão / ãe / õe*[2] *(mão / mãe / põe)*

b) transcribing *m / n:*

i) in this syllable- / word-final position, the letters *m / n* are not pronounced; rather, they indicate the nasalization of the preceding vowel *(sim / tanto);*
ii) *-ns* is used to transcribe the plural of words ending in *-m:*

fim > *fins* *bom* > *bons* *um* > *uns*

4) Nasal vowels occur in both stressed and unstressed positions.[3]

VOWEL	STRESSED EXAMPLES	UNSTRESSED EXAMPLES
[ĩ]	*jardim // jardins / pinto*	*impacto / pintura*
[ẽ][4]	*lembro / mente*	*lembrar / mental*
[ɐ̃][5]	*irmã / samba / canta*	*órfã / tambor / antigo*
[õ]	*marrom // marrons / ponto*	*sombral / conduta*
[ũ]	*algum // alguns / fundo*	*umbral / untar*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Although nasal vowels do not occur in Spanish, nasalized variants of oral vowels may be found between two nasal consonants (*Nuño* [ũ] vs. *nudo* [u]), or preceding a nasal consonant + another consonant (*pinto* [ĩ] vs. *pito* [i]) (Quilis and Fernández, *Curso* 49–50).
[2] See p. 6: 1 for details on nasal diphthongs.
[3] Dialect determines the degree to which a vowel preceding a nasal consonant + vowel is nasalized *(cama / cana / canha);* BP tends to nasalize the vowel more than EP.
[4] Word-final *em / en(s)* transcribes [ẽ$^{\tilde{i}}$] (see p. 6: 1).
[5] Word-final *am* transcribes unstressed [ɐ̃$^{\tilde{u}}$] and is found only in verb endings (see p. 6: 1).

NASAL DIPHTHONGS

1) Portuguese nasal diphthongs are sequences of a nasal vowel + semivowel; these sequences are often called "falling" diphthongs since the semivowel follows the vowel.

SYM.	LETTERS	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
[ɐ̃ʷ̃]	*ão*	*mão / alemão / limão / cantarão*	usually stressed and word-final, except in diminutives *(limãozinho)* and in *bênção / órfão / órgão*
[ɐ̃ʷ̃]	*am*	*cantam / cantaram / cantavam*	unstressed and word-final; found only in verb endings
[ɐ̃ʲ̃]	*ãe*	*mãe / alemães*	usually stressed and word-final, except in diminutives *(mãezinha);* usually transcribed *ãe,* except in *cãibra*
[ɐ̃ʲ̃]	*em // en*[1]	*bem / comem / comessem / homem // homens*	word-final
		também // parabéns	an acute accent marks stressed *em // en* in polysyllabic words (see p. 28n4)
[õʲ̃]	*õe(m)*	*limões / põe / põem*	usually stressed and word-final, except in diminutives *(limõezinhos)*
[ũʲ̃]	*ui*	*muito / muitas*	transcribed without a tilde; found in *muito* and related forms (exception: *ruim / ruins*)[2]

2) With the exception of [gʷ] / [kʷ] + nasal vowel *(aguentar*[3] */ quanto),* the sequences in words like *variante* are often pronounced as vowels in hiatus and thus form two syllables *(va-ri-an-te);* they become "rising" diphthongs (= semivowel + vowel) only in fast speech.[4]

---

[1] EP: Word-final *em / en* is often pronounced [ɐ̃ʲ̃].
[2] *ruim* is sometimes pronounced as two syllables *(ru-im).*
[3] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *gu* to transcribe [gʷ].
[4] Nasal triphthongs (which are rare in Portuguese) are sequences of [gʷ] / [kʷ] + nasal vowel + [ʲ̃] / [ʷ̃] *(quão // saguão / saguões).*

PORTUGUESE AND CORRESPONDING SPANISH VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS[1]

1) The following patterns frequently correspond between Portuguese and Spanish oral vowels and diphthongs.

PORTUGUESE SYM.	LETT.	EXAMPLES	SPANISH SYM.	LETT.	EXAMPLES
[ɛ]	open *e*	*festa / sete / dez*	[^{i}e]	*ie*	*fiesta / siete / diez*
[ɔ]	open *o*	*forte / pode*	[^{u}e]	*ue*	*fuerte / puede*
[e^{i}]	*ei*	*dinheiro // canteei / beberei*	[e]	*e / é*	*dinero // canté / beberé*
[e^{u}]	*eu*	*bebeu*	[^{i}o]	*ió*	*bebió*
[i^{u}]	*iu*	*partiu*	[^{i}o]	*ió*	*partió*
[o^{u}][2]	*ou*	*ouro // cantou*	[o]	*o / ó*	*oro // cantó*

2) The following patterns frequently correspond between Portuguese nasal diphthongs and Spanish oral vowels + *n*.

PORTUGUESE SYM.	LETT.	EXAMPLES	SPANISH SYM.	LETT.	EXAMPLES
[ẽ^{ũ}]	*ão*	*dão / vão (< ir) / estão*[3] *// beberão*	[an]	*an / án*	*dan / van / están*[3] *// beberán*
[ẽ^{ũ}]	*am*	*cantam / bebiam / partiram / partiriam / bebam*	[an]	*an*	*cantan / bebían / partieran / partirían / beban*
[ẽ^{ũ}]	*am*	*partiram*	[on]	*on*	*partieron*
[ẽ^{ĩ}]	*em*	*bebem / cantem / partissem*	[en]	*en*	*beben / canten / partiesen*

---

[1] Jack L. Ulsh gives many such examples in his *From Spanish to Portuguese* 16–19, 39–43.

[2] Port. [o^{u}] corresponds to Sp.[o^{i}] only in the irregular 1st-pers. sing. present indic. verb endings:

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH
dou / vou / sou / estou	=	*doy / voy / soy / estoy*

[3] PORTUGUESE SPANISH

são (< ser) / são (< Santo) / são ("healthy") *// vão* (adj.) = *son / san / sano // vano*

CONSONANTS

Portuguese consonant sounds are pronounced and transcribed in the following ways.

SOUND	LETT.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
[**p**]	*p*	*popular / apreciar*	less aspirated than Eng. *pop*
	p	*pneu / psique*[1]	word-initial *p(n / s)* is pronounced
[**b**][2a]	*b*	*bebo / nobre // absoluto*[1]	like Eng. *bob*
[**t**]	*t*	*teto / três / alto*	less aspirated / more dental than Eng. *tot*
[**tš**]	*t*	*ritmo / étnico*[1] *// tio / noites*	like Eng. *church:* BP only (many dialects): variant of [t] before *m / n // i /* unstressed word-final *e* [i]
[**d**][2b]	*d*	*dedo / drama / aldeia*	more dental than Eng. *did*
[**dž**]	*d*	*adquiri / Edgar / admite / adscrito / advérbio*[1] *// dia / pede*	like Eng. *judge:* BP only (many dialects): variant of [d] before *c(qu) / g / m / s / v //* *i /* unstressed word-final *e* [i]
[**k**]			less aspirated than Eng. *kick:*
[**k**]	*c*	*coca / cura / acredito*	before *a / o / u /* consonant
[**k**]	*qu*	*que / conquista*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
[**k**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]			like Eng. *equal:*
[**k**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]	*qu*	*qual / aquário / quota*	before *a / o;* syllable- / word-initial
[**k**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]	*qu*[3]	*frequente / tranquilo*	before *e / i;* syllable-initial
[**k**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]	*cu*	*cuecas / cuidado*	before *e / i;* word-initial
[**g**]			like Eng. *gig:*
[**g**][2c]	*g*	*gago / gula / agradecer*	before *a / o / u /* consonant
[**g**]	*g*	*gnóstico*[1]	word-initial *g(n)* is pronounced
[**g**][2c]	*gu*	*guerra / águia*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
[**g**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]			like Eng. *linguistic:*
[**g**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]	*gu*	*guarda / ambíguo*	before *a / o;* syllable- / word-initial
[**g**$^{\mathbf{u}}$]	*gu*[3]	*aguentar / linguística*	before *e / i;* syllable-initial

---

[1] BP: [i] is often pronounced between two clustered consonants beginning in *p / b / t / d / c / g / f / v,* and not ending in *l / r* (see p. 3: 6 for details).

[2] EP: The following variant sounds occasionally occur in intervocalic position (like in Spanish):

(a) [β] (variant of [b]) *(bebo)*

(b) [ð] (variant of [d]) *(dedo)*

(c) [γ] (variant of [g]) *(gago / águia)*

[3] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis over the *u* of *qu / gu* to transcribe [k^{u}] / [g^{u}].

SOUND	LETT.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
[**f**]	*f*	*fofo / África*	like Eng. *fife*
[**v**][1]	*v*	*viver / lavava / lavrador*	like Eng. *valve*
[**s**]			like Eng. *sense:*
[**s**]	*s*	*sol*	word-initial
[**s**]	*s*	*valsa / absoluto / penso*	syllable-initial after consonant / orthographic *n*
[**s**]	*ss*	*isso / posso*	intervocalic
[**s**]	*c*	*cem / ciência / recife*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
[**s**]	*ç*	*dança / moço / açúcar*	before *a / o / u;* syllable-initial
[**s**]	*x*	*exsicar / excesso / excitar*	word-initial *ex* before [s]
[**š**]			like Eng. *shush:*
[**š**]	*ch*	*cheiro / achar*	syllable- / word-initial
[**š**]	*x*	*xícara / xarope*	word-initial
[**š**]	*x*	*enxugar / baixo / deixar*	syllable-initial after orthographic *n* / vowel + *i*
[**s**] / [**š**][2]	*s*	*ascender / desça / as salas*	syllable- / word-final before [s]
[**s**] / [**š**][2]	*s / z*	*livros / rapaz / as salas*	word-final before pause / following *s*
[**s**] / [**š**][2]	*s / z / x*	*experimento / isto / faísca / as quedas / atriz famosa*	syllable- / word-final before voiceless consonants *p / t / c(qu) / f*
[**z**]			like Eng. *zigzag:*
[**z**]	*z*	*zero*	word-initial
[**z**]	*z*	*papelzinho / cinza*	syllable-initial after consonant / orthographic *n*
[**z**]	*s / z*	*casa / rapazes*	intervocalic
[**z**]	*s / z*	*os olhos / rapaz zangado*	word-final before following vowel / *z*
[**z**]	*x*	*exame / êxito / ex-amigo*	word-initial *ex* before vowel
[**ž**]			like Eng. *azure / leisure:*
[**ž**]	*j*	*jeito / janta / beijo*	syllable- / word-initial
[**ž**]	*g*	*geral / agir*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
[**z**] / [**ž**][2]	*s / z / x*	*Lisboa / luz dura / rasgo / as vozes / os lagos / ex-rei / asma / asno*	syllable- / word-final before voiced consonants *b / d / g / v / l / r / m / n*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: The sound [v] does not occur in most dialects of Spanish.

[2] Dialect determines the pronunciation in syllable- / word-final positions.

SOUNDS:		TEND TO OCCUR IN:
[s] / [z]	→	BP
[š] / [ž]	→	EP / Carioca (= dialect of Rio de Janeiro)

SOUND	LETT.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
[**m**][1]	*m*	*cama / mima / mamãe*	like Eng. *mum:* syllable- / word-initial
[**n**][1]	*n*	*cana / mina / nono*	similar to Eng. *nun:* syllable- / word-initial
[ɲ][1]	*nh*	*canha / minha*	somewhat similar to Sp. *caña* / Eng. *minion:*[2] syllable- / word-initial (see p. 17n4 for details)
[**l**]	*l*	*lado / fala*	similar to Eng. *lily:* syllable- / word-initial
[ᵘ] / [**ł**][3]	*l*	*alto / hotel*	similar to Eng. *know / knoll,* respectively: variants of [l] when syllable-final / word-final before pause
[**λ**]	*lh*	*olho / milhão / lhes*	somewhat similar to Sp. *millón* / Eng. *million:* syllable- / word-initial (see p. 17n3 for details)
[ɾ]			like Sp. *caro;* somewhat similar to Eng. *ladder:*
[ɾ]	*r*	*caro*	intervocalic
[ɾ]	*r*	*falar italiano*	word-final before following vowel
[ɾ]	*r*	*trem / praia / nobre*	after all consonants except *s / l /* orthographic *n*
/**R**/			pronunciation varies widely among and within Portuguese-speaking countries: [h] (similar to Eng. *ahoy*) [x] (similar to Sp. *ojo*) [R][4] (similar to a voiced gargling sound) [r][4] (similar to Sp. *carro*)
/**R**/	*r*	*rosa*	word-initial after pause
/**R**/	*r*	*Israel / chilrar / honra*	syllable-initial after *s / l /* orthographic *n*
/**R**/	*r*	*falar russo*	word-final before following *r*
/**R**/	*rr*	*carro*	intervocalic
/**R**// [ɾ][3]	*r*	*arte / cantar*	syllable-final / word-final before pause

---

[1] Dialect determines the degree to which a vowel preceding a nasal consonant + vowel is nasalized *(cama / cana / canha);* BP tends to nasalize the vowel more than EP.

[2] Unlike the [ɲ] of Sp. *caña,* the [ɲ] of Port. *canha* is normally produced with the tongue barely touching the roof of the mouth; in effect, *canha* is pronounced [kẽỹa].

[3] Dialect determines the pronunciation in syllable- / word-final positions.

SOUNDS:		TEND TO OCCUR IN:
[ᵘ] / /R// [ɾ]	→	BP (final *-r* of infinitives often disappears *[cantar > "cantá"]*)
[ł] / [ɾ]	→	EP

[4] These voiced variant sounds are less common in BP than in EP (in which [R] predominates).

WRITING SYSTEM AND ACCENTUATION

ALPHABET

1) Portuguese has the same alphabet as English.

LETTER	PRONUNCIATION	
a	*a*	
b	*bê*	[e]
c[1]	*cê*	[e]
d	*dê*	[e]
e	*é / ê*	[ɛ] / [e]
f[2]	*efe*	[ɛ]
g	*gê*	[e]
h	*agá*	
i	*i*	
j	*jota*	[ɔ]
k[3]	*cá / capa*	
l[1]	*ele*	[ɛ]
m	*eme*	[ɛ]
n[1]	*ene*	[ɛ]
o	*ó / ô*	[ɔ] / [o]
p[2]	*pê*	[e]
q	*quê*	[e]
r[2]	*erre*	[ɛ]
s	*esse*	[ɛ]
t[2]	*tê*	[e]
u	*u*	
v	*vê*	[e]
w[3]	*dáblio*	
x	*xis*	
y[3]	*ípsilon*	
z	*zê*	[e]

2) Portuguese has two double consonant letters, which occur only in intervocalic position.[4]

-rr-	*erre duplo*	*(carro)*	
-ss-	*esse duplo*	*(professora)*	(unlike in Spanish)

---

[1] *ç (cê-cedilha[do]) / ch / lh / nh* are not considered separate letters.
[2] *ph / rh / th* are archaic and have been replaced by *f / r / t,* respectively.
[3] *k / w / y* are used only in foreign words. Greek *y (symbol)* is usually transcribed *i (símbolo)* in Portuguese.
[4] The archaic double letters *ll* / *nn* have been replaced by single *l / n,* respectively; for etymological reasons, however, EP still retains *nn* in the contraction *connosco* ("with us").

3) Portuguese and Spanish use a single consonant letter for the following English letters (which were used in archaic Portuguese).

	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH		ENGLISH	
m	*comum*	*m*	*común*	*mm*	*common*
n	*Ana*	*n*	*Ana*	*nn*	*Ann*
f	*telefone*	*f*	*teléfono*	*ph*	*telephone*
r	*retórica*	*r*	*retórica*	*rh*	*rhetoric*
t	*atleta*	*t*	*atleta*	*th*	*athlete*
c- [s]	*ciência*	*c-*	*ciencia*	*sc-*	*science*
c [k]	*tecnologia*	*c*	*tecnología*	*ch*	*technology*
qu	*arquiteto*	*qu*	*arquitecto*	*ch*	*architect*

4) Portuguese eliminated the unpronounced letters *m // c // p* in the consonant clusters *mn // cç / cc / ct // pç / pc / pt.* In many words, however, *m / c / p* are pronounced by some speakers but not by others, in which case the use of these letters is optional; in a few words, *m / c / p* are consistently pronounced (like in Spanish and English), and the use of these letters is obligatory.

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
(m)n	*mn*	*mn*
aluno	*alumno*	*alumnus*
coluna	*columna*	*column*
hino	*himno*	*hymn*
solene	*solemne*	*solemn*
a(m)nistia	*amnistía*	*amnesty*
inde(m)nidade	*indemnidad*	*indemnity*
o(m)ni-	*omni-*	*omni-*
amnésia	*amnesia*	*amnesia*

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
(c)ç	*cc*	*ct*
ação / reação	*acción / reacción*	*action / reaction*
coleção	*colección*	*collection*
correção	*corrección*	*correction*
direção	*dirección*	*direction*
injeção	*inyección*	*injection*
projeção	*proyección*	*projection*
proteção	*protección*	*protection*
seleção	*selección*	*selection*
di(c)ção	*dicción*	*diction*
fra(c)ção	*fracción*	*fraction*
infe(c)ção	*infección*	*infection*
convicção	*convicción*	*conviction*
ficção	*ficción*	*fiction*
(c)c	*cc*	*cc / ct*
acidente	*accidente*	*accident*
colecionar	*coleccionar*	*collect*
direcional	*direccional*	*directional*
selecionar	*seleccionar*	*select*
infe(c)cioso	*infeccioso*	*infectious*
(c)t	*ct*	*ct*
ato / atual // exato	*acto / actual // exacto*	*act(ual) // exact*
coletivo	*colectivo*	*collective*
correto	*correcto*	*correct*
direto / diretor	*directo / director*	*direct / director*
eletricidade	*electricidad*	*electricity*
espetáculo	*espectáculo*	*spectacle*
injetar	*inyectar*	*inject*
projeto	*proyecto*	*project*
vítima	*víctima*	*victim*
aspe(c)to	*aspecto*	*aspect*
cara(c)terística	*característica*	*characteristic*
elé(c)trico	*eléctrico*	*electric*
fa(c)to	*(hecho)*	*fact*
fra(c)tura	*fractura*	*fracture*
infe(c)tar	*infectar*	*infect*
se(c)tor	*sector*	*sector*
bactéria	*bacteria*	*bacteria*
convicto	*convicto*	*convict(ed)*
fictício	*ficticio*	*fictitious*
pacto / compacto / impacto	*pacto / compacto / impacto*	*pact / compact / impact*

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
(p)ç[1]	*pc*	*pt*
adoção	*adopción*	*adoption*
exceção	*excepción*	*exception*
conce(p)ção	*concepción*	*conception*
corru(p)ção	*corrupción*	*corruption*
dece(p)ção	*decepción*	*deception*
rece(p)ção	*recepción*	*reception*
erupção	*erupción*	*eruption*
opção	*opción*	*option*
(p)c[1]	*pc*	*pt*
exce(p)cional	*excepcional*	*exceptional*
rece(p)cionista	*recepcionista*	*receptionist*
egípcio	*egipcio*	*Egyptian*
núpcias	*nupcias*	*nuptials*
opcional	*opcional*	*optional*
(p)t[1]	*pt*	*pt*
adotar	*adoptar*	*adopt*
Egito	*Egipto*	*Egypt*
ótimo	*óptimo*	*optimum*
corru(p)to	*corrupto*	*corrupt*
exce(p)to	*excepto*	*except*
o(p)timista	*optimista*	*optimist*
adepto / inepto	*adepto / inepto*	*adept / inept*
apto	*apto*	*apt*
optar	*optar*	*opt*
rapto	*rapto*	*rapt*

---

[1] If the letter *p* of *mpç / mpc / mpt* is eliminated, the *m* changes to *n* (like in Spanish):

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
mp / n	*n*	*mp*
assumpção / assunção	*asunción*	*assumption*
sumptuoso / suntuoso	*suntuoso*	*sumptuous*

LETTERS USED TO TRANSCRIBE PORTUGUESE SOUNDS

Portuguese letters are pronounced in the following ways.

LETTER(S)	SND.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
a	[a][1]	*gato / sofá / lava / aula*	oral vowel
a	[ɐ][1]	*lava / aula*	oral unstressed word-final vowel
ã	[ɐ̃]	*irmã / órfã*	nasal word-final vowel
am // an	[ɐ̃]	*samba // canta*	nasal syllable-final vowel
am	[ɐ̃ũ]	*cantam / cantaram*	nasal unstressed word-final diphthong
ão	[ɐ̃ũ]	*alemão / limão / cantarão*	nasal stressed word-final diphthong
ãe	[ɐ̃ĩ]	*mãe / alemães*	nasal stressed word-final diphthong
b	[b]	*bebo / nobre / absoluto*	
c	[k]	*coca / cura / acredito*	before *a / o / u /* consonant
c	[s]	*cem / ciência / recife*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
ç	[s]	*dança / moço / açúcar*	before *a / o / u;* syllable-initial
ch	[š]	*cheiro / achar*	syllable- / word-initial
cu	[kᵘ]	*cuecas / cuidado*	before *e / i;* word-initial
d	[d]	*dedo / drama / aldeia*	
d	[dž]	*adquiri / Edgar / admite / adscrito / advérbio // dia / pede*	BP only (many dialects): before *c(qu) / g / m / s / v // i /* unstressed word-final *e* [i]
e	[ɛ]	*bebe / Sé / pé*	oral open vowel
e	[e]	*bebo / sê / você*	oral closed vowel
e	[i][2]	*bebe / classe*	oral unstressed word-final vowel
em // en	[ẽ]	*lembro // mente*	nasal syllable-final vowel
em // en	[ẽĩ]	*bem / comem // homens*	nasal word-final diphthong
f	[f]	*fofo / África*	
g	[ž]	*geral / agir*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
g	[g]	*gago / gula / agradecer*	before *a / o / u /* consonant
g	[g]	*gnóstico*	word-initial *g(n)* is pronounced
gu	[g]	*guerra / águia*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
gu	[gᵘ]	*guarda / ambíguo*	before *a / o;* syllable- / word-initial
gu[3]	[gᵘ]	*aguentar / linguística*	before *e / i;* syllable-initial

---

[1] BP: [a] / [ɐ] alternate in unstressed word-final position.
[2] EP: [ɨ].
[3] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *gu* to transcribe [gᵘ].

LETTER(S)	SND.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
h	silent	*homem*	word-initial
h	silent	*pré-história*	after hyphenated prefix[1]
h	silent	*oh! / ah!*	word-final in interjections
i	[i]	*fica / rubi*	oral vowel
im // in	[ĩ]	*jardim // jardins / pinto*	nasal vowel
j	[ž]	*jeito / janta / beijo*	syllable- / word-initial
k			used only in foreign words
l	[l]	*lado / fala*	syllable- / word-initial
l	[ᵘ] / [ł][2]	*alto / hotel*	syllable-final / word-final before pause
lh	[λ]	*olho / milhão / lhes*	syllable- / word-initial[3]
m	[m]	*cama / mima / mamãe*	syllable- / word-initial
m	nasal	*sim / homem / campo*	syllable- / word-final *m* is silent but indicates nasalization of preceding vowel
n	[n]	*cana / mina / nono*	syllable- / word-initial
n	nasal	*homens / tanto*	syllable- / word-final *n* is silent but indicates nasalization of preceding vowel
nh	[ɲ]	*canha / minha*	syllable- / word-initial[4]
o	[ɔ]	*roda / pode / avó*	oral open vowel
o	[o]	*rodo / pôde / avô*	oral closed vowel
o	[u]	*lavo / carro*	oral unstressed word-final vowel
om // on	[õ]	*marrom // marrons / ponto*	nasal vowel
õe(m)	[õⁱ]	*limões / põe / põem*	nasal stressed word-final diphthong
p	[p]	*popular / apreciar*	
		pneu / psique	word-initial *p(n / s)* is pronounced

---

[1] See pp. xxxiv–xxxv for details on hyphenation.

[2] Dialect determines the pronunciation in syllable- / word-final positions.

SOUND:		TENDS TO OCCUR IN:
[ᵘ]	→	BP
[ł]	→	EP

[3] *lh* is not usually word-initial except in the indirect object pronouns *lhe(s) / lho(s) / lha(s)* and in words borrowed from Spanish (*lhano* and *lhama* [a word of Quechuan origin]).

[4] *nh* is not usually word-initial except in colloquial BP abbreviated words *(nhá / nhô [< senhora / senhor])* and in words of Tupian origin *(nhambu)*.

LETTER(S)	SND.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
q			always followed by *u* + vowel
qu	[k]	*que / conquista*	before *e / i;* syllable- / word-initial
qu[1]	[k^{u}]	*qual / aquário / quota*	before *a / o;* syllable- / word-initial
qu[2]	[k^{u}]	*frequente / tranquilo*	before *e / i;* syllable-initial
r	[ɾ]	*caro*	intervocalic
r	[ɾ]	*falar italiano*	word-final before following vowel
r	[ɾ]	*trem / praia / nobre*	after all consonants except *s / l /* orthographic *n*
r	/R/	*rosa*	word-initial after pause
r	/R/	*Israel / chilrar / honra*	syllable-initial after *s / l /* orthographic *n*
r	/R/	*falar russo*	word-final before following *r*
r	/R// [ɾ][3]	*arte / cantar*	syllable-final / word-final before pause
rr	/R/	*carro*	intervocalic
s	[s]	*sol*	word-initial
s	[s]	*valsa / absoluto / penso*	syllable-initial after consonant / orthographic *n*
s	[s] / [š][3]	*livros / Deus / as salas*	word-final before pause / following *s*
s	[s] / [š][3]	*ascender / desça / as salas*	syllable- / word-final before [s]
s	[s] / [š][3]	*espaço / isto / as canas / transferir*	syllable- / word-final before voiceless consonants *p / t / c(qu) / f*
s	[z] / [ž][3]	*Lisboa / desde / rasgo / as vozes / desligar / os ratos / as malas / as nós*	syllable- / word-final before voiced consonants *b / d / g / v / l / r / m / n*
s	[z]	*casa*	intervocalic
s	[z]	*os olhos / as zebras*	word-final before following vowel / *z*
ss	[s]	*isso / posso*	intervocalic
t	[t]	*teto / três / alto*	
t	[tš]	*ritmo / étnico // tio / noites*	BP only (many dialects): before *m / n // i /* unstressed word-final *e* [i]

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish uses the letters *cu* to transcribe [k^{u}] before *a / o (cual / cuota).*
[2] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *qu* to transcribe [k^{u}].
[3] Dialect determines the pronunciation in syllable- / word-final positions.

SOUNDS:		TEND TO OCCUR IN:
/R// [ɾ]	→	BP (final *-r* of infinitives often disappears *[cantar > "cantá"]*)
[ɾ]	→	EP
[s] / [z]	→	BP (most dialects)
[š] / [ž]	→	EP / Carioca (= dialect of Rio de Janeiro)

LETTER(S)	SND.	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
u	[u]	*lua / peru*	oral vowel
um // un	[ũ]	*algum // alguns / fundo*	nasal vowel
ui	[ũ^{i}]	*muito / muitas*	nasal diphthong (transcribed without a tilde)
v	[v]	*viver / lavava / lavrador*	
w			used only in foreign words
x	[s]	*exsicar / excesso / excitar*	word-initial *ex* before [s]
x	[z]	*exame / êxito / ex-amigo*	word-initial *ex* before vowel
x	[š]	*xícara / xarope*	word-initial
x	[š]	*enxugar / baixo / deixar*	syllable-initial after orthographic *n* / vowel + *i*
x	[s] / [š][1]	*experimento / texto / excluir / ex-fã*	syllable- / word-final before voiceless consonants *p / t / c(qu) / f*
x	[z] / [ž][1]	*ex-bispo / ex-diplomata / ex-governador / ex-vigário ex-leitor / ex-rei / ex-ministro / ex-núncio*	syllable- / word-final before voiced consonants *b / d / g / v / l / r / m / n*
x	[s]	*trouxe / próximo / máximo*	intervocalic (in certain words)[2]
x	[š]	*lixo / mexer / puxar*	intervocalic (in certain words)[2]
x	[ks]	*táxi / -exo / -fixo*	intervocalic (in certain words)[2]
x	[ks]	*clímax / tórax*	word-final (in most words)[2]
y			used only in foreign words
z	[z]	*zero*	word-initial
z	[z]	*papelzinho / cinza*	syllable-initial after consonant / orthographic *n*
z	[z]	*rapazes*	intervocalic
z	[z]	*luz azul / rapaz zangado*	word-final before following vowel / *z*
z	[z] / [ž][1]	*rapaz bonito / giz duro / luz grande / faz velas / rapaz louro / giz roxo / felizmente / Feliz Natal*	syllable- / word-final before voiced consonants *b / d / g / v / l / r / m / n*
z	[s] / [š][1]	*giz / rapaz sério*	word-final before pause / following *s*
z	[s] / [š][1]	*rapaz pálido / luz tênue / giz caro / rapaz feio*	syllable- / word-final before voiceless consonants *p / t / c(qu) / f*

---

[1] Dialect determines the pronunciation in syllable- / word-final positions.

SOUNDS:		TEND TO OCCUR IN:
[s] / [z]	→	BP (most dialects)
[š] / [ž]	→	EP / Carioca (= dialect of Rio de Janeiro)

[2] With the exception of the regular patterns (seen above), the pronunciation of the letter *x* varies according to the word and must therefore be learned.

CAPITALIZATION

1) Like English, Portuguese capitalizes:[1]

personal names	*(Pedro de Sousa e Castro)*
placenames	*(o Brasil)*
names of institutions and organizations	*(Instituto do Vinho do Porto)*
names of holidays and feast days	*(Natal / Todos os Santos)*
titles of newspapers, journals, and magazines	*(Diário de Notícias)*
acronyms and abbreviations of organizations	*(ONU / CPLP)*
cardinal points used in regions and placenames	*(Mora no Norte.)*[2]
abbreviations of cardinal points	*(SW [= sudoeste])*

2) Unlike English, Portuguese does not capitalize:

subject pronoun *eu* (English "I")	*(Pedro e eu vamos a Faial.)*
days of the week	*(Hoje é sábado.)*
months	*(Você nasceu em junho?)*
seasons of the year	*(Gostamos do verão.)*
religions	*(Roberto é católico.)*
nationalities	*(Somos franceses.)*
languages	*(Falo espanhol.)*

3) Capitalization is optional in:

forms of address and titles	*(Doutor / doutor Fontes)*
religious names	*(São / são João)*
names of streets	*(Rua / rua do Comércio)*
names of public buildings and sites	*(Palácio / palácio da Ajuda)*
names of academic subjects and courses	*(Estuda Inglês / inglês.)*
titles of books, plays, movies, etc.[3]	*(O Alquimista / O alquimista)*
widely held theories	*(A Lei da Atração / A lei da atração)*

---

[1] Articles and short prepositions in names and titles are not capitalized.
[2] vs. *mora no norte do Brasil* (= cardinal point designating a direction).
[3] The first word is capitalized; articles, conjunctions, and short prepositions are not.

PUNCTUATION MARKS AND COMMONLY USED TYPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS

The following are the punctuation marks and common typographic symbols used in Portuguese.[1]

MARK	ENGLISH	*PORTUGUESE*
.	period	*ponto (final)*
,	comma	*vírgula*
;	semicolon	*ponto-e-vírgula*
:	colon	*dois pontos*
...	ellipsis points	*reticências*
-	hyphen[2]	*hífen* (m) */ traço de união*
–	dash	*travessão* (m)
_	<u>underline</u> / <u>underscore</u>	<u>*traço*</u> <u>*inferior*</u>
'	apostrophe	*apóstrofo* (used to represent a missing letter)
" "	quotation marks	*aspas*
< >	chevrons / angle brackets	*chevrons* (m)
[ ]	square brackets	*colchetes* (m)
{ }	braces / curly brackets	*chaves* (f)
( )	parentheses	*parênteses* (m)
?	question / interrogation mark	*ponto de interrogação*[3]
!	exclamation mark	*ponto de exclamação*[3]
*****	asterisk	*asterisco*
/	slash / forward-slash	*barra*
****	backslash	*barra inversa \ contrabarra*
%	percent sign	*percentagem / porcentagem* (f)
#	number / pound sign	*cerquilha* ("little [picket] fence")
&	ampersand / "and" sign	*ampersand / "e" comercial* (m)
@	aspersand / "at" sign	*arroba*[4]
©	copyright symbol	*símbolo de direitos autorais*

---

[1] These marks and symbols are standard on computer keyboards.
[2] See pp. xxxiv–xxxv for details on hyphenation.
[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese does not use an inverted mark preceding either a question or an exclamation.
[4] The word *arroba* derives from an Arabic word for a measurement of weight roughly equivalent to 15 kg (33 lbs.); in addition to the "at" sign, *arroba* still signifies this measurement in Portuguese (and Spanish).

DIACRITICAL MARKS

1) The following are the diacritical marks used in Portuguese.[1]

MARK	ENG. *PORT.*	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
¸ (**ç**)	cedilla *cedilha*	*dança / moço / açúcar*	used under *c* before *a / o / u* to transcribe [s]
˜	tilde *til* (m)	*irmã // mão / mãe / põe*	indicates nasal vowel // diphthong
`	grave accent *acento grave*		contracts preposition *a* with:
		à praia / às praias	feminine definite article *a(s)*
		àquele(s) / àquela(s) / àquilo	demonstratives
´	acute accent *acento agudo*		indicates stressed:
		sofá // cafés / avó // *céu / papéis / espanhóis*	*a //* open *e / o* [ɛ] / [ɔ] // open *e / o* of *éu / éi / ói* in last syllable[2a]
		gramática // ímpeto / último // *médico / lógico*	*a* (except before *m / n*) *// i / u //* open *e / o* in second-to-last syllable[3]
		país (vs. *pais*) / *baú*	*i / u* after vowel[2b, 2c]
ˆ	circumflex *acento circunflexo*		indicates stressed:
		vocês / avô	closed *e / o* [e] / [o] in last syllable
		lâmpada // êxito / ônibus	*a(m / n) //* closed *e / o* in second-to-last syllable[3]

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) *("trema")* over the *u* of *gu / qu* to transcribe [g^u] / [k^u] *(linguiça / frequente)*.

[2] Portuguese does not use an acute accent over stressed

(a) *e / o* of *ei / oi* in words stressed on next-to-last syllable *(ideia / heroica)*

(b) *i / u* after diphthong *(cheiinho / feiura)*

(c) *i / u* after vowel and before syllable- / word-final letters *l / r / z / m / n,* or before *nh*
(Raul / influir / juiz / Coimbra / ainda // rainha)

[3] These marks also indicate the stressed vowel in the next-to-last syllable of words ending in *-l / -eis // -r // -x // -n(s) // -ps // -i(s) // -us // -um / -uns // -ã(s) / -ão(s)* (see p. 27: 2 for examples).

2) A circumflex is also used to mark the following present-tense forms (original and derived).[1]

INFINITIVE	1st-PERS. SING.	2nd-PERS. SING.	3rd-PERS. SING.	MOOD
crer		*crês*	*crê*	indicative
ler		*lês*	*lê*	indicative
ver		*vês*	*vê*	indicative
dar	*dê*	*dês*	*dê*	subjunctive

3) "Differential" diacritical marks

a) A circumflex is used to differentiate the following homographs.[2]

de	(preposition)	vs.	*dê*	(present subj. of *dar;* see above)
pode	(present indic. of *poder*)	vs.	*pôde*	(preterite indic. of *poder*)
por	(preposition)	vs.	*pôr*	(infinitive)
porque	(conjunction)	vs.	*porquê*	(noun)
o que	(pronoun)	vs.	*o quê*	(pronoun; see p. 114 for details)
se	(reflexive pronoun)	vs.	*sê*	(standard *tu* imperative of *ser*)

b) A circumflex marks the 3rd-person plural present indicative of *ter / vir* and derived verbs in order to differentiate it from the 3rd-person singular, which is not marked in *ter / vir* but is marked with an acute accent in derived verbs.

INFINITIVE	3rd-PERS. SING.	3rd-PERS. PLUR.
ter	*tem*	*têm*
conter	*contém*	*contêm*
vir	*vem*	*vêm*
convir	*convém*	*convêm*

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* in the 3rd-pers. plur. forms *cr<u>e</u>em / l<u>e</u>em / v<u>e</u>em / d<u>e</u>em*.

[2] Portuguese no longer uses a diacritical mark to differentiate the following homographs:

para	(preposition / verb)
pelo	(contraction / verb / noun)
pela	(contraction / verb / noun)
polo	(archaic contraction / nouns)
pero	(archaic contraction / noun)
pera	(archaic contraction / noun)

SYLLABLES AND WORD DIVISION

1) Knowing how syllables are formed enables the speaker or writer to divide words correctly.

2) A syllable should not be divided in either spoken or written Portuguese.

3) The nucleus of a syllable is always a vowel (not a semivowel) *(coi-sa)*.

4) The following sequential letters form:

ONE SYLLABLE	EXAMPLES
vowel / diphthong (word-final [+ consonant] or followed by consonant + vowel):	
in word-initial position	*a-vó / au-la / ei-xo*
preceded by single consonant	*sa-pa-to / coi-sa*
preceded by *ch / lh / nh / gu / qu*	*a-cha / o-lho / ba-nho / á-gua / a-quo-so*
preceded by *p / b / t / d / c / g / f / v + l / r*	*a-plau-so / a-brem / i-lus-trar / Pe-dro / in-clui / glo-bo / in-flui / li-vro*
consonant + 2 unstressed word-final vowels (+ *s*)[1]	*ân-sia / sé-ries / gê-nio / á-gua / vá-cuo / á-rea / má-goa / ó-leos*

TWO SYLLABLES	EXAMPLES
a-e / a-o / e-a / e-o / o-a / o-e, 1 vowel of which is stressed[2]	*sa-em / ca-os / le-al / le-o-a / po-e-ma*
unstressed vowel + stressed *i / u*[3, 4]	*Lu-ís / vi-ú-va // Ra-ul / in-flu-ir / ju-iz / Co-im-bra / a-in-da / ra-i-nha*
2 consonants (except if the 1st is *p / b / t / d / c / g / f / v,* and the 2nd is *l / r*)	*gol-pe / for-te / car-ro / Car-los / am-bos / ten-da / hon-ra / des-res-pei-to / des-ço / fe-liz-men-te / ex-ces-so*
3 or more consonants, divided between the 2nd and 3rd (except if the 3rd is *l / r*)	*abs-ter / ins-ti-gar / ins-tru-men-to*

---

[1] See p. 26: 2 for more details and examples. Confusing is the fact that Portuguese orthography counts these same unstressed sequences as two syllables *(ân-si-a)* (see p. 4: 4 for details).
[2] I.e., 2 "strong" vowels, 1 of which is stressed.
[3] This stressed *i / u* is not marked with an acute accent if followed by syllable- / word-final letters *l / r / z / m / n,* or by *nh.*
[4] Note to Spanish Speakers: These Portuguese vowels in hiatus often correspond to Spanish "rising" diphthongs *(Luis / in-fluir / viu-da)*.

STRESS AND ACCENTUATION

1) If a Portuguese word has only one syllable, the word is either stressed or unstressed. If the word is unstressed, a syllable of the following or preceding word is stressed.

STRESSED EXAMPLES	UNSTRESSED EXAMPLES
dê	*de (Alberto)*
nós	*(recite-)nos*
sê	*(levante-)se*

2) If the word has more than one syllable, one syllable is stressed; the others are unstressed.

3) If a word is marked with a tilde (˜), an acute accent (´), or a circumflex (ˆ), the marked syllable is stressed.

irmã / fácil / ônibus

4) If a tilde occurs in a word with an acute accent or a circumflex, the syllable marked with the acute accent or circumflex is stressed, and the syllable marked with the tilde is unstressed; that is, the acute accent or circumflex prevails over the tilde in determining stress.

bênção / órfão / órgão

5) If a word has more than one syllable, the stress falls on one of the following:

a) second-to-last syllable:[1]

médico / Atlântico

b) next-to-last syllable:[2]

canta / fácil

c) last syllable:

animal / cantar / português

---

[1] The second-to-last syllable is always marked with an acute accent or a circumflex.
[2] This is the most common stress pattern.

WORDS STRESSED ON THE SECOND-TO-LAST SYLLABLE (PROPAROXYTONES)

1) All Portuguese words stressed on the second-to-last syllable are marked with an acute accent or a circumflex.[1]

DIACRITIC	LETTER	EXAMPLES
acute accent	*a* (except before *m / n)*	*gramática*
	i	*proparoxítona / líquido / ímpeto*
	u	*esdrúxula / último / úmbrico*
	open *e* [ɛ]	*médico*
	open *o* [ɔ]	*lógica*
circumflex	*a(m // n)*	*dinâmicos / lâmpada // ânimo / Atlântico*
	closed *e* [e]	*êxito / acadêmico / congênitos / idêntica*
	closed *o* [o]	*lôbrego / fenômeno / ônibus / recônditas*

2) Words stressed on the syllable preceding the following unstressed word-final vowel sequences (+ *s*) are marked with an acute accent or a circumflex (see guidelines above).[1, 2, 3]

VOWEL SEQUENCE	EXAMPLES
-ia	*glória / represálias / ânsia / Antônia*
-ie	*superfície / séries*
-io	*início / laboratórios / gênio / Antônio*
-ua	*língua / contínua / águas*
-ue	*tênue*
-uo	*contínuo / ingênuos*
-ea	*aérea / gêmeas*
-eo	*óleo / núcleos*
-oa	*mágoa / amêndoas*

---

[1] BP and EP pronounce differently the *e / o* before *m / n* in proparoxytones (including words ending in an unstressed vowel sequence):
BP: Always closed *e / o,* marked with a circumflex *(acadêmico / fenômeno // Antônia / gêmeas);*
EP: Usually open *e / o,* marked with an acute accent *(académico / fenómeno // Antónia / gémeas).*

[2] These words are often called "false" or "apparent" proparoxytones: Portuguese orthography treats them as proparoxytones with unstressed vowels in hiatus and therefore marks the vowel of the preceding stressed syllable *(gló-ri-a);* for the purpose of word division, however, Portuguese treats these same words as paroxytones with unstressed "rising" diphthongs *(gló-ria).*

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: The stressed vowel preceding unstressed word-final *i / u + a / e / o* is not marked in Spanish *(gloria),* unlike in Portuguese *(glória),* since Spanish consistently treats these words as paroxytones with unstressed "rising" diphthongs *(glo-ria).*

WORDS STRESSED ON THE NEXT-TO-LAST SYLLABLE (PAROXYTONES)

1) Portuguese words stressed on the next-to-last syllable (the most common stress pattern) are not marked with an acute accent or a circumflex if they end in the following letters.[1]

LETTERS	EXAMPLES
-a(s)	*rosa / advogadas*
-e(s)	*classe / verdes*
-o(s)	*livro / engenheiros*
-am	*cantam / cantaram / cantavam*
-em / -ens	*homem / homens // viagem / viagens*

2) Words stressed on the next-to-last syllable and ending in the following letters are marked with an acute accent or a circumflex (see guidelines on p. 26: 1).[2, 3]

LETTERS	EXAMPLES
-l / -eis	*fácil / fáceis // réptil / répteis*
-r	*líder / âmbar / fêmur*
-x	*clímax / tórax*
-n(s)	*abdômen / hífens*
-ps	*bíceps / fórceps*
-i(s)	*júri / lápis / tênis*
-us	*vírus / bônus*
-um / -uns	*álbum / álbuns // fórum / fóruns*
-ã(s) / -ão(s)	*órfã // órgão / bênçãos*

3) Words stressed on the *i / u* of the following word-final vowel sequences (+ *s*) are not marked with an acute accent (unlike in Spanish).[4]

VOWEL SEQUENCE	EXAMPLES
-io / -ia	*inicio / tias*
-uo / -ua	*duos / continua*

Compare:	*inicio*	(verb)	vs.	*início*	(noun)
	continua	(verb)	vs.	*contínua*	(adj.)

---

[1] Exception: A few such words (listed on p. 23: 3a) are marked with a "differential" diacritic.
[2] Paroxytones ending in these letters are not common in Portuguese.
[3] BP and EP pronounce differently the *e / o* before *m / n* in paroxytones:
BP: Always closed *e / o,* marked with a circumflex *(fêmur / abdômen / tênis / bônus);*
EP: Usually open *e / o,* marked with an acute accent *(fémur / abdómen / ténis / bónus).*
[4] Note to Spanish Speakers: The *i / u* of these sequences are marked in Spanish to indicate that they are vowels in hiatus *(tías / continúa);* unmarked, they are semivowels *(tiaras / continua).*

WORDS STRESSED ON THE LAST SYLLABLE (OXYTONES)

1) Portuguese words stressed on the last syllable (including monosyllabic words) are not marked with an acute accent or a circumflex if they end in the following letters.

PATTERN	LETTERS		EXAMPLES
	-l		*mel / sol / papel / espanhol / animal / azul*
	-r		*motor / ser / cantar*
	-z		*luz / rapaz / faz*
also *i // u* in	*-i(s) // -u(s)*[1]		*ti / si / rubis / comi / parti // tu / perus*
"falling" diphthongs:[2]	*-ai(s) // -au(s)*		*pai / animais // pau / maus*
	-ei(s) // -eu(s)	[e^i] // [e^u]	*reis / cantei / cantarei // seus / comeu*
	-oi(s) // -ou	[o^i] // [o^u]	*bois / foi // sou / cantou*
	-ui(s) // -iu		*azuis / fui // viu / partiu*
i / o / u + m / ns:	*-im / -ins*[1]		*mim // fim / fins // jardim / jardins*
	-om / -ons		*bom / bons // marrom / marrons*
	-um / -uns		*um / uns // nenhum / nenhuns*
tilde over *a / o:*	*-ã(s)*		*vã / irmãs*
	-ão(s)		*vão / irmãos / alemão / limão / cantarão*
	-ãe(s)		*mãe / alemães*
	-õe(s) / -õem		*limões / põe / põem*

2) Words stressed on the last syllable (including monosyllabic words) and ending in the following letters (+ *s*) are marked with an acute accent or a circumflex.

DIACRITIC	LETTERS		EXAMPLES
acute accent	*-a*		*m<u>á</u> / sof<u>á</u>s*
	open *-e / -o*	[ɛ] / [ɔ]	*p<u>é</u> / av<u>ó</u>s*
circumflex	closed *-e / -o*	[e] / [o]	*voc<u>ê</u> / av<u>ô</u>s*

3) Nonverbs stressed on the last syllable and ending in *-em // -ens* are[3]

a) not marked in monosyllabic words *(cem / sem / bem // bens)*
b) marked with an acute accent in polysyllabic words[4] *(tamb<u>é</u>m // parab<u>é</u>ns)*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese words stressed on a word-final *i // u (+ s // m / ns)* after a consonant are not marked *(mim / si / comi // tu / Peru),* unlike their Spanish cognates *(m<u>í</u> / s<u>í</u> / com<u>í</u> // t<u>ú</u> / Per<u>ú</u>);* exception: Sp. *ti,* since it has no unstressed homograph (unlike *m<u>í</u> / s<u>í</u>*).
[2] Oxytones ending in *-éu // -éi // -ói (c<u>é</u>u // m<u>é</u>is / pap<u>é</u>is // s<u>ó</u>is / espanh<u>ó</u>is)* are marked with an acute accent only to indicate that the vowels are open [$ɛ^u$] // [$ɛ^i$] // [$ɔ^i$].
[3] See p. 23: 3b for 3rd-pers. present indicative forms of *ter / vir* and derived verbs.
[4] Note the anomalous acute accent over the *e* of *-em / -en(s)* [$\tilde{e}^{\tilde{i}}$]. In older Portuguese, the circumflex, which normally indicates a closed *e* [e], was also (and correctly) used.

PORTUGUESE, SPANISH, AND ENGLISH COGNATES

COGNATES

1) Portuguese, Spanish, and English are Indo-European languages. Portuguese and Spanish are sister languages of their mother, Latin; they are called Romance languages (as are Catalan, French, Italian, and Romanian) because they derive from the language of Rome.

   English is a Germanic language and is therefore a cousin of Portuguese and Spanish. English vocabulary, however, is more Latinate than that of other Germanic languages (e.g., German and Swedish), due to the significant number of French words that came into English following the Norman conquest of England in 1066.

2) As a result of the "familiar" relationship between Portuguese, Spanish, and English, numerous words in these three languages are cognates; that is, they are related through derivation from the same ancestral root.

3) Most cognates derive from Latin.

LATIN ROOT WORDS	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
homo + caedere	*homicida*	*homicida*	*homicide*

4) Some cognates derive from Greek (often via Latin).

GREEK ROOT WORDS	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
philos + sophos	*filosofia*	*filosofía*	*philosophy*

5) Other cognates derive from Arabic (a non-Indo-European language).

ARABIC ROOT WORD	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
amir	*almirante*	*almirante*	*admiral*

6) Recognizing and forming cognates are efficient means to understand and speak a foreign language. Knowing the patterns that correspond between the sounds, letters, prefixes, and suffixes of the native language and the corresponding ones of the foreign language helps to expand vocabulary by enabling a person to recognize and form cognates without prior memorization of those particular words.

PORTUGUESE AND CORRESPONDING SPANISH AND ENGLISH SOUNDS AND LETTERS[1]

1) Portuguese nasal vowels and diphthongs represent a Spanish and English *n* [n].[2]

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
word-final vowel letter + *m / ns*		vowel + *n(es) / no(s)*		vowel + *n*	
	bom / bons		*bueno(s)*		*(bon-)*
	com		*con*		*(com- / con-)*
	som / sons		*son(es)*		*(son-)*
	um / uns		*uno(s)*		*one / (uni-)*
	bem		*bien*		*(bene-)*
	cem		*cien*		*(cent-)*
	cantam // cantaram		*cantan // cantaran / cantaron*		
	bebem / bebessem		*beben / bebiesen*		
-ão / -ães	[ɐ̃ʷ̃] / [ɐ̃ʲ̃]	*-án / -an(es)*		*a(i)n*	
	cão / cães		*can(es)*		*canine*
	capitão / capitães		*capitán / capitanes*		*captain*
	dão / vão (< ir) / estão[3]		*dan / van / están*[3]		
	cantarão		*cantarán*		
-ão / -ões	[ɐ̃ʷ̃] / [õʲ̃]	*-(i)ón / -(i)ones*		*-(i)on*	
	decisão / decisões		*decisión / decisiones*		*decision*
	lição / lições		*lección / lecciones*		*lesson*
	limão / limões		*limón / limones*		*lemon*
	nação / nações		*nación / naciones*		*nation*
-ão(s)	[ɐ̃ʷ̃]	*-ano(s)*		*n*	
	irmão		*hermano*		*(germane)*
	órfão		*huérfano*		*orphan*
	vão		*vano*		*vain*
-ã(s)	[ɐ̃]	*-ana(s)*		*n*	
	irmã		*hermana*		*(germane)*
	órfã		*huérfana*		*orphan*
	vã		*vana*		*vain*

---

[1] An italicized English word in parentheses is a partial cognate: although it derives from the same root, it differs in meaning and/or grammatical category from its Spanish and Portuguese cognates. Jack L. Ulsh details many of the cognate patterns found in the following pages in his *From Spanish to Portuguese* 65–76.

[2] See pp. 5–7 for details on nasal vowels and diphthongs. Latin *n* often disappeared in Portuguese but nasalized the surrounding vowels and diphthongs.

[3] Port. *são (< ser)* corresponds to Sp. *son; são (< santo),* to *san; são* ("healthy"), to *sano.*

2) The following patterns regularly correspond between Portuguese, Spanish, and English consonants.[1]

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
z	[z]	*z(a / o / u) // c(e / i)*	[s][2]	*z / c*	[z] / [s]
	zero		*cero*		*zero*
	azálea		*azalea*		*azalea*
	azul		*azul*		*azure*
	dez		*diez*		*(deci-)*
	vizinho		*vecino*		*vicinal / (vicinity)*
-s-	[z]	*-s-*	[s]	*s*	[s] / [z]
	caso		*caso*		*case*
	rosa		*rosa*		*rose*
-ss-	[s]	*-s-*	[s]	*ss*	[s]
	possível		*posible*		*possible*
	professor		*profesor*		*professor*
ç	[s]	*z*	[s][2]	*s / c*	[s]
	caça		*caza*		*chase*
	dança		*danza*		*dance*
-(i)x-	[š]	*-j-*	[x]	*s / x*	[s] / [ks]
	baixo		*bajo*		*base*
	eixo		*eje*		*axis*
g(e / i)	[ž]	*g(e / i)*	[x]	*g(e / i)*	[dž]
	general		*general*		*general*
	frágil		*frágil*		*fragile*
j(a / o / u)-	[ž]	*j(a / o / u)-*	[x]	*j(a / o / u)-*	[dž]
	jarro / jarra		*jarro / jarra*		*jar*
	jornada		*jornada*		*journey*
	junho / julho		*junio / julio*		*June / July*
					exception:
	jardim		*jardín*		*garden* [g]

---

[1] Although the letter of a particular Portuguese word may be the same in related Spanish and English words, the sound of the letter may be different.
[2] [s] represents Spanish American pronunciation; [θ], Castilian Spanish (= the *th* in Eng. *thin*).

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
-(i)t-	[t][1]	*-ch-*	[tš]	*ct*	[kt]
	feito		*hecho*		*fact*
	leite		*leche*		*(lact-)*
	noite		*noche*		*(noct-)*
	oito		*ocho*		*(oct-)*
					exception:
	muito		*mucho*		*(mu<u>lt</u>i-)* [lt]
v-	[v]	*v- / b-*	[b]	*v-*	[v]
	vã		*vana*		*vain*
	varanda		*baranda*		*veranda*
	varrer		*barrer*		("to sweep")
	vinho		*vino*		*(vine / vini-)*
-v-	[v]	*-v- / -b-*	[β]	*v / b*	[v] / [b]
	descrever		*describir*		*describe*
	haver		*haber*		("to have")[2]
	lavar		*lavar*		*(lav-)*
	cantava		*cantaba*		

3) The following patterns often correspond between Portuguese, Spanish, and English consonants.

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
f- (+ vowel)	[f]	*h-*	[silent]	*f-*	[f]
	fazer		*hacer*		*(fact)*
	ferro		*hierro*		*(ferro-)*
	filha		*hija*		*(filial)*
ch-	[š]	*ch-*	[tš]	*ch- / sh-*	[tš] / [š]
	China		*China*		*China*
	choque		*choque*		*shock*
ch-	[š]	*ll-*	[λ][3]	*cl- / fl- / pl-*	[kl] / [fl] / [pl]
	chamar		*llamar*		*(claim / clamor)*
	chama		*llama*		*flame*
	cheio		*lleno*		*(plenary / plenti-)*

---

[1] BP (many dialects): [tš] is a variant of [t] before unstressed word-final *e* [i].
[2] Port. *haver* / Sp. *haber* derive from Latin *habēre* ("to have"); Eng. *have* is a false cognate since it derives from Germanic *haben,* akin to Latin *capere* ("to seize") (> Eng. *captive*).
[3] The pronunciation of *ll* varies widely among Spanish-speaking countries.

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
l	[l]	*ll*	[λ][1]	*l*	[l]
	cavalaria		*caballería*		*cavalry*
	vila		*villa*		*villa(ge)*
-lh-	[λ]	*-ll-*	[λ][1]	*l*	[l]
	maravilha		*maravilla*		*marvel*
	milhão		*millón*		*million*
-lh-	[λ]	*-g- / -j-*	[x]	*l*	[l]
	colher		*coger*		*collect*
	conselho		*consejo*		*council / counsel*
no *-l-*[2]		*-l-*	[l]	*l*	[l]
	animais[3]		*animales*		*animals*
	cor		*color*		*color*
	dor		*dolor*		*dolor(ous) / (Dolores)*
	sair		*salir*		*(salient)*
-n-	[n]	*-ñ-*	[ɲ]	*n*	[n]
	ano		*año*		*(ann-)*
	ensi<u>n</u>ar		*enseñar*		*(ensig<u>n</u>)*
-nh-	[ɲ]	*-ñ-*	[ɲ]	*n*	[n]
	Espanha		*España*		*Spain*
	senhor(a)		*señor(a)*		*(senior)*
-nh-	[ɲ]	*-n-*	[n]	*n*	[n]
	dinheiro		*dinero*		*(denarius / dinar)*
	vinho		*vino*		*(vine / vini-)*
no *-n-*[4]		*-n-*	[n]	*n*	[n]
	lua		*luna*		*Luna(r)*
	pessoa		*persona*		*person*
	pôr		*poner*		*(pone)* [in card games]
	ter		*tener*		*(tenet / -tain)*
	vir		*venir*		*(venture)*

---

[1] The pronunciation of *ll* varies widely among Spanish-speaking countries.
[2] Latin intervocalic *-l-* survived in Spanish and English but often disappeared in Portuguese.
[3] The final *-l* of a Portuguese singular noun / adjective usually disappears in the plural (*animal* > *animais;* see p. 60 for more examples).
[4] Latin intervocalic *-n-* survived in Spanish and English; it occasionally disappeared completely in Portuguese but frequently nasalized the surrounding vowels (see p. 31 for examples).

4) The following patterns regularly correspond between Portuguese, Spanish, and English consonant clusters.[1]

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
esp-		*esp-*		*sp-*	
	especial		*especial*		*special*
est-		*est-*		*st-*	
	estado		*estado*		*state*
esc- / esqu-	[k]	*esc- / esqu-*	[k]	*sc(h)-*	[k]
	escala		*escala*		*scale*
	esquema		*esquema*		*scheme*
esqu-	[k^u]	*escu-*	[k^u]	*squ-*	[k^u]
	esquadra		*escuadra*		*squad(ron)*

5) Portuguese eliminated the unpronounced letters *c // p // m* in the consonant clusters *cç / cc / ct // pç / pc / pt // mn;* these letters are still pronounced in Spanish and English, as well as in a few Portuguese words by some speakers but not by others (in which case the use of these letters is optional).[2]

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
-(c)ç- / -(c)c-		*-cc-*		*ct / cc*	
	ação		*acción*		*action*
	infe(c)ção		*infección*		*infection*
	acidente		*accidente*		*accident*
-(c)t-		*-ct-*		*ct*	
	correto		*correcto*		*correct*
-(p)ç- / -(p)c-		*-pc-*		*pt*	
	exceção		*excepción*		*exception*
	exce(p)cional		*excepcional*		*exceptional*
-(p)t-		*-pt-*		*pt*	
	adotar		*adoptar*		*adopt*
-(m)n-		*-mn-*		*mn*	
	coluna		*columna*		*column*

---

[1] When native speakers of Portuguese or Spanish pronounce an *e* before English words beginning in *sp / st / sc(h) / squ,* they are transferring the phonetic patterns of their native language.
[2] See pp. 13–15: 4 for more details and examples.

6) Portuguese *-(n)ch-* often corresponds to Spanish *-(n)ch-*.[1] The English cognate may retain *(n)ch* if the cognate set does not derive from Latin (e.g., *anchovy,* which is either Basque or Greek in origin) or if it derives from Latin via a Romance language. The English cognate in a set that derives directly from Latin often follows one of the last three patterns (also seen in less evolved Portuguese synonyms).

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
-(n)ch-	[š]	*-(n)ch-*	[tš]	*(n)ch*	[tš] / [š]
	anchova / enchova		*anchoa*		*anchovy*
	cartucho		*cartucho*		*cartouche / (cartridge)*
	macho		*macho*		*macho*
	nicho		*nicho*		*niche*
				c'l	
	mancha (= mácula)		*mancha*		*macula*
				nfl	
	inchar (= inflar)		*hinchar*		*inflate*
				mpl	
	ancho (= amplo)		*ancho*		*ample*
	encher		*henchir*		*(impletion / implement)*

7) Portuguese *br / fr / pr* occasionally correspond to Spanish and English *bl / fl / pl,* respectively.[2]

PORTUGUESE		SPANISH		ENGLISH	
br		*bl*		*bl*	
	nobre		*noble*		*noble*
	obrigado		*obligado*		*obliged / obligated*
fr		*fl*		*fl*	
	fraco		*flaco*		*flaccid*
	frota		*flota*		*fleet*
pr		*pl*		*pl*	
	prato		*plato*		*plate*
	prazer		*placer*		*please / pleasure*
	empregar		*emplear*		*employ*

---

[1] Exception: Port. *achar* corresponds to Sp. *hallar* (related to Eng. *afflatus* [= inspiration]).
[2] Port. *cr // gr* corresponds in a few words to Sp. *cl // gl* (Port. *cravo / escravo // igreja* to Sp. *clavo / esclavo // iglesia*).

PORTUGUESE AND CORRESPONDING SPANISH SOUNDS AND LETTERS

1) Spanish *-mbr-* occasionally corresponds to Portuguese *-m-*.[1]

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
-m-	*-mbr-*
costume	*costumbre*
fêmea / fome	*hembra / hambre*
homem	*hombre*
lume	*lumbre*
nome	*nombre*

2) Portuguese *-st-* occasionally corresponds to Spanish *-str-,* and Portuguese *-str-* occasionally corresponds to Spanish *-st- (que confusão!).*

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
-st-	*-str-*
madrasta / padrasto	*madrastra / padrastro*
rosto	*rostro*
-str-	*-st-*
balastro	*balasto*
orquestra	*orquesta*

3) The following patterns occasionally correspond between Portuguese and Spanish vowels and diphthongs (the cognates that follow the first pattern are commonly used words).[2]

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
o / a	*io / ia*
espaço	*espacio*
estudo / estudar / estudante	*estudio / estudiar / estudiante*
limpo / limpar	*limpio / limpiar*
nervo / nervoso	*nervio / nervioso*
vowel + *i* + consonant + *o / a*	vowel + consonant + *io / ia*
aipo	*apio*
bairro	*barrio*
raiva	*rabia*
noivo / noiva	*novio / novia*
ruivo / ruiva	*rubio / rubia*

---

[1] Exceptions: Sp. *hombro / sombra / timbre // muchedumbre* correspond to Port. *ombro / sombra / timbre // multidão,* respectively.
[2] Ulsh discusses the second pattern in his *From Spanish to Portuguese* 77.

4) The following patterns occasionally correspond between Portuguese and Spanish vowels (the first two patterns affect the conjugation of commonly used verbs).

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
e	*i*
arrepender(-se)	*arrepentir(se)*
bater	*batir*
derreter	*derretir*
eleger	*elegir*
encher	*henchir*
escrever	*escribir*
ferver	*hervir*
gemer	*gemir*
morrer	*morir*
ocorrer	*ocurrir*
perceber / receber	*percibir / recibir*
sofrer	*sufrir*
viver	*vivir*
i	*e*
corrigir	*corregir*
emergir	*emerger*
ensinar	*enseñar*
expelir / repelir	*expeler / repeler*
idade	*edad*
isto / isso / aquilo	*esto / eso / aquello*
língua	*lengua*
vingança	*venganza*
vizinho	*vecino*
o	*u*
cobrir	*cubrir*
gostar / gosto	*gustar / gusto*
jogar / jogo	*jugar / jugo*
ocorrer	*ocurrir*
ponto / pontual	*punto / puntual*
rota / rotina	*ruta / rutina*
sofrer / sofrimento	*sufrir / sufrimiento*
u	*o*
custar / custo	*costar / coste*
suportar	*soportar*
surdo / surdez	*sordo / sordera*
surpreender / surpresa	*sorprender / sorpresa*

PORTUGUESE AND CORRESPONDING SPANISH AND ENGLISH PREFIXES

Most Portuguese, Spanish, and English prefixes derive directly from Greek or Latin and are therefore similar in form. The following are the most common Portuguese prefixes.[1]

PORT. PREFIX	MEANING	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
ab-	away / from	*absolver*	*absolver*	*absolve*
ad-	to(ward) / at / near	*admirar*	*admirar*	*admire*
an- / a-	not / without / "un-"	*anarquia*	*anarquía*	*anarchy*
ante-	before / prior to	*antecedente*	*antecedente*	*antecedent*
anti-	against	*antitoxina*	*antitoxina*	*antitoxin*
auto-	self	*automóvel*	*automóvil*	*automobile*
circum- / circun-	around	*circumpolar*	*circumpolar*	*circumpolar*
com- / con-	with / together	*confusão*	*confusión*	*confusion*
contra-	against / counter	*contravir*	*contravenir*	*contravene*
de-	away from / off	*deformar*	*deformar*	*deform*
des-	not / "un-"	*descobrir*	*descubrir*	*discover*
dis-	separate / apart	*dissolver*	*disolver*	*dissolve*
ex-	forth / from / out //	*extorsão*	*extorsión*	*extortion*
	former	*ex-presidente*	*ex-presidente*	*ex-president*
extra-	outside / beyond	*extradição*	*extradición*	*extradition*
in- / im-	not / "un-" / "non-"	*insuficiente*	*insuficiente*	*insufficient*
in- / im- // en- / em-	in(to) / within / on	*informar*	*informar*	*inform*
inter- // entre-	between / among	*interceder*	*interceder*	*intercede*
multi-	much / many	*multiforme*	*multiforme*	*multiform*
não-	not	*não alinhado*	*no alineado*	*non-aligned*
ob-	to(ward) / against	*obstruir*	*obstruir*	*obstruct*
per-	through / thoroughly	*perceber*	*percibir*	*perceive*
pos- / pós-[2]	after	*pospor*	*posponer*	*postpone*
pre- / pré-[2]	before / prior to	*preceder*	*preceder*	*precede*
pro- / pró-[2]	for(ward) / in favor of	*proceder*	*proceder*	*proceed*
re-	back // again / anew	*restaurar*	*restaurar*	*restore*
semi-	half / partially	*semicírculo*	*semicírculo*	*semicircle*
sub- / sus- // so-	under / beneath / below	*submarino*	*submarino*	*submarine*
super- // sobre-	over / above / on top of	*sobrenatural*	*sobrenatural*	*supernatural*
trans- / tras-	across / beyond	*transformar*	*transformar*	*transform*
uni-	one	*uniforme*	*uniforme*	*uniform*
vice- / vis-	in the place of / under	*vice-rei*	*virrey*	*viceroy*

---

[1] A short Portuguese prefix sometimes drops its final consonant before another consonant *(emitir [< ex-])*. The *r / s* is doubled between an abbreviated prefix and a root word beginning in *r / s (irregular [< in-] / assistir [< ad-]),* as well as between a prefix ending in a vowel and a root word beginning in *r / s (extrarregular / antissemita).*

[2] An acute accent is used if the root word is an adjective / noun and is preceded by a hyphen *(pós-natal / pré-natal / pró-América).*

PORTUGUESE AND CORRESPONDING SPANISH AND ENGLISH SUFFIXES[1]

Most Portuguese and Spanish suffixes, as well as a majority of English ones, derive from Greek or Latin; however, those suffixes that came into English via French are not always similar in form to their Portuguese or Spanish counterparts. The following patterns frequently correspond between Portuguese, Spanish, and English suffixes.

1) The following suffixes form nouns and/or adjectives from the same or other grammatical categories.

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-ada	*-ada*	*-ade*
marmelo[2]	*marmelada*	*mermelada*	*marmalade*
	-ada	*-ada*	(= group of / many)
pássaro	*passarada*	*pajarada*	("flock of birds")
	-ada	*-ada*	(= strike / blow)
punho	*punhalada*	*puñalada*	("fist punch")
	-ado	*-ado*	*-y*
conde	*condado*	*condado*	*county*
	-ado/a (past part.)	*-ado/a* (past part.)	*-ate*
doutor (< douto)	*doutorado*	*doctorado*	*doctorate*
	-agem (f)[3]	*-aje* (m)[4]	*-age*
via	*viagem*	*viaje*	*voyage*
	-(i)al (-ais)[5]	*-(i)al(es)*	*-(i)al*
fim	*final*	*final*	*final*
ofício	*oficial*	*oficial*	*official*
	-ão (m) / *-ona* (f)	*-ón* (m) / *-ona* (f)	(= augmentative suffix)
solteiro	*solteirão*	*solterón*	("old bachelor")
solteira	*solteirona*	*solterona*	("old maid")

---

[1] The Portuguese root word represents the evolved form of the original root word.
An italicized English word in parentheses is a partial cognate: although it derives from the same root, it differs in meaning and/or grammatical category from its Spanish and Portuguese cognates.
[2] Eng. *marmalade* derives from *marmelo* ("quince"); it bears no etymological relation to an orange.
[3] *personagem / selvagem* are masculine when referring to a male.
[4] Exceptions:

imagem	*imagen* (f)	*image*
vantagem	*ventaja* (f)	*(ad)vantage*

[5] See p. 46: 4 for another group of words in *-al.*

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-ar	*-ar*	*-ar*
alto	*altar* (m)	*altar* (m)	*altar*
círculo	*circular*	*circular*	*circular*
	-aria[1]	*-ería*	*-ry*
cavalo	*cavalaria*	*caballería*	*cavalry*
infante	*infantaria*	*infantería*	*infantry*
	-ário/a	*-ario/a*	*-arium / -ary*
água	*aquário*	*acuario*	*aquarium*
segundo	*secundária*	*secundaria*	*secondary*
	-ção (-ções) (f)[2a, 2b]	*-ción (-ciones)* (f)[2b]	*-tion*
abolir	*abolição*	*abolición*	*abolition*
acentuar (< acento)	*acentuação*	*acentuación*	*accentuation*
durar (< duro)	*duração*	*duración*	*duration*
pontuar (< ponto)	*pontuação*	*puntuación*	*punctuation*
	-cida (m/f)	*-cida* (m/f)	*-cidal*
homem	*homicida*	*homicida*	*homicidal*
	-cídio	*-cidio*	*-cide*
homem	*homicídio*	*homicidio*	*homicide*
	-cracia[3]	*-cracia*[3]	*-cracy*
[Greek *demos*]	*democracia*	*democracia*	*democracy*
	-crata[3] (m/f)	*-crata*[3] (m/f)	*-crat*
[Greek *demos*]	*democrata*	*demócrata*	*democrat*
	-dade / -tade (f)	*-dad / -tad* (f)	*-ty*
feliz	*felicidade*	*felicidad*	*felicity*
livre	*liberdade*	*libertad*	*liberty*
maior	*majestade*	*majestad*	*majesty*
	-do/a (past part.)	*-do/a* (past part.)	*-ed* (past part.)
prometer	*prometida*	*prometida*	*promised*
usar	*usado*	*usado*	*used*

---

[1] See p. 46: 3 for a related group of words in *-aria.*

[2] Exceptions: (a) *bênçãos* *bendiciones* *benedictions*
(b) *coração* (m) *corazón* (m) (= heart)

[3] Note the difference in stress between Sp. and Port. cognates (see p. 48: 3 for examples).

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-douro/a[1, 2]	*-dero/a*	*-ble* (= in the future)
durar (< duro)	*duradouro*	*duradero*	*durable* (= lasting)
pagar	*pagadoura*	*pagadera*	*payable*
	-edo	*-edo/a*	(= group of / many)
árvore	*arvoredo*	*arboleda*	*(arbor-)*
vinha	*vinhedo*	*viñedo*	*(vine / vini-)*
	-eiro/a[3]	*-ero/a*	*-er*
barba	*barbeiro*	*barbero*	*barber*
mão	*maneira*	*manera*	*manner*
	-ento/a // -into/a	*-iento/a*	(= full of)
sede	*sedento*	*sediento*	("thirsty")
fome	*faminta*	*hambrienta*	*(famished)*
	-esco/a	*-esco/a*	*-esque*
pintura	*pitoresco*	*pintoresco*	*picturesque*
	-estre	*-estre*	*-ester / -estria-*
semi	*semestre* (m)	*semestre* (m)	*semester*
terra	*terrestre*	*terrestre*	*terrestrial*
	-ez(a) (f) / *-ice* (stressed *i*) (f)	*-ez(a)* (f)	*-ty*
pobre	*pobreza*	*pobreza*	*poverty*
sólido	*solidez*	*solidez*	*solidity*
velho	*velhice*	*vejez*	("old age")
	-fício	*-ficio*	*-fice*
sacro	*sacrifício*	*sacrificio*	*sacrifice*
	-fico/a	*-fico/a*	*-fic*
paz	*pacífica*	*pacífica*	*pacific*
	-ia	*-ía*	*-y*
[Greek *philos* + *sophos*]	*filosofia*	*filosofía*	*philosophy*
[Greek *theos* + *logos*]	*teologia*	*teología*	*theology*

---

[1] EP: Also *-doiro/a* (see p. 4n4 for details).
[2] This suffix derives from the Latin future participle.
[3] See p. 46: 3–4 for other groups of words in *-eiro/a.* Portuguese *ei* frequently corresponds to Spanish *e* (see p. 7: 1 for more examples).

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-(t)ico/a	*-(t)ico/a*	*-(t)ic(al)*
[Latin *medicus*]	*médico*	*médico*	*medic(al)*
romance	*romântica*	*romántica*	*romantic*
	-il (-is)	*-il(es)*	*-il(e)*
[Latin *civis*]	*civil*	*civil*	*civil*
servo	*servil*	*servil*	*servile*
	-ina	*-ina*	*-ine*
doutor (< douto)	*doutrina*	*doctrina*	*doctrine*
	-(z)inho/a[1]	*-(c)ito/a*	(= diminutive suffix)
mesa	*mesinha*	*mesita*	("little table")
pão	*pãozinho*	*panecito*	("[bread] roll")
	-io	*-ío*	(= group of / many)
gente	*gentio*	*gentío*	*(gent-)*
planta	*plantio*	*plantío*	*(plant-)*
	-ior	*-ior*	*-ior*
			(= comparative suffix)
[Latin *inferus*]	*inferior*	*inferior*	*inferior*
[Latin *superus*]	*superior*	*superior*	*superior*
	-ismo	*-ismo*	*-ism*
social	*socialismo*	*socialismo*	*socialism*
	-ista (m/f)	*-ista* (m/f)	*-ist*
social	*socialista*	*socialista*	*socialist*
	-ivo/a	*-ivo/a*	*-ive*
ato	*ativa*	*activa*	*active*
passo	*passivo*	*pasivo*	*passive*
	-lento/a	*-lento/a // -lente*	*-lent*
peste	*pestilento*	*pestilente*	*pestilent*
vírus	*virulenta*	*virulenta*	*virulent*
	-(gra)ma (m)	*-(gra)ma* (m)	*-(gra)m / -ma*
[Greek *di* + *lemma*]	*dilema*	*dilema*	*dilemma*
[Greek *tele* + *gramma*]	*telegrama*	*telegrama*	*telegram*

[1] EP: Also *-(z)ito/a.*

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-mento	*-m(i)ento*	*-ment*
instruir	*instrumento*	*instrumento*	*instrument*
sentir	*sentimento*	*sentimiento*	*sentiment*
	-or(a)	*-or(a)*	*-or / -er*
ler	*leitor*	*lector*	*lecturer*
professo	*professora*	*profesora*	*professor*
	-ório	*-orio*	*-ory*
laborar	*laboratório*	*laboratorio*	*laboratory*
	-oso/a	*-oso/a*	*-ose / -ous*
fama	*famosa*	*famosa*	*famous*
verbo	*verboso*	*verboso*	*verbose*
	-se (f)[1]	*-sis* (m/f)	*-sis*
[Greek *ana* + *lysis*]	*análise*	*análisis* (m)	*analysis*
[Greek *thesis*]	*tese*	*tesis* (f)	*thesis*
	-ssão (-ssões) (f)	*-sión (-siones)* (f)	*-ssion*
impresso	*impressão*	*impresión*	*impression*
professo	*profissão*	*profesión*	*profession*
	-tude (f)	*-tud* (f)	*-tude*
alto	*altitude*	*altitud*	*altitude*
	-udo/a	*-udo/a*	(= full of)
barba	*barbudo*	*barbudo*	("very bearded")
	-ura	*-ura*	*-ure*
culto	*cultura*	*cultura*	*culture*
ler	*leitura*	*lectura*	*lecture*
	-uto/a	*-uto/a*	*-ute*
menor	*minuto*	*minuto*	*minute*
resolver	*resoluta*	*resoluta*	*resolute*
	-vel (-veis)	*-ble(s)*	*-ble*
adorar	*adorável*	*adorable*	*adorable*
poder	*possível*	*posible*	*possible*
solver	*solúvel*	*soluble*	*soluble*

---

[1] Exception: *parêntese* (m) *paréntesis* (m) *parenthesis*

2) The following are Portuguese suffixes in *-nte // -ncia / -nça,* with their corresponding Spanish and English suffixes; these Portuguese and Spanish suffixes, as well as English ones in *-nt // -nce / -ncy,* ultimately derive from the Latin present participle (see p. 211n2 for details).

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-ante	*-ante*	*-ant*[1a]
constar	*constante*	*constante*	*constant*
importar	*importante*	*importante*	*important*
	-ância	*-ancia*	*-ance / -ancy*
constante	*constância*	*constancia*	*constancy*
importante	*importância*	*importancia*	*importance*
	-ança[2]	*-anza*[2]	*-ance*[2]
aliar	*aliança*	*alianza*	*alliance*
vingar	*vingança*	*venganza*	*vengeance*
	-ente	*-ente*	*-ent*[1b]
diferir	*diferente*	*diferente*	*different*
fluir	*fluente*	*flu(y)ente*	*fluent*
obedecer	*obediente*	*obediente*	*obedient*
pre + ser	*presente*	*presente*	*present*
	-ência	*-encia*	*-ence*[1c] */ -ency*
fluente	*fluência*	*fluencia*	*fluency*
obediente	*obediência*	*obediencia*	*obedience*
	-ença	*-encia*	*-ence*
diferente	*diferença*	*diferencia*	*difference*
presente	*presença*	*presencia*	*presence*
	-inte (m/f)	*-iente / -yente* (m/f)	*-ent // -or / -er*
ouvir	*ouvinte*	*oyente*	*auditor*
pedir	*pedinte*	*pidiente*	*petitioner*
seguir	*seguinte*	*siguiente*	*sequent*

---

[1] Exceptions:

estudar	*estudante*	*estudiante*	(a)	*stud<u>e</u>nt*
resistir	*resistente*	*resistente*	(b)	*resist<u>a</u>nt*
resistente	*resistência*	*resistencia*	(c)	*resist<u>a</u>nce*

[2] Port. *-ança* / Sp. *-anza* / Eng. *-ance* also appear in the root of a few nouns:

dança	*danza*	*dance*
lança	*lanza*	*lance*

3) *-eiro/a:* often indicates the person who works with the root word, or the thing that holds the root word;
-aria / -eria: often indicates the place where the root word is made, stored, or sold.

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-eiro/a	*-ero/a*	*-er*
café	*cafeteira*	*cafetera*	("*coffee* pot")
pão	*padeiro*	*panadero*	("bread baker")
pastel	*pasteleira*	*pastelera*	("*pastry* baker")
sapato	*sapateiro*	*zapatero*	("shoe maker")
	-aria / -eria	*-ería*	*-eria / -(e)ry*
café	*cafeteria*[1]	*cafetería*	*cafeteria* ("*coffee* shop")
pão	*padaria*	*panadería*	*(pantry)*[2] ("bread bakery")
pastel	*pastelaria*	*pastelería*	("*pastry* shop")
sapato	*sapataria*	*zapatería*	("shoe store")

4) *-eiro/a:* often changes the name of a seed, nut, fruit, or flower into the name of its corresponding plant or tree;[3]
-al: often changes the name of a seed, nut, fruit, or flower into the name of the field, plantation, or grove where it grows.[4]

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-eiro/a	*-ero/a*	
algodão[5]	*algodoeiro*[5]	*algodonero*	("*cotton* plant")
banana	*bananeira*	*bananero*	("*banana* tree")
noz	*nogueira*	*noguera*	("walnut tree")
	-al (-ais) (m)	*-al(es)* (m)	
algodão[5]	*algodoal*[5]	*algodonal*	("*cotton* field")
banana	*bananal*	*bananal*	("*banana* plantation")
noz	*nogueiral*	*nogueral*	("walnut grove")

---

[1] EP: Also *cafetaria.*
[2] In older English, a pantry was the room in which bread was stored.
[3] This derived word normally maintains the gender of the root word (unlike in Spanish).
[4] Port. (and Sp.) *pomar* means "orchard," as in *pomar de macieiras / pereiras* (Sp. *manzanar / peraleda* // Eng. "apple / pear orchard").
[5] An *-ão* in the root word changes to *-o-* in the derived word.

5) The following suffixes indicate national origin.[1]

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-ano/a	*-ano/a*	*-an*
Itália	*italiano*	*italiano*	*Italian*
Roma	*romana*	*romana*	*Roman*
	-ense[2] (m/f)	*-ense* (m/f)	*-an*
Canadá	*canadense*[3]	*canadiense*	*Canadian*
Estados Unidos	*estad(o)unidense*	*estad(o)unidense*	("American")
	-ês / -esa[2]	*-és / -esa*	*-ese // -ish*
Ingla(terra)	*inglês*	*inglés*	*English*
Portugal	*portuguesa*	*portuguesa*	*Portuguese*

6) The suffix *-mente* forms an adverb from an adjective when it is attached to the (feminine) singular form of the adjective (see p. 75 for details).

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-mente	*-mente*	*-ly*[4]
final	*finalmente*	*finalmente*	*finally*
perfeita	*perfeitamente*	*perfectamente*	*perfectly*

7) The following suffixes form verbs from nouns and adjectives.

PORT. ROOT WORD	PORT.	SP.	ENG.
	-ar	*-ar*	*-ate*
lume	*iluminar*	*iluminar*	*illuminate*
negócio	*negociar*	*negociar*	*negotiate*
	-ficar	*-ficar*	*-fy*
paz	*pacificar*	*pacificar*	*pacify*
	-izar	*-izar*	*-ize*
final	*finalizar*	*finalizar*	*finalize*

---

[1] Less frequently used suffixes are *-eiro/a (brasileiro) // -eno/a (chilena) // -ino/a (argentino).*
[2] *-ense* and *-ês / -esa* both derive from the Latin suffix *-ensis.*
[3] EP: *canadiano.*
[4] Unlike *-mente,* which derives from Latin, the suffix *-ly* is Germanic in origin (see p. 75n2).

DIFFERENCES IN STRESS BETWEEN PORTUGUESE AND SPANISH COGNATES

1) Many Portuguese and Spanish cognates are similar in pronunciation and identical in orthography (e.g., *almirante*).

2) Others are pronounced similarly but differ orthographically (e.g., Portuguese *filosofia* vs. Spanish *filosofía*).[1]

3) Yet others differ in stress, as seen in the following cognates.

	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
endings:	*-ocracia*	*-ocracia*
	burocracia	*burocracia*
	democracia	*democracia*
	-ocrata	*-ócrata*
	burocrata	*burócrata*
	democrata	*demócrata*
	-emia[2]	*-emia*[2]
	academia	*academia*
	anemia	*anemia*
	epidemia	*epidemia*
	-io / -ia[2]	*-io / -ia*[2]
	alergia	*alergia*
	elogio	*elogio*
	histeria	*histeria*
	magia	*magia*
	nostalgia	*nostalgia*
	soberbia	*soberbia*
	terapia	*terapia*
isolated words:	*herói*	*héroe*
	limite	*límite*
	nível	*nivel*
	polícia	*policía*
	sintoma	*síntoma*
	telefone	*teléfono*

---

[1] The *i* of the ending is stressed in both Portuguese *(filosofia / teologia / biologia)* and Spanish *(filosofía / teología / biología),* but Spanish marks the stressed vowel with an acute accent.
[2] The *i* of the ending is stressed in Portuguese, whereas the vowel in the next-to-last syllable is stressed in Spanish.

TRUE, PARTIAL, AND FALSE COGNATES

The words in the following sets are cognates since they derive from the same root.[1]

1) The Portuguese and Spanish words in each set are similar in meaning and are therefore true cognates; the English word differs in meaning and is therefore a partial cognate.

PORT.	*SP.*	*ENG.*
ENG.		PORT.
aluno	*alumno*	*alumnus*
pupil / student		ex-aluno
apologia	*apología*	*apology*
vindication / defense		desculpa
apontar (para)	*apuntar (a)*	*appoint*
to take note // point (at / out) // aim (at)		nomear
assistir (a)	*asistir (a)*	*assist*
to assist // attend / be present (at) (Port.: to watch [TV, etc.])		assistir / ajudar / atender
atender (a)	*atender (a)*	*attend*
to (at)tend / be attentive (to) / assist // answer (door / telephone)		assistir / frequentar
atual	*actual*	*actual*
present-day / current		verdadeiro / real
barraca	*barraca*	*barrack(s)*
stall (in fair) / hut		alojamento / quartel
caução	*caución*	*caution*
bail		cuidado / cautela
colégio	*colegio*	*college*
high school		faculdade / escola superior
comodidade	*comodidad*	*commodity*
comfort / convenience		mercadoria
costume	*costumbre*	*costume*
custom / habit / usage		traje / fantasia
dece(p)ção	*decepción*	*deception*
disappointment		engano / fraude
desgosto	*disgusto*	*disgust*
displeasure		asco / nojo
êxito	*éxito*	*exit*
success / outcome		saída
fábrica	*fábrica*	*fabric*
factory		tecido

---

[1] In their lists of cognates, Ulsh (*From Spanish to Portuguese* 80) and Frederick C. H. Garcia (*A Handbook of Portuguese Grammar* 107–108) do not distinguish between partial and false ones.

PORT.	ENG.	*SP.*	*ENG.*	PORT.
leitura	reading	*lectura*	*lecture*	conferência / palestra
licor	liqueur / cordial	*licor*	*liquor*	bebida alcoólica
notícia	news	*noticia*	*notice*	aviso / anúncio
parente(s)	relative(s)	*pariente(s)*	*parent(s)*	pai(s)
pretender	to intend / aspire to	*pretender*	*pretend*	fingir / fazer (de) conta
pupilo	ward	*pupilo*	*pupil*	aluno
realizar(-se)	to achieve / accomplish (to take place / happen)	*realizar(se)*	*realize*	dar-se conta
simpático	nice / likeable	*simpático*	*sympathetic*	compassivo / compreensivo
tutor	guardian	*tutor*	*tutor*	professor particular

2) The Spanish and English words in each set are similar in meaning and are therefore true cognates; the Portuguese word differs in meaning and is therefore a partial cognate.

PORT.	SP.	ENG.	*SP.*	PORT.	*ENG.*
esquisito	raro	strange / odd	*exquisito*	delicioso / delicado	*exquisite*
novela	novela corta	novella / short novel	*novela*	romance	*novel*
oficina	taller	workshop	*oficina*	escritório	*office*
prejuízo	daño / perjuicio	damage / loss	*prejuicio*	preconceito	*prejudice*
subscrição	prenda / donativo	pledge / donation	*suscripción*	assinatura	*subscription*

3) The Portuguese and Spanish words in each set differ in meaning and are therefore partial cognates.

PORT.
SP.
ENG.

acordar
despertarse
to wake up / awaken
apelido[1]
sobrenombre / apodo / mote
nickname
assinatura
suscripción / firma
subscription / signature
aula
clase (académica)
class (academic)
borracha
goma
rubber
cadeira[2]
silla
chair
enquanto
mientras
while
escova
cepillo
brush
escritório
oficina / despacho
office
largo[3]
ancho
wide

SP.
PORT.
ENG.

acordarse
lembrar(-se)
to remember
apellido[1]
sobrenome
last name (surname)
asignatura
matéria (escolar)
subject (academic)
aula
sala
classroom
borracha (f)
bêbeda (f)
drunk
cadera[2]
quadril / anca
hip
en cuanto
assim que / logo que
as soon as
escoba
vassoura
broom
escritorio
escrivaninha / secretária
desk
largo[3]
comprido / longo
long

---

[1] EP: *apelido* is a true cognate of Sp. *apellido:* both mean "last name."
[2] Port. *cadeiras* (plur.) also means *quadris / ancas //* Sp. *caderas* and *sillas* (Eng. "hips" and "chairs").
[3] The Eng. partial cognate *large* means Port. / Sp. *grande.*

PORT.	SP.	ENG.
roxo[1]	morado	purple
ruivo	pelirrojo	redhead
sobrenome	apellido	last name (surname)
talher	cubierto	table place-setting / silverware
todavia	sin embargo	however

SP.	PORT.	ENG.
rojo[1]	vermelho	red
rubio	louro	blond
sobrenombre	apelido / alcunha / apodo	nickname
taller	oficina	workshop
todavía	ainda	still / yet

4) Although the Portuguese and the first Spanish word in the following sets are similar in pronunciation and orthography, they are false cognates because they do not derive from the same root and therefore differ in meaning; the true Spanish cognate derives from the same root as the Portuguese word, to which it is similar in meaning.

PORT.	ENG.	*FALSE SP.*	ENG.	*TRUE SP.*
barata	cockroach	*barata*	cheap	
cena	scene	*cena*	supper	*escena*
ninho[2]	nest	*niño*	boy	*nido*[2]
rato	mouse / rat	*rato*	while	*rata / ratón*
trair	to betray	*traer*	to bring	*traicionar*

---

[1] The Eng. partial cognate *rouge* means Port. *ruge / carmim //* Sp. *colorete.*
[2] Port. *ninho /* Sp. *nido* are partial cognates of Eng. *niche* (the true cognate of Eng. *niche* is Port. / Sp. *nicho*).

GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES

DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES

1) The following are the Portuguese definite articles, which correspond to English "the."

	SING.	EXAMPLE	ENGLISH	PLUR.	EXAMPLE	ENGLISH
MASC.	***o***	*o evento*	the event	***os***	*os eventos*	the events
FEM.	***a***	*a camisa*	the shirt	***as***	*as camisas*	the shirts

2) The following are the indefinite articles, which correspond to English "a" / "an" (singular) and "any" / "some" (plural).

	SING.	EXAMPLE	ENGLISH	PLUR.	EXAMPLE	ENGLISH
MASC.	***um***	*um evento*	an event	***uns***	*uns eventos*	any / some events
FEM.	***uma***	*uma camisa*	a shirt	***umas***	*umas camisas*	any / some shirts

3) Definite and indefinite articles

a) agree in gender and number with the nouns that they modify;[1]

b) usually precede nouns:

o livro / a camisa / uns anos / umas alunas

exception: a definite article always follows *ambos* ("both") and may follow *todo* ("each" / "every" / "all"):

ambas as professoras
todas as semanas *(= toda semana)* (see p. 123 for details)

c) function as pronouns when they take the place of nouns;
this replacement process is called "nominalization," often expressed in English by "(the) one(s)" / "some":

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
o (carro) que custa	the one that costs
um (carro) que custa	one that costs
uns (carros) que custam	some that cost

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish feminine words beginning in stressed *a,* their Portuguese cognates take the feminine definite and indefinite article; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
<u>a</u> água salgad<u>a</u>	*<u>el</u> agua salad<u>a</u>*
<u>uma</u> alma bondos<u>a</u>	*<u>un</u> alma bondados<u>a</u>*

4) Definite articles are used

a) with specific, concrete nouns and with general, abstract nouns (unlike in English):

Os sábios dizem que o amor é cego.

b) with rivers, lakes, oceans, mountains, and continents; many countries; and cities that incorporate topographical nouns (e.g., *rio / porto*):

o (rio) Tejo / o (lago) Superior / o (oceano) Pacífico / os (montes) Alpes / a Europa // o Brasil / os Estados Unidos // o Rio de Janeiro / o Porto

exceptions: *Portugal / Angola / Moçambique / Cabo Verde / Timor-Leste / São Tomé e Príncipe*

c) when referring to a person's last name (surname) and title (unlike in English):

O Rodrigues e o doutor Gomes falam bem o inglês.

exceptions: *Seu* ("Mr.") / *Dona* ("Lady") / *Dom* ("Sir"):

Dona Ana e Seu José sabem que Cabral descobriu o Brasil.

5) Definite articles are not used

a) when addressing a person:

<u>Senhor</u> (Moreira), aonde o senhor vai?

b) before an academic subject preceded by a verb:

Ensinamos Português mas também estudamos Árabe.

c) with most cities (with one type of exception: see 4b above):

Lisboa é a capital de Portugal; Brasília é a capital do Brasil.

6) Definite articles are optional with a person's first name; they convey a tone of familiarity and are frequently used in BP.

(O) João chegou ontem.

7) Indefinite articles are used with a noun modified by an adjective but are often not used with a nonmodified noun (unlike in English).

A Inês é uma pessoa muito interessante; é antropóloga.

CONTRACTIONS OF PREPOSITIONS WITH ARTICLES

1) The following contractions of the prepositions *a / de / em / por* with definite articles are obligatory in Portuguese.[1, 2]

a	+	*o(s)*	=	***ao(s)***	*(Eu vou ao mercado.)*
a	+	*a(s)*	=	***à(s)***	*(Ele vai às lojas.)*
de	+	*o(s)*	=	***do(s)***	*(Nós somos do Brasil.)*
de	+	*a(s)*	=	***da(s)***	*(Elas são da França.)*
em	+	*o(s)*	=	***no(s)***	*(Eu penso no almoço.)*
em	+	*a(s)*	=	***na(s)***	*(Ela pensa nas tarefas.)*
por	+	*o(s)*	=	***pelo(s)***[3]	*(Você anda pelo centro.)*
por	+	*a(s)*	=	***pela(s)***[3]	*(Nós andamos pelas ruas.)*

2) The following contractions of the prepositions *de / em* with indefinite articles are optional.[4]

de	+	*um*	=	***dum***	*(Somos dum país pobre.)*
de	+	*uns*	=	***duns***	*(Gosto duns filmes velhos.)*
de	+	*uma(s)*	=	***duma(s)***	*(Preciso dumas camisas.)*
em	+	*um*	=	***num***	*(Esteve num cinema sujo.)*
em	+	*uns*	=	***nuns***	*(Viajei nuns trens velhos.)*
em	+	*uma(s)*	=	***numa(s)***	*(Estão numa área bonita.)*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese has many more contractions than Spanish.

[2] The following contractions of the preposition *para* + definite articles occur in colloquial Portuguese but should be avoided in formal Portuguese:

para + *o(s)/a(s)* = *pro(s)* / *pra(s)*

In archaic Portuguese:

para + *o(s)/a(s)* = *pero(s)* / *pera(s)*

[3] *pelo(s) / pela(s)* derives from Latin:

per + *o(s)/a(s)*

In archaic Portuguese:

por + *o(s)/a(s)* = *polo(s)* / *pola(s)*

[4] Contractions of *de* + indefinite articles occur more in EP than in BP; they should be avoided in formal BP.

ADJECTIVES

1) Adjectives in Portuguese agree in number with the nouns and pronouns that they modify (unlike in English); many adjectives also agree in gender.

Elas são americanas.

2) An adjective functions as a pronoun when it takes the place of a noun and is preceded by an article, which represents the replaced noun; this replacement process is called "nominalization."

o (menino) tímido	(the timid one)
umas (meninas) tímidas	(some timid ones)

3) Adjectives ending in *-oso* change from closed *o* [o] in the masculine singular to open *o* [ɔ] in the masculine plural as well as the feminine singular and plural.

delicioso [o]	*deliciosos* [ɔ]
deliciosa [ɔ]	*deliciosas* [ɔ]

4) A few adjectives have abbreviated forms.

a) *São:*
(< *Santo* ["Saint"]), used before masculine names beginning in a consonant; compare:

São Pedro / São Paulo
Santo Antônio / Santo Inácio

b) *grão* (m) / *grã* (f):[1]
(< *grande* ["grand" / "great"]), used only in certain titles and placenames:

Grão-Mestre	(Grand Master)
Grã-Bretanha	(Great Britain)

c) *mor:*
(< *maior* ["greater" / "larger" / "major"]), used in archaic titles and words:

Capitão-mor	(Captain-general)
o mordomo	(majordomo / butler)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Although Port. *grão / grã* is a cognate of Sp. *gran,* it is not normally used to express "great," for which Port. uses *grande,* placed before the noun *(uma grande pessoa)* (see p. 68: 3 for details).

PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1) Most nouns in Portuguese have a plural form, as do most adjectives (unlike in English).

2) -***s*** is the ending (= plural marker) that differentiates a plural from a singular (pro)noun or adjective.

3) There are various patterns of plural formation. In most patterns, *s* or *es* is added to the singular form; however, the singular ending sometimes undergoes a phonetic change. The following are the patterns that determine the plural form of a singular word.

SINGULAR ENDING	PLURAL ENDING	SINGULAR EXAMPLES	PLURAL EXAMPLES	PATTERN	DETAILS
vowel	vowel + *s*	*camisa*	*camisas*	add *s*	
		má	*más*		
		irmã	*irmãs*		
		órfã	*órfãs*		
		grande	*grandes*		
		você	*vocês*		
		pé	*pés*		
		pequeno	*pequenos*		
		avô	*avôs*		
		avó	*avós*		
		júri	*júris*		
		peru	*perus*		
stressed vowel + *s*	stressed vowel + *ses*			add *es*	
		ananás	*ananases*		drop ´
		português	*portugueses*		drop ˆ
		país	*países*		keep ´ (to maintain hiatus)
oral diphthong	oral diphthong + *s*	*pai*	*pais*	add *s*	
		rei	*reis*		
		pau	*paus*		
		seu	*seus*		
		céu	*céus*		
		herói	*heróis*		

SINGULAR ENDING	PLURAL ENDING	SINGULAR EXAMPLES	PLURAL EXAMPLES	PATTERN	DETAILS
-ão					three possible endings:[1]
-ão	*-ões*	*decisão* *discussão* *lição* *limão* *padrão* *solteirão*	*decisões* *discussões* *lições* *limões* *padrões* *solteirões*	*-ão* > *-ões*	most common ending[2]
-ão	*-ãos*	*cidadão* *irmão* *mão* *órfão* *órgão*	*cidadãos* *irmãos* *mãos* *órfãos* *órgãos*	add *s*	less common ending[3]
-ão	*-ães*	*alemão* *cão* *capitão* *pão*	*alemães* *cães* *capitães* *pães*	*-ão* > *-ães*	least common ending
-ãe	*-ães*	*mãe*	*mães*	add *s*	
-m	*-ns*	*bom* *fim* *homem* *um*	*bons* *fins* *homens* *uns*	*-m* > *-ns*	
-r	*-res*	*flor* *melhor* *motor*	*flores* *melhores* *motores*	add *es*	
-z	*-zes*	*feliz* *luz* *rapaz*	*felizes* *luzes* *rapazes*	add *es*	

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: To form the correct plural of a noun ending in *-ão (mão),* drop the *-n-* of the Spanish plural *(manos),* then place a tilde (˜) over the preceding vowel *(mãos)* (the tilde indicates the nasal residue of the [disappeared] Latin intervocalic *-n-*).

[2] *-ão* > *-ões* in all augmentatives and most nouns ending in *-ção / -são* (exception: *bênçãos*).

[3] *-ão* > *-ãos* in many monosyllabic words *(chãos / grãos / sãos / vãos)* (exceptions: *cães / pães*). Certain nouns alternate between the ending *-ãos* (often the etymologically correct one) and *-ões* (*cortesão* > *cortesãos / cortesões // verão* > *verãos / verões // vilão* > *vilãos / vilões,* etc.).

SINGULAR ENDING	PLURAL ENDING	SINGULAR EXAMPLES	PLURAL EXAMPLES	PATTERN	DETAILS
-l	*-is*			*-l* > *-is*	no *-l-* in plural:
stressed:	stressed:				
-al	*-ais*	*capital*	*capitais*	*-al* > *-ais*[1a]	
-ul	*-uis*	*azul*	*azuis*	*-ul* > *-uis*[1b]	
-ol	*-ois*	*espanhol*	*espanhois*	*-ol* > *-ois*[1c]	*ó* in plural
-el	*-éis*	*cruel*	*cruéis*	*-el* > *-éis*	*é* in plural
-il	*-is*	*barril*	*barris*	*-il* > *-is*	
unstressed:	unstressed:				
-el	*-eis*	*agradável*	*agradáveis*	*-el* > *-eis*	
-il	*-eis*	*fácil*	*fáceis*	*-il* > *-eis*	

4) Nouns and adjectives ending in the following letters are invariable in number (i.e., the singular and plural forms are the same); also invariable are colors that are really nouns, as well as the words *o(s) cais* ("wharf[s]") and *mais / menos*[2] ("more" / "less").

ENDING	EXAMPLES	
-x	*o(s) clímax*	
	o(s) tórax	
unstressed vowel + *s*	*o(s) lápis*	
	o(s) ônibus	
	o(s) pires	
	simples[3]	*(pessoa simples / indivíduos simples)*
COLORS *(cor-de-):*	*laranja*	*(caderno laranja / camisas laranja)*
	rosa	*(sapato rosa / sofás rosa)*

---

[1] Exceptions:
(a) *mal* > *males*
(b) *cônsul* > *cônsules*
(c) *gol* > *gols*

[2] Although *mais / menos* often function as quantifying adjectives *(mais amor / menos brigas),* they remain invariable in number and gender.

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Port. *simples* (sing. / plur.) corresponds to Sp. *simple / simples.*

5) The plural form of a noun or an adjective is used to refer to both a singular and a plural (pro)noun.[1]

Ana e os seus filhos são médicos e muito simpáticos.

6) When a singular subject is followed by a prepositional phrase with a plural object, the subject may take either a singular or a plural verb.

A maioria dos países importa petróleo?
A maioria dos países importam petróleo?

---

[1] As seen in the example, the masculine form of a gender-variable noun / adjective *(médicos / simpáticos)* is used to refer to (pro)nouns of both genders *(Ana / filhos);* i.e., plural / masculine prevail over singular / feminine in determining grammatical agreement.

GENDER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1) All Portuguese nouns are either masculine or feminine (unlike English nouns). Gender is arbitrary for most nouns except those designating persons and certain animals. Although there are predictable patterns that can help to determine the gender of many nouns, one must memorize the gender of those nouns that do not follow a pattern.

2) Masculine nouns

a) Most nouns ending in the following letters are masculine, as are the names of letters (unlike in Spanish)[1] and cardinal numbers.
-o is the most common ending.

ENDING	EXAMPLES		EXCEPTIONS	
-o	*o carro*		*a foto*	*(= fotografia)*
			a moto	*(= motocicleta)*
			a tribo	(Sp. *la tribu*)
-om	*o som*			
-á	*o sofá*			
-é	*o café*			
-i(m)	*o júri* /	*o fim*		
-u(m)	*o peru* /	*o álbum*		
-en	*o hífen*			
-s	*o lápis*			
-l	*o capital*	(money)	*a capital*	(capital city)
	o moral[2]	(morale)	*a moral*[2]	(moral of story)
-r	*o motor*		*a cor / a dor / a flor*	
LETTERS:	*o "c"*[1]	*(= cê)*		
CARDINAL NUMBERS:	*o "2"*	*(= dois)*		

b) The following nouns are masculine but refer to a person or animal of either gender.

o animal	(animal)	*o cônjuge*	(spouse)
o anjo	(angel)	*o indivíduo*	(individual)

c) Certain animals have only a masculine form; to refer to the female, include the noun *fêmea* ("female").

o dromedário fêmea	/	*a fêmea do dromedário*	(female dromedary)
o sapo fêmea	/	*a fêmea do sapo*	(female toad)

Notes to Spanish Speakers:
[1] See p. 67 for differences in gender between Portuguese and Spanish noun cognates.
[2] Sp. *el moral* means "mulberry tree"; *la moral,* "morale"; *la moraleja,* "moral of story."

3) Feminine nouns

a) Most nouns ending in the following letters are feminine.
-a is the most common ending.

ENDING	EXAMPLES	EXCEPTIONS
-a	*a camisa*	*o dia*
		o mapa
		words of Greek origin in *-(gra)ma*
		(*o telegrama / o problema / o clima / o idioma,* etc.)
-ã	*a manhã*	*o talismã*
-ice (stressed *i*)[1]	*a velhice*	
-agem[2]	*a viagem*[2]	*o/a personagem*
		o/a selvagem
-ez	*a estupidez*	*o xadrez*
-se[3]	*a tese*	*o parêntese*
-ção	*a duração*	*o coração*
-são	*a decisão*	*o artesão / o cortesão / o travessão*
-dão	*a exatidão*	
-dade	*a liberdade*	
-tade	*a vontade*	
-tude	*a altitude*	

b) The following nouns are feminine but refer to a person or animal of either gender.

a besta	(beast)
a criança	(child)
a fera	(beast / wild animal)
a pessoa	(person)
a testemunha	(witness)
a vítima	(victim)

c) Certain animals have only a feminine form; to refer to the male, include the noun *macho* ("male").

a baleia macho	/	*o macho da baleia*	(male whale)
a cobra macho	/	*o macho da cobra*	(male snake)

---

[1] Words ending in *-ice* (unstressed *i*) are often masculine: *o apêndice / o cálice / o índice* (exceptions: *o/a hélice // a apólice*).

Notes to Spanish Speakers:
[2] See p. 67 for differences in gender between Portuguese and Spanish noun cognates.
[3] Spanish cognates (which end in *-sis*) are sometimes masculine (see p. 67 for examples).

4) The ending often indicates the gender of nouns designating persons and animals, as well as of many adjectives. The following are the masculine and respective feminine endings (= gender markers) of these nouns and adjectives.

MASC. ENDING	FEM. ENDING	MASC. EXAMPLES	FEM. EXAMPLES	PATTERN / DETAILS	EXCEPTIONS
-o	*-a*	*o tio* *coitadinho*[4]	*a tia* *coitadinha*[4]	*-o* > *-a*[1]	
-or	*-ora*	*o professor* *encantador*	*a professora* *encantadora*	add *a*[2]	comparative suffix: *o/a melhor / pior* *o/a maior / menor*
-ês	*-esa*	*o freguês* *chinês*	*a freguesa* *chinesa*	add *a*[2] and drop ˆ	
-ão	*-ã*	*o irmão* *vão*	*a irmã* *vã*	*-ão* > *-ã*[2]	
-ão	*-oa*	*o leão* *o patrão*	*a leoa* *a patroa*	*-ão* > *-oa*[3]	
-ão	*-ona*	*o solteirão*[5]	*a solteirona*[5]	*-ão* > *-ona*[3]	
-or	*-(t)riz*[6]	*o ator*	*a atriz*	*-or* > *-(t)riz*[3]	
-a	*-isa*[6]	*o poeta*	*a poetisa*	*-a* > *-isa*[3]	
-u	*-ua*[7]	*cru* *nu*	*crua* *nua*	*-u* > *-ua*[3]	
-eu	*-eia*[8]	*europeu* *plebeu*	*europeia* *plebeia*	*-eu* > *-eia*[3]	*judeu > judia* *meu > minha* *teu / seu > tua / sua*

---

[1] Most common pattern.
[2] Less common patterns.
[3] Least common patterns.
[4] Diminutive suffix.
[5] Augmentative suffix.
[6] Like Eng. *-ess* ("actress"), these endings may connote a lack of experience or professionalism; many women, therefore, prefer the masculine noun with the feminine article *(a ator / uma poeta)*.
[7] This ending is more common in adjectives than in nouns.
[8] Portuguese no longer uses an acute accent over stressed *e* of *ei* in words stressed on the next-to-last syllable.

5) Certain nouns designating persons and animals have irregular feminine forms; others have entirely different masculine and feminine forms, derived from different roots.

MASCULINE	ENGLISH (m)	FEMININE	ENGLISH (f)
o macho	male	*a fêmea*[1]	female
o rapaz	boy	*a rapariga*	girl (EP) prostitute (BP)
o homem	man	*a mulher*	woman
o avô	grandfather	*a avó*	grandmother
o esposo / o marido	husband	*a esposa*	wife
o pai	father	*a mãe*	mother
o genro	son-in-law	*a nora*	daughter-in-law
o frade	monk	*a freira*	nun
o herói	hero	*a heroína*	heroine
o rei	king	*a rainha*	queen
o bode	billy-goat	*a cabra*	nanny-goat
o cão	male dog	*a cadela*	female dog / bitch
o carneiro	ram	*a ovelha*	ewe
o cavalo	male horse	*a égua*	mare
o galo	rooster	*a galinha*	hen
o touro / o boi	bull / ox	*a vaca*	cow

6) Certain nouns or adjectives designating persons and animals are invariable in gender (i.e., the masculine and feminine forms are the same); gender is indicated by the article.

endings:	*-a:*	*o/a*	*caixa / carioca / colega / indígena / guia / patriota*
	-cida:	*o/a*	*homicida / suicida*
	-crata:	*o/a*	*burocrata / democrata*
	-ense:	*o/a*	*canadense / estad(o)unidense / timorense*
	-ista:	*o/a*	*artista / paulista / socialista*
	-nte:	*o/a*	*estudante / cliente / doente / gerente / ouvinte*

isolated words:	*o/a*	*cadete*	(cadet)	*o/a* *mártir*	(martyr)
	o/a	*intérprete*	(interpreter)	*o/a* *policial*	(policeperson)
	o/a	*jovem*	(youth)		

7) The following masculine nouns ending in *-e* generate feminine forms ending in *-a* (a linguistic tendency exerting influence over other traditionally gender-invariable nouns).

MASCULINE	ENGLISH (m)	FEMININE	ENGLISH (f)
o infante	infant(e) / prince	*a infanta*	infant(a) / princess
o monge	monk	*a monja*	nun

---

[1] Like Eng. "female," *fêmea* may connote a lack of respect for a woman.

8) Adjectives ending in the following letters are invariable in gender, as are colors that are really nouns, the following cardinal numbers, and the words *só* ("sole" / "only") and *mais / menos*[1] ("more" / "less").

ENDING	EXAMPLES		EXCEPTIONS		
-e	*triste*	*(menos pessoas tristes)*			
-m	*marrom*	*(blusa marrom)*	*bom*	>	*boa*
	comum	*(lugares comuns)*	*um*	>	*uma*
-l	*útil*	*(teoria útil)*	*espanhol*	>	*espanhola*
-z	*feliz*	*(mais pessoas felizes)*			
-ar	*circular*	*(a só pintura circular)*			
unstressed vowel + *s*	*simples*	*(pessoa simples)*			
COLORS *(cor-de-):*	*laranja*	*(caderno laranja)*			
	rosa	*(prédios rosa)*			
CARDINAL NUMBERS:					
3–99	*trinta e oito*	*(alunos / alunas)*	*um / dois* and compounds:		
			um	>	*uma*
			dois	>	*duas*
100	*cem*	*(alunos / alunas)*			
	cento e...	*(alunos / alunas)*	compounds of *cento*:		
			(duz)entos	>	*(duz)entas*
1000	*mil*	*(alunos / alunas)*			

9) The following feminine forms are irregular.

bom > *boa* (good)
mau > *má* (bad)

10) The masculine form of a gender-variable noun or adjective is used to refer to (pro)nouns of both genders.[2]

Ana e os seus filhos são médicos e muito simpáticos.

---

[1] Although *mais / menos* often function as quantifying adjectives *(mais amor / menos brigas),* they remain invariable in gender and number.
[2] As seen in the example, the plural form of a noun / adjective is used to refer to both a singular and a plural (pro)noun; i.e., masculine / plural prevail over feminine / singular in determining grammatical agreement.

DIFFERENCES IN GENDER BETWEEN PORTUGUESE AND SPANISH NOUN COGNATES

Certain Portuguese and Spanish noun cognates differ in gender.

	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
all letters:	*o "c"*	*la "c"*	
certain electronic devices:	*o aspirador*	*la aspiradora*	vacuum cleaner
	o computador	*la computadora*	computer
	o gravador	*la grabadora*	recorder
ending:	*-agem* (f):[1, 2]	*-aje* (m):	
	a viagem	*el viaje*	voyage
isolated words:	*a margem*	*el / la margen*	margin / bank (of river)
	a ordem	*el / la orden*	legal / religious order
	a origem	*el origen*	origin
	a análise	*el análisis*	analysis
	a ênfase	*el énfasis*	emphasis
	a êxtase	*el éxtasis*	ecstasy
	a árvore	*el árbol*	tree
	a equipe	*el equipo*	team
	a ponte	*el puente*	bridge
	a cor	*el color*	color
	a dor	*el dolor*	pain / ache / grief
	o riso / o sorriso	*la risa / la sonrisa*	laughter / smile
	o cárcere	*la cárcel*	prison
	o costume	*la costumbre*	custom
	o creme	*la crema*	cream
	o leite	*la leche*	milk
	o sangue	*la sangre*	blood
	o mel	*la miel*	honey
	o sal	*la sal*	salt
	o nariz	*la nariz*	nose

---

[1] Exceptions: *a imagem* *la imagen* image
a vantagem *la ventaja* (ad)vantage

[2] *personagem / selvagem* are masculine when referring to a male.

PLACEMENT OF ADJECTIVES WITH NOUNS

1) Portuguese qualifying (descriptive) adjectives usually follow the nouns and pronouns that they modify (unlike English adjectives).

uma casa bonita, branca, e extraordinária

2) Articles and quantifying adjectives usually precede the nouns that they modify, as do superlative, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative adjectives.

CATEGORY	EXAMPLES
article	*as / umas casas bonitas*
quantifying adj.	*duas / poucas / tantas casas bonitas*
superlative adj.	*a melhor casa*
demonstrative adj.	*esta / essa / aquela casa bonita*
relative adj.	*a família, cuja casa é bonita*
interrogative adj.	*que / quantas casas bonitas?*

3) Certain adjectives differ in meaning according to where they are placed; compare:

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH	
a única pessoa	the only person	
a pessoa única	the unique person	
uma certa pessoa	a certain person	
uma pessoa certa	a right person	
toda pessoa	each / every person	
a pessoa toda	the whole / entire person	
alguma pessoa	a / any person	(= affirmative)
pessoa alguma	no person	(= negative)
a mesma pessoa	the same person	
a pessoa mesma	the person himself / herself	
uma pobre pessoa	a poor person	(= unfortunate)
uma pessoa pobre	a poor person	(= destitute)
uma grande pessoa	a great person	
uma pessoa grande	a large person	

DIMINUTIVES AND AUGMENTATIVES

1) The following are the most common Portuguese diminutive suffixes, which are affixed to nouns and adjectives.[1] Diminutives usually connote smallness or an endearing quality, and they occasionally convey sarcasm, irony, and even emphasis. Any circumflex or acute accent in the root word disappears in the diminutive.

ROOT WORD	SUFFIXES / EXAMPLES	DETAILS	(PATTERN)
	-inho (m) / ***-inha*** (f):[2, 3]	often used after:	
livro	*livrinho(s)*	radical of word ending in unstressed vowel	
barco	*barquinho(s)*		(*c* > *qu*)
amiga	*amiguinha(s)*		(*g* > *gu*)
português	*portuguesinho(s)*	word ending in *-s*	(drop ˆ)
rapaz	*rapazinho(s)*	word ending in *-z*	
	-zinho (m) / ***-zinha*** (f):[2, 3]	often used after word ending in:	
irmã	*irmãzinha(s)*	stressed vowel	
pé	*pezinho(s)*		(drop ´)
bom / bons	*bonzinho(s)*		(*-m* > *n* in plural)[4]
boa	*boazinha(s)*	stressed + unstressed vowel sequence	
pai	*paizinho(s)*	stressed diphthong	
mãe	*mãezinha(s)*		
mão	*mãozinha(s)*		
limão / limões	*limãozinho / limõezinhos*		(*-ão* > *õe* in plural)[4]
pão / pães	*pãozinho / pãezinhos*		(*-ão* > *ãe* in plural)[4]
animal / animais	*animalzinho / animaizinhos*	*-l*	(*-l* > *i* in plural)[4]
flor	*florzinha(s)*	*-r*	

2) The following root words change their meaning in the diminutive form.

cachorro	(dog)	*cachorrinho*	(puppy)
café	(coffee)	*cafezinho*	(espresso)
curso	(course / class)	*cursinho*	(college preparatory course)
gato	(cat)	*gatinho*	(kitten)
pão	(bread)	*pãozinho*	([bread] roll)
peixe	(fish)	*peixinho*	(little fish // teacher's pet)

---

[1] Other suffixes are *-acho/a // -alho/a // -ebre // -eco/a // -ejo/a // -ela // -elho/a // -ete / -eto/a // -icho/a // -ico/a // -iço/a // -ilho/a // -im / -ino/a // -ola // -ote / -ota // -ucho/a // -(c)ulo/a // -usco/a.*

[2] EP: Also *-(z)ito/a.*

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Port. *-(z)inho/a (pãozinho / mesinha)* corresponds to Sp. *-(c)ito/a (panecito / mesita).*

[4] To form the plural diminutive, affix the plural diminutive suffix to the plural form of the root word, minus the plural marker *-s (animal > animais > animaizinhos).*

3) The following are the most common Portuguese augmentative suffixes, which are affixed to nouns and adjectives.[1] Augmentatives usually connote largeness, and they occasionally convey a pejorative meaning (ugliness, dislike, repugnance, scorn, etc.); for this reason, augmentatives should be avoided until their nuances have been learned. Any circumflex or acute accent in the root word disappears in the augmentative.

ROOT WORD	SUFFIXES / EXAMPLES	DETAILS	(PATTERN)
	-ão (m) / ***-ona*** (f):[2]		(*-ão* > *-ões* in plural)
menino	*meninão / meninões*	***-ão***:	frequently used with masculine nouns
mulher	*mulherona(s)*	***-ona***:	used with feminine nouns
faca (f)	*facão / facões* (m)	***-ão***:	sometimes used with—and changes gender of—feminine nouns
	-ao (m) / ***-ona*** (f):[3]	often used after radical of word ending in	
livro	*livrão / livrões*	unstressed vowel[4]	
barriga	*barrigona(s)*		
	-zão (m) / ***-zona*** (f):	often used after word ending in:[4]	
pé	*pezão / pezões*	stressed vowel	(drop ´)
mão	*mãozona(s)*	stressed diphthong	

4) The following root words change their meaning in the augmentative form.[5]

carta	(letter)	*cartão*	(card / cardboard)
casa	(house)	*casarão*	(mansion)
dinheiro	(money)	*dinheirão*	(large amount / wad of money)
faca	(knife)	*facão // facalhão*	(really big [butcher's] knife)
folia	(mirth)	*folião / foliona*	(party-goer / carouser)
palavra	(word)	*palavrão*	(swear word)
porta	(door)	*portão*	(big door / gate)
solteira	(single woman)	*solteirona*	(old maid)

---

[1] In addition to *-gão / -gona* (see note 3 below), other suffixes are *-aço/a // -alhão / -alhona // -anzil // -arra / -arrão // -astro/a // -az / -ázio/a // -eirão / -eiro/a // -ilão / -ilona // -orra.*

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Port. *-ão / -ona (solteirão / solteirona)* corresponds to Sp. *-ón / -ona (solterón / solterona).*

[3] *-gão / -gona* is often used with words ending in *-z (nariz > narigão).*

[4] Since there are countless exceptions to these guidelines, the best way to learn augmentatives is to observe how native speakers use them.

[5] An augmentative ending affixed to the radical of a verb sometimes means "a lot":

chorar	(to cry)	*chorão / chorona*	(crybaby // weeping willow [m])
mandar	(to command / order)	*mandão / mandona*	(bossy person)
comer	(to eat)	*comilão / comilona*	(glutton / "pig")
dormir	(to sleep)	*dormilão / dormilona*	(sleepyhead)

NUMBERS AND NUMERALS

1) The following are the Portuguese cardinal and ordinal numbers from 0 to 99.

CARDINAL NUMERAL	CARDINAL NUMBER		MASC. ORDINAL NUMBER (fem. form ends in -*a*)	MASC. ORDINAL NUMERAL (fem. form ends in superscript -*a*)
0	*zero*			
1	*um* (m) /	*uma* (f)	*primeiro*	1º
2	*dois* (m) /	*duas* (f)[1]	*segundo*	2º
3	*três*		*terceiro*	3º
4	*quatro*		*quarto*	4º
5	*cinco*		*quinto*	5º
6	*seis*		*sexto*	6º
7	*sete*		*sétimo*	7º
8	*oito*		*oitavo*	8º
9	*nove*		*nono*	9º
10	*dez*		*décimo*	10º
11	*onze*		*décimo primeiro*	11º
12	*doze*		*décimo segundo*	12º
13	*treze*		*décimo terceiro*	13º
14	*catorze / quatorze*		*décimo quarto*	14º
15	*quinze*		*décimo quinto*	15º
16	*dezesseis*[2]	(= 10 + 6)	*décimo sexto*	16º
17	*dezessete*[2]	(= 10 + 7)	*décimo sétimo*	17º
18	*dezoito*	(= 10 + 8)	*décimo oitavo*	18º
19	*dezenove*[2]	(= 10 + 9)	*décimo nono*	19º
20	*vinte*		*vigésimo*	20º
21	*vinte e um /*	*uma*	*vigésimo primeiro*	21º
22	*vinte e dois /*	*duas*	*vigésimo segundo*	22º
30	*trinta*		*trigésimo*	30º
40	*quarenta*		*quadragésimo*	40º
50	*cinquenta*		*quinquagésimo*[3]	50º
60	*sessenta*		*sexagésimo*	60º
70	*setenta*		*septuagésimo*	70º
80	*oitenta*		*octogésimo*	80º
90	*noventa*		*nonagésimo*	90º
99	*noventa e nove*		*nonagésimo nono*	99º

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike in Spanish, the number *dois* is masculine; its feminine form (used alone as well as in compounds) is *duas.*

[2] EP: *dezasseis / dezassete / dezanove,* respectively.

[3] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *qu* to transcribe [k^u].

2) The following are the cardinal and ordinal numbers from 100 to 10,000,000.

CARDINAL NUMERAL	CARDINAL NUMBER	MASC. ORDINAL NUMBER (fem. form ends in -*a*)	MASC. ORDINAL NUMERAL (fem. form ends in superscript -*a*)
100	*cem*	*centésimo*	100º
200	*duzentos/as*	*ducentésimo*	200º
300	*trezentos/as*	*trecentésimo*	300º
400	*quatrocentos/as*	*quadringentésimo*	400º
500	*quinhentos/as*	*quingentésimo*	500º
600	*seiscentos/as*	*sexcentésimo / seiscentésimo*	600º
700	*setecentos/as*	*septingentésimo*	700º
800	*oitocentos/as*	*octingentésimo*	800º
900	*novecentos/as*	*noningentésimo / nongentésimo*	900º
1,000	*mil*	*milésimo*	1,000º
10,000	*dez mil*	*dez milésimo*	10,000º
100,000	*cem mil*	*cem milésimo*	100,000º
1,000,000	*um milhão*	*milionésimo*	1,000,000º
10,000,000	*dez milhões*	*dez milionésimo*	10,000,000º

3) Most cardinal and ordinal numbers are adjectives and generally precede a noun.

4) Cardinal numbers

a) All except *um* are plural by definition;
compounds of *um / uma* retain the singular form.

duas casas
cinquenta e um alunos e cinquenta e uma alunas

b) 3 to 99 are invariable in gender.

oito revistas e trinta livros

c) *um / uma // dois / duas* (and their compounds) are variable in gender and agree with the nouns that they modify.

vinte e uma revistas e trinta e dois livros

d) BP: *meia* (= *meia dúzia* ["half dozen"]) often replaces *seis* in telephone numbers in order to avoid confusion with *três.*

736–8696 = *sete-três-meia–oito-meia-nove-meia*

e) The following cardinal numbers are invariable in gender.

cem	(= only the number 100)
cento	(= 100 followed by a ten or a unit)
mil	(= 1000 and compounds)

cem gatos/as	(100)
cento e quarenta e um alunos	(141)
cento e duas alunas	(102)
duas mil trezentas e quarenta e uma cachorras	(2,341)

f) Compounds of *cento* are variable in gender and therefore agree with the nouns that they modify.

quinhentas e quarenta e uma revistas	(541)

g) *milhão* and *bilhão* are nouns (unlike other numbers) and are always modified by another number; when they directly precede a noun, they are followed by the preposition *de.*[1]

um milhão <u>de</u> mulheres
dois bilhões <u>de</u> pessoas

h) The conjunction *e* ("and") is used between combinations of units, tens, hundreds, and thousands, except after a thousand when followed by a hundred + ten and/or unit.[2]

quatro mil e dois	(4,002)
quatro mil e noventa e dois	(4,092)
quatro mil e quinhentos	(4,500)
vs.	
quatro mil quinhentos e dois	(4,502)
quatro mil quinhentos e noventa e dois	(4,592)

---

[1] "One billion":

in Brazil:	=	1,000,000,000
in Portugal:	=	1,000,000,000,000

(If one must be a billionaire, better to be Portuguese than Brazilian!)

[2] Numerical terminology:

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
unidades	units
dezenas	tens
centenas	hundreds
milhares	thousands

5) Ordinal numbers

a) Each component of an ordinal number is variable in gender and number and therefore agrees with the noun that the number modifies.

décima quinta aula

b) Portuguese uses superscript -*o* / -*a* (English "-st" / "-nd" / "-rd" / "-th") with ordinal numerals.

o 6º século (m) *6ª-feira* (f)

6) Ordinal numerals are used from 2º to 10º; they follow the noun in titles of dignitaries. Cardinal numerals are generally used instead of ordinals above 10 when referring to centuries and dignitaries and in colloquial speech.

o 6º século	*(= sexto)*	vs.	*o século XVI*	*(= dezesseis)*
João II	*(= segundo)*	vs.	*João XXIII*	*(= vinte e três)*

7) The following are common fractions in Portuguese.

FRACTION	FRACTION(S) / PATTERN(S)					EXAMPLES
1/2	*meio/a*				+ noun	*meia torta*
	a metade				+ *de* + noun	*a metade da torta*
1/3	*um terço*				+ *de* + noun	*um terço da torta*
	(uma) terça parte				+ *de* + noun	*(uma) terça parte da torta*
2/3	*dois terços*				+ *de* + noun	*dois terços do bolo*
1/4–1/10	*um*	+ masc.	sing.	ordinal	+ *de* + noun	*um quarto do bolo*
	(uma)	+ fem.	sing.	ordinal + *parte*	+ *de* + noun	*(uma) quarta parte do bolo*
2/4–2/10	*dois*	+ masc.	plur.	ordinal	+ *de* + noun	*dois quintos do bolo*

8) The following are common multiples; beyond 5, use cardinal number + *vezes* ("times").

duplo/a (adj.) // *dobro* (noun)	(double)
triplo/a	(triple)
quádruplo/a	(quadruple)
quíntuplo/a	(quintuple)

9) The following are the arithmetical operations.

+	*mais*
-	*menos*
x	*vezes / multiplicado por*
÷	*dividido por*
=	*igual a / são*

ADVERBS[1]

1) All adverbs are invariable in gender and number since they do not modify nouns or pronouns; rather, they modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

2) Most Portuguese adverbs end in the suffix ***-mente*** (English "-ly"),[2] which is added to the

   a) feminine singular form of a gender-variable adjective:

   rico > *ric<u>a</u>mente*

   b) singular form of a gender-invariable adjective:

   triste > *tristemente*
   natural > *naturalmente*
   simples > *simplesmente*

3) Any circumflex or acute accent in the adjective disappears in the adverb (unlike in Spanish) because of the change in stress.

   cômodo > *c<u>o</u>modamente*
   fácil > *f<u>a</u>cilmente*

4) If two or more adverbs occur sequentially, the suffix *-mente* is added only to the last adverb; the (feminine) singular form is used for the other(s).

   Pedro fala clar<u>a</u> e rapid<u>a</u>mente.

5) In colloquial speech, the masculine singular form of the adjective is often used instead of the adverb.

   Laura fala rápid<u>o</u>. *(= rapidamente)*

---

[1] See adverb charts on pp. 289–296.

[2] *-mente* is added to the feminine form of the adjective because its Latin root noun *mens / mentis* ("mind") was feminine and was therefore modified by feminine adjectives to form adverb phrases (*sana / clara mente,* etc.), which meant "with a...mind."
-mente corresponds to English "-ly," a suffix that is Germanic in origin and related to English *like* and to German *leiche* ("dead body"—the curious relation between these two cognates being their derivation from a Germanic word meaning "of the same form / body").

6) The adverbs corresponding to the following adjectives are irregular.

ADJECTIVE		ADVERB	EXAMPLES OF ADVERB	
muito/a	(much / a lot of)	*muito*[1]	*Ana canta muito.*	(a lot)
muitos/as	(many / a lot of)		*Eu canto muito mal.*	(very)
pouco/a	([a] little)	*pouco*[1]	*Miguel canta (um) pouco.*	([a] little)
poucos/as	([a] few)		*Pedro é pouco vão.*	(not very)
			Josefa é um pouco vã.	(a little / somewhat)
bom / boa	(good)	*bem*	*Paulo canta bem*.	(well)
bons / boas	(good)			
mau / má	(bad)	*mal*	*Eu canto mal.*	(badly / poorly)
maus / más	(bad)			

---

[1] When *muito / pouco* are adverbs, they are invariable in gender and number.

COMPARISONS OF EQUALITY

1) To express the equality of two or more (pro)nouns, adjectives, or verbs (English "as...as"), Portuguese uses these basic constructions:

tão	...	***quanto / como***	(+ adjective / adverb)
tanto	...	***quanto / como***	(+ noun)

2) *quanto* is used interchangeably with *como;* however, BP prefers *quanto,* whereas EP prefers *como.*

3) *tão* and *tanto* always precede any word that they modify.

4) The following are the specific constructions that express equality.

a)[1, 5] *tão* + adjective / adverb + *quanto / como* (as...as)

Pedro corre tão rapidamente como Paulo.
Maria é tão bonita quanto (é) engraçada.

b)[2, 5] *tanto quanto / como* (as much as)

Nós meditamos tanto quanto eles.
Não lemos tanto como devemos.

c)[3, 5] *tanto* + noun + *quanto / como* (as much / many...as)

Precisamos de tant<u>o</u> dinheir<u>o</u> quanto tempo.
José não tem tant<u>as</u> camis<u>as</u> como João.

d)[4, 5] *tanto* (+ noun) + *quanto / como* + verb (as much / many...as)

Levará tant<u>as</u> (mal<u>as</u>) quant<u>as</u> puder.
Foram tant<u>os</u> (alun<u>os</u>) quant<u>os</u> puderam.

---

[1] *tão* is an adverb and is therefore invariable in gender and number, as are *quanto / como.*
[2] *tanto* may be either an adverb (both examples) or a pronoun (2nd example) and is therefore invariable in gender and number, as are *quanto / como.*
[3] *tanto* is an adjective and therefore agrees in gender and number with the noun that it modifies; *quanto / como* are invariable.
[4] *tanto* is an adjective and therefore agrees in gender and number with the noun that it modifies, as does *quanto* when followed by a verb; *quanto* is used much more frequently than *como.*
[5] To express "as little / few...as," Portuguese uses the constructions *tão pouco / tão pouco(s)/a(s)...quanto / como.*

COMPARISONS OF SUPERIORITY AND INFERIORITY

1) To express a higher degree of one or more (pro)nouns, adjectives, or verbs (English "more / -er...than"), Portuguese uses this basic construction:

mais ... ***do que***

2) To express a lower degree of one or more (pro)nouns, adjectives, or verbs (English "less / fewer...than"), Portuguese uses this basic construction:

menos ... ***do que***

3) *mais* and *menos* are invariable in gender and number, and they precede any word that they modify.

4) When (pro)nouns or adjectives are compared, the preposition *do* of *do que* is optional and invariable in gender and number.

Eu como menos carne (do) que queijo.	(= two nouns)
Ele fala mais (do) que ela.	(= two pronouns)
Pedro corre menos rapidamente (do) que Paulo.	(= two nouns)
Vocês são mais enérgicos (do) que nós.	(= two pronouns)
Ana é menos bonita (do) que engraçada.	(= two adjectives)

5) When verbs are compared, the preposition *do* of *do que* is obligatory and usually invariable in gender and number.[1]

Nós jogamos menos do que queremos.
O Roberto é mais alto do que parece.
O Pedro corre mais rapidamente do que precisa.
Elas ganham menos dinheiro do que pensam.
Seu irmão compra mais sapatos do que deve.[1]
José tem mais roupa do que precisa.[1]
Paula lê menos revistas do que quer.[1]

---

[1] In very formal (and older) Portuguese, *do que* becomes *dos / da(s) que* when preceded by a plural and/or feminine noun and followed by a verb; these plural and/or feminine forms of *do* are variable in gender and number and therefore agree with the noun, to which they refer:

Seu irmão compra mais sapatos dos que deve.
José tem mais roupa da que precisa.
Paula lê menos revistas das que quer.

6) The following construction is used when *mais* and *menos* precede a number:

mais / ***menos*** + ***de*** + number

Meu irmão comprou mais de oito livros ontem.
Tenho menos de vinte discos.

7) When the preposition *de* precedes *mais* and *menos,* it intensifies these words (English "too"):

a) *mais* > ***demais***[1]

tempo demais	(too much time)
preocupado demais	(too concerned)

b) *menos* > ***de menos***

tempo de menos	(too little time / not enough time)
preocupado de menos	(too little concerned / not concerned enough)

---

[1] EP: Written *de mais* (two words).

8) The following adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms.[1]

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	EXAMPLES OF COMPARATIVE
muito/a (much / a lot of) *muitos/as* (many / a lot of)	*muito* (a lot)	*mais*[2] (more / -er)	*Ela tem mais aulas (do) que eu.* *Ela canta mais (do) que eu.* *João é mais rico (do) que José.*
pouco/a ([a] little) *poucos/as* ([a] few)	*pouco* ([a] little)	*menos*[2] (less / fewer)	*Eu tenho menos aulas (do) que ela.* *Eu canto menos (do) que ela.* *José é menos rico (do) que João.*
bom / bons // boa(s) (good)	*bem* (well)	*melhor(es)* (better)	*Ela canta melhor (do) que eu.* *Estes são melhores (do) que esses.*
mau(s) / má(s) (bad)	*mal* (badly)	*pior(es)* (worse)	*Eu canto pior (do) que ela.* *Esses são piores (do) que estes.*
grande(s) (large / great)		*maior(es)*[3] (larger / greater)	*Isto é maior (do) que aquilo.* *Estas são maiores (do) que essas.*
pequeno(s) / pequena(s) (small)		*menor(es)*[3] (smaller)	*Aquilo é menor (do) que isto.* *Essas são menores (do) que estas.*

9) *superior* and *inferior* are generally followed by the preposition *a* (which is contracted, depending on the context).

O nosso produto é superior ao seu.
As nossas provas são inferiores às suas.

---

[1] Notes on comparatives in *-or:*
(a) All are invariable in gender.
(b) Adjectives are variable in number *(estas são maiores)*.
(c) Adverbs are invariable in number *(estão cantando melhor)*.
(d) *maior / menor* and *superior / inferior* are adjectives, not adverbs (unlike *melhor / pior,* which are both).

[2] *mais / menos* are always invariable in gender and number.

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates, *maior / menor* mean "larger" / "smaller," not "older" / "younger" *(= mais velho / mais jovem)*.

RELATIVE SUPERLATIVES

1) The relative superlative expresses

   a) the highest degree (English "the most / -(e)st")
   b) the lowest degree (English "the least")

2) To form a relative superlative, Portuguese normally places a definite article before ***mais*** or ***menos*** or an irregular comparative (listed on p. 80).

o(s)/a(s) mais	(the most / -est)	*o(s)/a(s) menos*	(the least / fewest)
o(s)/a(s) maior(es)	(the largest / greatest)	*o(s)/a(s) menor(es)*	(the smallest)
o(s)/a(s) melhor(es)	(the best)	*o(s)/a(s) pior(es)*	(the worst)

3) The preposition *de* (which is contracted, depending on the context) introduces the category to which the superlative element belongs (English "in" / "of").

4) The following are the specific constructions used to form

   a) a relative superlative adjective:

   definite article + irregular comparative[1]

   Vicente é o melhor (operário [da empresa]). (the best)

   b) a relative superlative adverb modifier of an adjective:

   definite article (+ predicate noun) + *mais / menos // melhor / pior* + adjective

   Jaime é o (operário) menos motivado (da empresa). (the least)

   c) a relative superlative adverb modifier of a verb:

   definite article (+ predicate noun) + *que* + *mais / menos // melhor / pior* + verb[2]
   definite article (+ predicate noun) + *que* + verb + *mais / menos // melhor / pior*[2]

   São os (operários) que mais e melhor trabalham? (the most / best)
   São os (operários) que trabalham menos e pior. (the least / worst)

   de + category + verb + *mais / menos // melhor / pior*

   De todos (os operários), Vicente trabalha mais. (the most)

---

[1] To express "the most / least" + noun (= "the largest / smallest number of" + noun), Portuguese uses *o maior / menor número de* + noun *(o maior número de atletas).*
[2] The word order of *mais / menos* + verb is inverted in these two synonymous constructions.

ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVES

Portuguese uses two basic synonymous constructions to form the absolute superlative (English "[not] very"):

1)[1a] ***muito / pouco***[2] + adjective / adverb

Esses livros são muito caros mas pouco valiosos. (very / not very)
Ana fala muito rapidamente. (very)

2)[1b] adjective + ***-íssimo*** (used less than *muito* / *pouco* + adj.)
adverb + ***-issimamente*** (used much less than *muito* / *pouco* + adv.)

a) All adjectives become gender-variable as absolute superlatives.

Roberto e Ricardo são lealíssimos. *(< leal)*

b) The following are the specific patterns of forming a regular absolute superlative adjective ending in *-íssimo* (the most common of several possible superlative endings). Any circumflex or acute accent in the adjective disappears in the superlative because of the change in stress.

ADJ. ENDING	PATTERN	ADJECTIVE	SUPERLATIVE
vowel	drop final vowel	*rápido / triste*	*rapidíssimo // tristíssimo/a*
	c > *qu*	*rico*	*riquíssimo*
	g > *gu*	*larga*	*larguíssima*
-s	keep *s*	*cortês*	*cortesíssimo/a*
-r	keep *r*	*regular*	*regularíssimo/a*
-l	keep *l*	*azul*	*azulíssimo/a*
-vel	*-vel* > *bil*	*possível*	*possibilíssimo/a*
-ão / -ã	*-ão / -ã* > *an*	*vão / vã*	*vaníssimo/a*
-m	*-m* > *n*	*comum*	*comuníssimo/a*
-z	*-z* > *c*	*feliz*	*felicíssimo/a*

c) To form an absolute superlative adverb, first form an absolute superlative feminine adjective according to the specific patterns above, then add *-mente.*

rapidamente > rápida > rapidíssima > rapidissimamente

---

[1] This construction is called:
(a) the "analytic" absolute superlative
(b) the "synthetic" absolute superlative
[2] When used to form an absolute superlative, *muito / pouco* (or *extremadamente / altamente,* etc.) are adverbs and are therefore invariable in gender and number. In colloquial Portuguese, *super* is often used as a synonym of *muito (Carla é super chique).*

d) Formal Portuguese uses many irregular absolute superlative adjectives, which have changed little from their original Latin form (see pp. 287–288 for a more complete list). The ending *-íssimo* is more common than *-érrimo / -ílimo.*

SUPERLATIVE ENDING	ADJECTIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE
-íssimo	*amigo / inimigo*	*amicíssimo / inimicíssimo*
	antigo	*antiquíssimo*[1]
	cruel	*crudelíssimo*
	doce	*dulcíssimo*
	fiel	*fidelíssimo*
	frio	*frigidíssimo*
	geral	*generalíssimo*
	nobre	*nobilíssimo*
	pessoal	*personalíssimo*
-érrimo[2]	*célebre*	*celebérrimo*
	livre	*libérrimo*
	mísero	*misérrimo*
	pobre	*paupérrimo*
-ílimo	*fácil / difícil*	*facílimo / dificílimo*
	frágil	*fragílimo*
	humilde	*humílimo*

e) The following absolute superlative adjectives are among the most frequently used; all except *supremo* end in *-imo.*

ADJECTIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE
bom	*ótimo*
mau	*péssimo*
grande	*máximo*
pequeno	*mínimo*
inferior	*ínfimo*
superior	*supremo*

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *qu* to transcribe [k^u].

[2] This ending is gaining popularity in colloquial Portuguese, as seen in the following examples:

ADJECTIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE
chato	*chatérrimo*
chique	*chiquérrimo*
elegante	*elegantérrimo*

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The following are the Portuguese personal pronouns.

	SUBJECT PRONOUN	PREP. OBJECT PRONOUN	REFLEXIVE PREP. OBJECT PRONOUN	REFLEXIVE DIR. / INDIR. OBJECT PRONOUN	DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN	INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN
SING.						
	eu	*mim*	*mim*	*me*	*me*	*me*
	tu	*ti*	*ti*	*te*	*te*	*te*
	você (m)	*você*	*si*	*se*	*o*	*lhe*
	você (f)	*você*	*si*	*se*	*a*	*lhe*
	o senhor	*o senhor*	*si*	*se*	*o*	*lhe*
	a senhora	*a senhora*	*si*	*se*	*a*	*lhe*
	ele	*ele*	*si*	*se*	*o*	*lhe*
	ela	*ela*	*si*	*se*	*a*	*lhe*
PLUR.						
	nós	*nós*	*nós*	*nos*	*nos*	*nos*
	vós	*vós*	*vós*	*vos*	*vos*	*vos*
	vocês (m)	*vocês*	*si*	*se*	*os*	*lhes*
	vocês (f)	*vocês*	*si*	*se*	*as*	*lhes*
	os senhores	*os senhores*	*si*	*se*	*os*	*lhes*
	as senhoras	*as senhoras*	*si*	*se*	*as*	*lhes*
	eles	*eles*	*si*	*se*	*os*	*lhes*
	elas	*elas*	*si*	*se*	*as*	*lhes*

SUBJECT PRONOUNS

1) The following are the Portuguese subject pronouns.

	PERSON OF PRONOUN		SUBJECT PRONOUN	ENG.	DEGREE OF FAMILIARITY	PERSON OF VERB	EXAMPLE OF VERB
SING.							
	1st	(m/f)	***eu***	I		1st	*canto*
	2nd	(m/f)	***tu***	you	EP: informal	2nd	*cantas*
	2nd	(m/f)	***você***	you	BP: informal EP: semiformal	3rd	*canta*
	2nd	(m)	***o senhor***	you	formal	3rd	*canta*
	2nd	(f)	***a senhora***	you	formal	3rd	*canta*
	3rd	(m)	***ele***	he / it		3rd	*canta*
	3rd	(f)	***ela***	she / it		3rd	*canta*
PLUR.							
	1st	(m/f)	***nós***	we		1st	*cantamos*
	2nd	(m/f)	***vós***	you	very formal	2nd	*cantais*
	2nd	(m/f)	***vocês***	you	informal	3rd	*cantam*
	2nd	(m)	***os senhores***	you	formal	3rd	*cantam*
	2nd	(f)	***as senhoras***	you	formal	3rd	*cantam*
	3rd	(m)	***eles***	they		3rd	*cantam*
	3rd	(f)	***elas***	they		3rd	*cantam*

2) *você(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)* are in effect 2nd-person pronouns since they refer to the listener(s) in a dialogue with the speaker; for historical and etymological reasons, however, these pronouns take 3rd-person verbs, and they correspond to 3rd-person object pronouns (see p. 86n2 for details).

3) *a gente* is widely used as a colloquial synonym of *nós,* but it takes a 3rd-person singular verb *(a gente cant<u>a</u>)* and the possessive prepositional phrase *da gente.*[1, 2]

4) Portuguese has no neuter subject pronoun corresponding to English "it" / Spanish *ello.*

---

[1] The use of *a gente* (and *da gente*) should be avoided in formal Portuguese.
[2] *a gente* also means "people" (Sp. *la gente*); to avoid ambiguity when intending to express "people," either modify *a gente (a gente rica)* or use a synonym *(o povo / o pessoal / as pessoas).*

5) Portuguese has various subject pronouns that correspond to English "you"; each one reflects a particular degree of familiarity. When to use a certain form depends on such factors as the speaker's and/or listener's regional dialect, age, social class, and level of education. To complicate matters further, the uses of these pronouns are constantly evolving; the following uses are therefore subject to exception and change.

a) *tu:*[1]

i) EP and several dialects of BP: *tu* is the most informal "you" and is used when the speaker addresses the listener by first name; for example, between spouses / siblings / friends, or by an older person to a child;
ii) EP: *tu* is often used between peers / younger strangers.

b) *vós:*

BP and EP:
i) *vós* was the plural of *tu* in older Portuguese but is no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon;
ii) *vós* has also been the pronoun traditionally used when addressing God.

c) *você(s):*[2, 3]

i) most dialects of BP: *você(s)* is the only informal "you" and is used when the speaker addresses the listener(s) by first name; for example, between spouses / siblings / friends, or by an older person to a child;
ii) most dialects of BP: *você(s)* is also used between peers / younger strangers;
iii) EP: *você* is slightly more formal than *tu* and is occasionally used between peers; since the uses of *você* are continually changing in Portugal, this pronoun should be avoided until its current nuances have been learned;
iv) BP and EP: *vocês* is used as the plural of *tu,* as well as of *você.*

d) *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s):*

BP and EP:
i) *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)* is more formal than *você(s)* and is used when the speaker addresses the listener(s) by title + last name (surname); for example, by a lower-ranking person to a higher-ranking person (as it is occasionally used in Spanish) or by a younger person to an older person;
ii) *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)* is also used between older strangers.

---

[1] In nonstandard colloquial BP, *tu* is often used with 3rd-pers. sing. verbs instead of 2nd-pers. sing. ones *("tu canta" = tu cantas);* this usage is incorrect in standard Portuguese.
[2] Port. *você /* Sp. *usted* are cognates that derive from their respective sister roots *Vossa Mercê / Vuestra Merced* ("Your Grace"). English speakers can understand why *você(s) / usted(es)* take 3rd-pers. (not 2nd-pers.) verbs if they consider that "Your Grace" and "Your Majesty" also do ("Is Your Majesty tired?" vs. "Elizabeth, are you tired?").
[3] *você(s)* is often abbreviated *cê(s)* in colloquial BP, but this abbreviation should be avoided in formal BP; the contractions *docê(s) / procê(s) (< de / para + você[s])* should also be avoided.

6) If in doubt as to which subject pronoun to use: in BP, avoid using a pronoun altogether; in EP, use the first name or a noun like *o amigo / a professora* either alone or followed by the person's first or last name *(A Marta está bem? / O amigo [Pedro / Gomes] está mal?)*.

7) *Vossa Excelência* ("Your Excellency") and *Vossa Senhoria* ("Your Lordship / Ladyship") are still used in modern Portuguese when speaking to a dignitary of either gender; any modifying adjective agrees in gender and number with the person(s) addressed.

Vossas Excelências estão cansados? (= General e Senhora Brito)

8) Subject pronouns may be omitted (unlike in English) when the verb ending conveys the identity of the subject.[1]

Viajávamos muito. (the subject can only be *nós*)

9) Subject pronouns should be used to

a) avoid ambiguity when the verb ending and the context do not convey the identity of the subject, as in the case of:

i) identical 1st- / 3rd-person singular verb endings:[2]

Não é preciso que eu vá ao cinema, nem que você vá à festa.

ii) 3rd-person verbs (singular and plural), which can theoretically refer to an infinite number of subjects:

Elas viajavam muito. (or *eles, vocês,* etc.)

b) emphasize or contrast:

Nós viajávamos muito. (= we used to travel)
Ele come muito, mas ela come pouco.

c) disambiguate a change of subject:

Depois de eles jantarem, vocês podem ir à festa.

10) The masculine form of a gender-variable pronoun is used to refer to nouns of both genders.

Eles viajavam muito. *(= Paulo e Raquel)*

---

[1] I.e., in the 1st-pers. sing. present, preterite (regular verbs), and future indic.; and the 1st-pers. plur. and 2nd-pers. sing. / plur. of all verb tenses and personal infinitive.
[2] I.e., in the imperfect and simple past perfect indic.; conditional; present, past, and future subj.; and personal infinitive.

FORMS OF ADDRESS

The following forms are used to address a person in Portuguese; they do not take a definite article.

1) *Senhor* and *Senhora* are used with the last name (surname) and mean "Sir" / "Mr." and "Ma'am" / "Mrs." / "Miss," respectively; these forms are abbreviated *Sr.* and *Sra.* in written correspondence.[1]

Senhor (Moreira), aonde o senhor vai?	(Sir // Mr. Moreira)
Excelentíssima Sra. (Mariana) Peres:[2]	(Mrs. / Miss Peres)

2) *Senhorita* ("Miss") is used with the first name when addressing a young, unmarried girl (never a spinster, unlike in English).[3, 4]

Senhorita Ana, a que horas quer jantar?

3) *Seu (< senhor)* is used with the first (and occasionally last) name when addressing (or referring to) a higher-ranking or older man.

Seu Vicente, o senhor está com fome? (with *Seu,* use *o senhor*)

4) *Dona* ("Lady," abbreviated *D.*) is the feminine equivalent of *Seu* in modern Portuguese. *Dona* is used with the first name when addressing (or referring to) a higher-ranking or older woman; unlike *Seu, Dona* is also used with a royal or noblewoman.

Dona Ana, a senhora está com sede? (with *Dona,* use *a senhora*)

5) *Dom* ("Sir," abbreviated *D.*) was the masculine equivalent of *Dona* in older Portuguese but is rarely used in modern Portuguese except when addressing (or referring to) a royal or nobleman, or a church dignitary; *Dom* is used with the first name.

Dom João, o senhor conhece bem o Vaticano? (with *Dom,* use *o senhor*)

---

[1] When they mean "you," *senhor(es) / senhora(s)* are used without a last name and take a definite article (see p. 86: 5d for details):

Os senhores querem jantar?

When referring to a person and used with a last name, *senhor / senhora* take a definite article:

O senhor Moreira e a senhora Coelho querem jantar.

[2] The ending *-es* is the most common Portuguese patronymic and means "son of" (as do Spanish *-ez,* English *-son,* Celtic *M(a)c,* Arabic *Ibn,* and Hebrew *Ben*); e.g., the surname *Peres* means "son of Pedro"; *Henriques,* "son of Henrique," etc.

[3] When referring to a young, unmarried girl, *senhorita* takes a definite article:

A senhorita Ana quer jantar às 19h.

[4] EP: *Menina* is also used when addressing a young, unmarried girl; *a menina,* when referring to one.

PREPOSITIONAL PRONOUNS AND CONTRACTIONS WITH PREPOSITIONS

1) Portuguese prepositional object pronouns are the same as subject pronouns, with three exceptions:[1]

mim	(= 1st-person singular)
ti	(= 2nd-person singular)
si[2]	(= 3rd-person singular / plural reflexive)

Os cadernos são para mim e para ti.
Eles compraram o carro para si (mesmos). (themselves)

2) Prepositional pronouns are used with all prepositions except *exce(p)to / menos / salvo // entre,* which take subject pronouns.

Todos estudam exce(p)to eu. (= *menos / salvo)*
Entre tu e eu, acho que o professor é estrito demais!

3) The following contractions of the preposition *com* with prepositional pronouns are obligatory.[3]

com	+	*mim*	=	***comigo***	
com	+	*ti*	=	***contigo***	
com	+	*si*	=	***consigo***	
com	+	*nós*	=	***conosco***[4]	(unlike in modern Spanish)
com	+	*vós*	=	***convosco***	(unlike in modern Spanish)

4) The following contractions of the prepositions *de / em* with *ele(s)* and *ela(s)* are obligatory.[5]

de	+	*ele(s)*	=	***dele(s)***	*(Os carros são dele.)*
de	+	*ela(s)*	=	***dela(s)***	*(O jornal é delas.)*
em	+	*ele(s)*	=	***nele(s)***	*(Elas pensam neles.)*
em	+	*ela(s)*	=	***nela(s)***	*(Ele pensa nela.)*

---

[1] See pronoun chart on p. 84.
[2] EP: *si* is often used as a synonym of *você(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s):*
O livro é para si, não para mim. (you)
[3] The reason for these contractions is historical: the Latin preposition *cum* (> Portuguese *com*) followed and was affixed to the prepositional pronoun (> *mecum*). When this form evolved into Portuguese (> *migo*), the meaning of the suffix *-go* was no longer readily apparent; as a result, Portuguese (and Spanish) added the prefix *com- / con-* in order to clarify the meaning (> *comigo*). Strictly speaking, then, these contractions are redundant.
[4] EP: Written *connosco.*
[5] *de / para + você(s) = docê(s) / procê(s)* in colloquial BP; these contractions should be avoided in formal BP.

DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

1) The following are the Portuguese direct object pronouns.

SING. SUBJ.	SING. DIR. OBJ. PRON.	ENG.		PLUR. SUBJ.	PLUR. DIR. OBJ. PRON.	ENG.	
eu	***me***	me	(m/f)	*nós*	***nos***	us	(m/f)
tu	***te***	you	(m/f)	*vós*	***vos***	you	(m/f)
você	***o***	you	(m)	*vocês*	***os***	you	(m)
você	***a***	you	(f)	*vocês*	***as***	you	(f)
o senhor	***o***	you	(m)	*os senhores*	***os***	you	(m)
a senhora	***a***	you	(f)	*as senhoras*	***as***	you	(f)
ele	***o***	him	(m)	*eles*	***os***	them	(m)
ela	***a***	her	(f)	*elas*	***as***	them	(f)

2) The masculine form of a gender-variable pronoun is used to refer to nouns of both genders.

eu os vi *(= Ana e Pedro)*

3) In colloquial Portuguese, the subject pronouns *você(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s) // ele(s) / ela(s)* are often used instead of direct object pronouns.[1]

eu vi vocês // os senhores // elas *(= eu os / as vi)*

4) Instead of the pronouns *o / a* (as in *eu o / a vi*), colloquial BP (not formal BP) often uses

te when a spouse, child, sibling, or close friend is spoken to as *você* *(eu te vi);*
lhe(s) when a higher-ranking person is spoken to as *o senhor / a senhora* *(eu lhe vi).*

5) *vos* is no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon.

6) Colloquial Portuguese (unlike English and Spanish) often omits the direct object pronoun when the object has just been mentioned (e.g., in the response to a question).

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
Você leu o livro? Li, sim.	*Usted leyó el libro? Sí, lo leí.*	*Did you read the book? Yes, I read it.*
Li o livro e adorei.	*Leí el libro y lo adoré.*	*I read the book and adored it.*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese rarely uses "personal *a*" before a personal direct object except (occasionally) after *amar* and (often) before *Deus (amar a Deus)*.

INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

1) The following are the Portuguese indirect object pronouns.

SING. SUBJ.	SING. INDIR. OBJ. PRON.	ENG. (to):		PLUR. SUBJ.	PLUR. INDIR. OBJ. PRON.	ENG. (to):	
eu	***me***	me	(m/f)	*nós*	***nos***	us	(m/f)
tu	***te***	you	(m/f)	*vós*	***vos***	you	(m/f)
você	***lhe***	you	(m/f)	*vocês*	***lhes***	you	(m/f)
o senhor	***lhe***	you	(m)	*os senhores*	***lhes***	you	(m)
a senhora	***lhe***	you	(f)	*as senhoras*	***lhes***	you	(f)
ele	***lhe***	him	(m)	*eles*	***lhes***	them	(m)
ela	***lhe***	her	(f)	*elas*	***lhes***	them	(f)

2) When a spouse, child, sibling, or close friend is spoken to as *você,* colloquial BP (not formal BP) often uses *te* instead of the more formal *lhe.*

eu te dou o livro *(= eu lhe dou o livro)*

3) *vos* is no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon.

4) Instead of the indirect object pronoun, colloquial Portuguese often uses the prepositional phrase *para / a* + prepositional pronoun.[1]

eu dou o livro para ele *(= eu lhe dou o livro)*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese
(a) does not need to use an indirect object pronoun when the indirect object is expressed;
(b) normally uses *de* or a possessive for the indirect object of separation or ownership (unlike in Spanish, a possessive is often omitted before a part of the possessor's own body but is used when the "body part" does not belong to the possessor); compare:

	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
(a)	*Dei o gravador para / a Ana.*	*Le di la grabadora a Ana.*
	Demos um livro para / a nossos tios.	*Les dimos un libro a nuestros tíos.*
(b)	*O ladrão roubou a carteira de Miguel.*	*El ladrón le robó la cartera a Miguel.*
	Marta cortou o meu cabelo.	*Marta me cortó el pelo.*
	Pedro lavou os olhos com água.	*Pedro se lavó los ojos con agua.*

PLACEMENT OF OBJECT PRONOUNS

The following guidelines indicate where Portuguese direct and indirect object pronouns (including reflexive object pronouns) should be placed in a sentence.

1) An object pronoun should

a) not begin a sentence;[1]

b) follow the *não* of a negative sentence or an imperative:

Não lhe dissemos uma mentira.
Não o compre!
Não se levantem!

c) precede

i) a simple conjugated verb or an affirmative imperative, if the verb does not begin the sentence:

Nunca o compra.
Sempre me digam a verdade!

ii) a verb in a subordinate clause:

Isabel diz que você o comprou e que lhe pagou a conta.

d) follow a simple conjugated verb or an affirmative imperative, if the verb begins the sentence:[1, 2, 3]

Compra-o.
Levantam-se.
Amo-te muito.
Chame-nos!
Digam-me a verdade!

---

[1] In colloquial BP, *me / te / se / nos* often begin a sentence:
Te amo muito.
Nos chame!

[2] When an object pronoun follows a verb, a hyphen separates them (unlike in Spanish).

[3] In formal Portuguese, an object pronoun often separates the radical of a future- / conditional-tense verb from its ending (see pp. 93: 3, 176: 3, 180:3 for details):
Falar-lhes-emos logo.
Comê-lo-iam se pudessem.

2) An object pronoun may either precede, divide, or follow a verb group; the placement of object pronouns is more flexible in Portuguese than in English or Spanish.

Eles se vão lavar.
Eles vão se lavar.[1, 2] (preferred in colloquial BP)
Eles vão lavar-se.

Marta nos está servindo o jantar.
Marta está nos servindo o jantar.[1, 2] (preferred in colloquial BP)
Marta está servindo-nos o jantar.

3) Phonetic changes occur in the following contexts when a direct object pronoun follows a verb form.

CONTEXT	PHONETIC CHANGE	EXAMPLES				
1st-pers. plur. verb + *nos*	drop final *-s* of verb	*sentamos*	+	*nos*	=	*sentamo-nos*
verb form ending in *-s / -z / -r + o(s)/a(s)*[3]	drop final *-s / -z / -r* of verb form, then add *l* to pronoun[3]	*estudamos*	+	*o*	=	*estudamo-lo*
		faz	+	*a*	=	*fá-la*[4]
		cantas	+	*os*	=	*canta-los*
		fez	+	*a*	=	*fê-la*[5]
		comes	+	*as*	=	*come-las*
		diz	+	*os*	=	*di-los*
		pôs	+	*o*	=	*pô-lo*[5]
		cantar	+	*os*	=	*cantá-los*[4]
		comer	+	*as*	=	*comê-las*[5, 6]
		abrir	+	*os*	=	*abri-los*
		atrair	+	*o*	=	*atraí-lo*[4]
		destruir	+	*as*	=	*destruí-las*[4]
		pôr	+	*o*	=	*pô-lo*[5]
		supor	+	*o*	=	*supô-lo*[5]
verb form ending in nasal + *o(s)/a(s)*	add *n* to pronoun	*comem*	+	*as*	=	*comem-nas*
		põe	+	*o*	=	*põe-no*

---

[1] No hyphen either precedes or follows the object pronoun.
[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: This construction (= division of verb group) is incorrect in Spanish.
[3] Also radical (= infinitive) of future- / conditional-tense verbs:

FUTURE TENSE		CONDITIONAL TENSE	
cantá-lo-ei	*(= o cantarei)*	*cantá-lo-ia*	*(= o cantaria)*
comê-la-emos	*(= a comeremos)*	*comê-la-íamos*	*(= a comeríamos)*
abri-los-ão	*(= os abrirão)*	*abri-los-iam*	*(= os abririam)*

[4] Acute accent over stressed *a // i* of verb form ending in *-as / -az / -ar // -air / -uir.*
[5] Circumflex over stressed *e // o* of verb form ending in *-es / -ez / -er // -ôs / -ôr / -or.*
[6] Exception: *(re)quer + o(s)/a(s) = (re)quere-o(s) / (re)quere-a(s).*

4) Colloquial Portuguese (unlike Spanish) does not use a direct and an indirect object pronoun in the same clause; rather, it uses the following constructions:[1]

a) indirect object pronoun + direct object noun:

Miguel lhe mostrou a carteira.

b) direct object pronoun + *para / a* + (pro)noun:[2, 3]

Miguel a mostrou para Isabel.
Miguel a mostrou para ela.

---

[1] Formal and literary EP contracts contiguous direct and indirect object pronouns (see chart on p. 276).
[2] Unlike English and Spanish, colloquial Portuguese often omits the direct object pronoun when the object has just been mentioned (see p. 90: 6 for examples).
[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Miguel (a) mostrou para Isabel.	*Miguel se la mostró a Isabel.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND VERBS

1) The following are the Portuguese reflexive pronouns.

	SUBJECT PRONOUN	REFLEXIVE PREP. OBJ. PRONOUN	REFLEXIVE DIR. / INDIR. OBJ. PRONOUN	ENGLISH	
SING.					
	eu	***mim***	***me***	myself	(m/f)
	tu	***ti***	***te***	yourself	(m/f)
	você	***si***	***se***	yourself	(m/f)
	o senhor	***si***	***se***	yourself	(m)
	a senhora	***si***	***se***	yourself	(f)
	ele	***si***	***se***	himself	(m)
	ela	***si***	***se***	herself	(f)
PLUR.					
	nós	***nós***	***nos***	ourselves	(m/f)
	vós	***vós***	***vos***	yourselves	(m/f)
	vocês	***si***	***se***	yourselves	(m/f)
	os senhores	***si***	***se***	yourselves	(m)
	as senhoras	***si***	***se***	yourselves	(f)
	eles	***si***	***se***	themselves	(m)
	elas	***si***	***se***	themselves	(f)

2) *vós* / *vos* are no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon.

3) Reflexive direct and indirect object pronouns share the same forms.

4) Reflexive object pronouns

a) differ from nonreflexive ones only in the 3rd-person singular / plural *se;*[1] compare:

reflexive:	*Ele se levanta.*	(He lifts himself / gets up.)
nonreflexive:	*Ele o levanta.*	(He lifts him / it [up].)

b) are either direct or indirect objects:[2]

direct:	*Eu me sento.*	(I seat myself / sit down.)
indirect:	*Eu me comprei um anel.*	(I bought myself a ring.)

5) Reflexive prepositional pronouns

a) are prepositional objects:

Elas não pensam em si (mesmas).	("they" are female)
Eles não pensam em si (mesmos).	("they" are male)
Você acha que penso por mim mesma?	(speaker is female)
Você acha que penso por mim mesmo?	(speaker is male)

b) are often used in colloquial Portuguese after *para / a* to replace indirect object pronouns:

Ele comprou um carro para si mesmo.[3] *(= Ele se comprou um carro.)*

---

[1] See pronoun chart on p. 84.
[2] See pp. 92–94 for placement of object pronouns.
[3] Colloquial BP often replaces a reflexive prepositional pronoun with a nonreflexive one (provided that the nonreflexive one does not create ambiguity):

Ele comprou um carro para ele. (no other male has been mentioned)

6) Reflexive pronouns convey the

a) reflexive meaning of "-self / -selves"
b) reciprocal meaning of "each other"

a) Reflexive meaning:

i) the action of the verb is reflected back on the subject (the English adverbs "up" / "down" also convey this meaning):

Nós nos sentamos. (We seat ourselves / sit down.)
Nós nos levantamos. (We lift ourselves / get up.)

ii) in order to clarify the reflexive meaning of the reflexive object pronoun (i.e., to avoid the possibility that it might mean "each other"), Portuguese often includes the adjective *mesmo* (and occasionally *próprio*) after a reflexive prepositional pronoun:[1]

Ana e Inês se veem[2] *a si mesmas.* (= each one sees herself)
Pedro se vê a si próprio. (= he sees himself)

b) Reciprocal meaning:

i) the action of the verb passes back and forth between the subjects:

Pedro e Ana se amam. (= they love each other)

ii) in order to clarify the reciprocal meaning of the reflexive object pronoun (i.e., to avoid the possibility that it might mean "-self / -selves"), Portuguese often includes *entre si / reciprocamente / mutuamente,* or one of the following expressions (which occasionally replace the reflexive pronoun):

um ao outro (= two males or people of mixed gender)
uns aos outros (= more than two males or people of mixed gender)
uma(s) à(s) outra(s) (= two or more females)

Pedro e Ana se amam entre si / reciprocamente / mutuamente.
Pedro e Ana se amam um ao outro.
Os diplomatas se respeitam uns aos outros.
As professoras se ajudam umas às outras.

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese omits the reflexive pronoun with parts of the body; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Maria pinta as unhas.	*María se pinta las uñas.*

[2] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

7) The reflexive passive (often seen in want ads) is expressed by using the reflexive object pronoun *se* with a 3rd-person singular or plural verb.[1]

VENDEM-SE CARROS[2]	(CARS FOR SALE)
VENDE-SE CARRO[2]	(CAR FOR SALE)
O que se vendeu / venderam?	(What was / were sold?)

In this reflexive passive construction

a) only a thing may be the subject, because a personal subject pronoun would make the construction reciprocal or reflexive, not passive; compare:

passive:	*Lavam-se carros.*	(Cars are washed.)
reflexive:	*As crianças se lavam (a si mesmas).*	(The children wash themselves.)
reciprocal:	*As crianças se lavam (entre si).*	(The children wash each other.)

b) the meaning of the impersonal "one" / "you" / "they" / "people" is often conveyed, as it also is by using a 3rd-person plural verb in an active sentence; the subject of the reflexive passive agrees in number with the verb and is the direct object of its corresponding active construction; compare:

passive:	*Venderam-se os livros.*	(The books were sold.)
active:	*Venderam os livros.*	(They sold the books.)
passive:	*Fala-se italiano.*	(Italian is spoken.)
active:	*Falam italiano.*	(They / People speak Italian.)

c) the agent of the passive (English "by...") cannot be expressed, unlike in the "true" passive (= verb *ser* + past participle);[3] compare:

Venderam-se os livros.	(by whom?)
Os livros foram vendidos por João.	(by João)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese omits the reflexive pronoun and uses the active voice when expressing unplanned occurrences; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Ontem me ocorreu uma fórmula.	*Ayer se me ocurrió una fórmula.*
Você perdeu as chaves?	*¿A usted se le perdieron las llaves?*

[2] The use of a singular verb with a plural noun is not unusual *(vende-se carros);* in this construction, *se* is an impersonal marker and conveys the meaning of "one" / "you" / "they" / "people" (as in *come-se bem aqui*); *carros* is the object of the verb (not the subject, unlike in *vendem-se carros*).

[3] See pp. 148–150 for details on the passive voice.

8) Reflexive verbs

a) Any transitive verb can theoretically become reflexive by changing the nonreflexive object to a reflexive one; compare:

transitive:	*Ela me levanta.*	(She lifts me [up].)
reflexive:	*Ela se levanta.*	(She lifts herself / gets up.)

b) Certain verbs, however, differ in meaning when used transitively and reflexively.

TRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH (to):	REFLEXIVE VERB	ENGLISH (to):
comportar	put up with / permit	*comportar-se*	behave
despedir	dismiss / fire	*despedir-se (de)*	say good-bye to
fazer	do / make	*fazer-se*	become
lembrar	remind	*lembrar-se (de)*	remember
tornar	return // change / transform	*tornar-se*	become // turn / change into

c) A preposition usually follows those reflexive verbs that might not convey true reflexive meaning (see pp. 129–131 for a more complete list of these verbs).

REFLEXIVE VERB		ENGLISH (to):
apaixonar-se por		fall in love / become infatuated with
apiedar-se de		(take) pity (on) / feel sorry for
arrepender-se de		repent / regret
atrever-se a		dare to
dar-se conta de		realize / become aware of
decidir-se a		decide / resolve to
indignar-se de		be indignant about / over
parecer-se com	(Spanish ...*a*)	look like / resemble
preocupar-se com	(Spanish ...*por*)	be preoccupied / worried / concerned about
queixar-se de		complain about
tratar-se de		treat / be about / deal with / concern

d) The reflexive pronoun of a few verbs is often omitted in colloquial Portuguese.

VERB	ENGLISH (to):
casar(-se) com	marry / get married to
esquecer(-se) de	forget
lembrar(-se) de	remember
rir(-se) de	laugh at

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

1) These are the possessive adjectives and pronouns that Portuguese uses with the following subject-pronoun possessors.[1, 2]

POSSESSOR	MASCULINE POSSESSIVE	FEMININE POSSESSIVE	ENGLISH
eu	***meu(s)***	***minha(s)***	my / mine
nós	***nosso(s)***	***nossa(s)***	our(s)
tu	***teu(s)***	***tua(s)***	your(s)
vós	***vosso(s)***	***vossa(s)***	your(s)
você	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	your(s)
vocês	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	your(s)
o senhor	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	your(s)
os senhores	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	your(s)
a senhora	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	your(s)
as senhoras	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	your(s)
ele	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	his
eles	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	their(s)
ela	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	her(s)
elas	***seu(s)***	***sua(s)***	their(s)

2) When a spouse, child, sibling, or close friend is spoken to as *você,* colloquial BP (not formal BP) often uses *teu(s) / tua(s)* instead of *seu(s) / sua(s).*

Você sabe onde está teu carro? *(= seu)*

3) *vosso(s)/a(s)* is no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon and in such formal titles as *Vossa Excelência* and *Vossa Senhoria.*

---

[1] See p. 86 for details on when to use each "possessor" (= subject pronoun)—and, by extension, the corresponding possessive.

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates, the Portuguese possessives *meu(s) / teu(s) / seu(s)* have a feminine form: *minha(s) / tua(s) / sua(s).*

4) Possessive adjectives

a) agree in gender and number with what is possessed (= with the nouns that they modify), not with the possessors;

b) are often preceded by an (optional) definite article:[1]

(o) seu carro
(as) suas tias

c) mean "my" / "our" / "your" / "his" / "her" / "their" when they precede what is possessed:

Meu carro é bom.	(my)
Nosso carro é ruim.	(our)
Seu carro é mau.	(your / his / her / their)

d) mean "mine" / "ours" / "yours" / "his" / "hers" / "theirs" when they follow what is possessed:

Este carro é meu.	(mine)
Este carro é nosso.	(ours)
O carro é seu.	(yours / his / hers / theirs)

e) have only one form (unlike in English and Spanish), regardless of whether they precede or follow what is possessed; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
Meu carro é bom.	*Mi carro es bueno.*	*My car is good.*
Este carro é meu.	*Este carro es mío.*	*This car is mine.*

5) Possessive pronouns

a) are possessive adjectives that function as pronouns;

b) are preceded by an obligatory definite article, which represents the replaced noun; this replacement process is called "nominalization":

Este é o meu (carro).	(mine)
Estas são as nossas (casas).	(ours)

---

[1] A definite article is used more frequently in EP than in BP.

6) In an effort to reduce the semantic ambiguity of the possessive *seu(s) / sua(s),* colloquial Portuguese tends to limit its meaning to "your(s)," unless there is a clear reference to a 3rd-person antecedent.[1]

7) Possessive prepositional phrases

a) express "his" / "her(s)" / "their(s)," as well as the formal "your(s)," and therefore eliminate the potential ambiguity of *seu(s) / sua(s):*

POSSESSOR	POSSESSIVE	ENGLISH
o senhor	***do senhor***	your(s)
os senhores	***dos senhores***	your(s)
a senhora	***da senhora***	your(s)
as senhoras	***das senhoras***	your(s)
ele	***dele***	his
eles	***deles***	their(s)
ela	***dela***	her(s)
elas	***delas***	their(s)

b) agree in gender and number with the possessor (indeed, they are the possessor, preceded by the preposition *de*); they do not agree with what is possessed (unlike possessive adjectives and pronouns);

c) always follow what is possessed:

as aulas do senhor

8) *da gente* is the possessive prepositional phrase of *a gente* (= colloquial synonym of *nós).*[2]

os livros da gente *(= nossos livros)*

9) A possessive is often omitted before a part of the possessor's own body (unlike in English and Spanish) but is used when the "body part" does not belong to the possessor; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH	ENGLISH
Pedro lava o cabelo.	*Pedro <u>se</u> lava el pelo.*	*Peter washes <u>his</u> (own) hair.*
Pedro lava o <u>meu</u> cabelo.	*Pedro <u>me</u> lava el pelo.*	*Peter washes <u>my</u> hair.*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: For this reason, Port. *seu(s) / sua(s)* is less ambiguous than Sp. *su(s).*
[2] In formal Portuguese, *nosso(s) / nossa(s)* should be used instead of *da gente.*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

1) The following are the Portuguese demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, as well as the possessives and adverbs to which they correspond.[1, 2]

MASC. DEMONSTR. ADJECTIVE	FEM. DEMONSTR. ADJECTIVE	NEUTER DEMONSTR. PRONOUN	ENGLISH	POSSESSIVE	ADVERB(S)
este(s)	***esta(s)***	***isto***	this / these	*meu(s) / minha(s)* *nosso(s) / nossa(s)*	*aqui / cá* (here)
esse(s)	***essa(s)***	***isso***	that / those	*teu(s) / tua(s)* *vosso(s) / vossa(s)* *seu(s) / sua(s)* *do(s) senhor(es)* *da(s) senhora(s)*	*aí* (there)
aquele(s)	***aquela(s)***	***aquilo***	that / those	*dele(s)* *dela(s)*	*ali / (aco)lá* ([over] there)

---

[1] In colloquial BP, *esse(s) / essa(s) / isso* are increasingly used instead of *este(s) / esta(s) / isto* and are understood to mean not only "that / those" but "this / these."

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates, Portuguese masculine plural demonstratives end in -*es;* compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
este<u>s</u>	*esto<u>s</u>*
esse<u>s</u>	*eso<u>s</u>*
aquele<u>s</u>	*aquello<u>s</u>*

2) *este(s) / esta(s) / isto* refer to what is near the speaker ("here," from the speaker's standpoint):

Esta camisa aqui é minha.
Estes livros aqui são nossos.

3) *esse(s) / essa(s) / isso* refer to what is near the listener ("there," from the speaker's standpoint):

Esse livro aí é seu.
Essas camisas aí são suas.

4) *aquele(s) / aquela(s) / aquilo* refer to what is not near the speaker or listener ("over there," from the speaker's or listener's standpoint):

Aquele carro ali é delas.
Aquelas calças lá são dele.

5) *este(s) / esta(s) / isto* also mean "the latter";
aquele(s) / aquela(s) / aquilo also mean "the former":

Maria e Ana são irmãs: esta (= Ana) é alta; aquela (= Maria) é baixa.

6) Demonstrative adjectives

a) agree in gender and number with the nouns that they modify;

b) precede the noun:

este carro aqui
essas camisas aí
aquelas salas ali

7) Demonstrative pronouns

There are two kinds:

a) demonstrative adjectives that function as pronouns:[1]

i) they stand alone (i.e., separated from the [pro]noun to which they refer);
ii) they agree in gender and number with the (pro)noun to which they refer:

As minhas (calças) são <u>estas</u> aqui.	(these ones)
O seu (livro) é <u>esse</u> aí.	(that one)
<u>Aquela</u> ali é a gata deles.	(that one)

b) *isto / isso / aquilo:*

i) these neuter forms are invariable in gender and number;
ii) they refer to abstractions and mean in English the indefinite, vague "this" / "that" (stuff / business / idea);
iii) they are often preceded by the neuter indefinite pronoun *tudo* ("all") (see p. 123 for details);
iv) they are used in the response to a question containing another neuter demonstrative, even though the identity of the thing or person in the question may be known in the response:

O que é isso aí? Isto aqui é um livro.
O que é aquilo lá? Não sei o que é aquilo.
Não gosto disto!
Não quero pensar nisso!
Tudo aquilo é uma bobagem!

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates, Portuguese masculine and feminine demonstrative pronouns are not marked with an acute accent; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Nossa casa é <u>e</u>sta.	*Nuestra casa es <u>é</u>sta.*

CONTRACTIONS OF PREPOSITIONS WITH DEMONSTRATIVES

The following contractions of the prepositions *de / em / a* with demonstrative adjectives and pronouns are obligatory in Portuguese.[1]

de	+	*este(s)*	=	***deste(s)***
de	+	*esta(s)*	=	***desta(s)***
de	+	*isto*	=	***disto***
em	+	*este(s)*	=	***neste(s)***
em	+	*esta(s)*	=	***nesta(s)***
em	+	*isto*	=	***nisto***
de	+	*esse(s)*	=	***desse(s)***
de	+	*essa(s)*	=	***dessa(s)***
de	+	*isso*	=	***disso***
em	+	*esse(s)*	=	***nesse(s)***
em	+	*essa(s)*	=	***nessa(s)***
em	+	*isso*	=	***nisso***
de	+	*aquele(s)*	=	***daquele(s)***
de	+	*aquela(s)*	=	***daquela(s)***
de	+	*aquilo*	=	***daquilo***
em	+	*aquele(s)*	=	***naquele(s)***
em	+	*aquela(s)*	=	***naquela(s)***
em	+	*aquilo*	=	***naquilo***
a	+	*aquele(s)*	=	***àquele(s)***[2]
a	+	*aquela(s)*	=	***àquela(s)***[2]
a	+	*aquilo*	=	***àquilo***[2]

---

[1] The preposition *a* does not form contractions with *este(s) / esta(s) / isto // esse(s) / essa(s) / isso.*
[2] Note the grave accent over the *a* of *àquele(s) / àquela(s) / àquilo.*

RELATIVE WORDS

1) A relative word

   a) "relates" back to the antecedent;

   b) is found in a relative subordinate clause, which functions within the sentence as

      i) a noun *(Quem trabalha somos nós.)*
      ii) an adjective *(Leia o livro que comprei ontem.)*

   c) is either a pronoun, an adjective, or an adverb:

Leia o livro que comprei ontem.	(= pronoun)
Ela é a professora cuja aula é tão interessante!	(= adjective)
Conheço um restaurante onde se come bem.	(= adverb)

2) Relative pronouns

   a) may be either subjects or objects in a relative subordinate clause:

Quem trabalha somos nós.	(= subject)
Leia o livro que comprei ontem.	(= direct object)
É ele a quem você mandou o livro.	(= prepositional object)
São as pessoas sobre as quais falei.	(= prepositional object)

   b) are never omitted in Portuguese (in colloquial English, a relative pronoun is often omitted if it is an object in a relative adjective clause; see example below).

3) When a relative pronoun is a prepositional object, it must follow the preposition, never the verb (unlike in colloquial English); compare:

PORTUGUESE	FORMAL ENGLISH	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH
a pessoa com quem estudo	*the person with whom I study*	*the person I study with*

4) When a relative pronoun is variable in gender and/or number, it agrees with its stated or implied antecedent.

   São as pessoas sobre as quais falei.

5) The Portuguese relative pronouns follow.

RELATIVE PRONOUN	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
quem[1]			refers to person; invariable in gender / number (unlike Sp. *quien[es]*):
			(1) subject / object in noun clause (and countless proverbs):[2]
	(s)he / those who	*Quem cala, consente.*	*= o(s) / a(s) que*
	(s)he whom	*Quem vimos é pobre.*	*= o / a que*
	those whom	*Quem vimos são pobres.*	*= os / as que*
			(2) object of short, one-word preposition:[3]
	whom	*É ela a quem mandei o livro.*	
	whom	*São as pessoas de quem falei.*	

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: *quem* is both singular and plural; Portuguese has no equivalent of Spanish *quienes.*

[2] *quem* is not used as the subject or direct object of an adjective clause (unlike Eng. "who(m)" / Sp. *quien*).

(a) In a restrictive clause, Portuguese uses *que* for English "who(m)";

(b) in a nonrestrictive clause, Portuguese frequently uses *o / a qual // os / as quais*—as well as *que*—for English "who(m)" in order to disambiguate two possible antecedents; compare:

	CLAUSE	PORT.	ENG.	SP.
(a)	restrictive	*o amigo que vai*	who	*que*
		o amigo que vi	whom	*que*
(b)	nonrestrictive	*o pai dela, que / o qual é alto*	who	*que / el cual / quien*
		o pai de Ana, que / a qual vi ontem	whom	*que / a la cual / a quien*

[3] After a long or compound preposition, *o / a qual // os / as quais* replaces *quem* (see p. 111 for details):

São as pessoas sobre as quais falei. (whom)
É Jorge, atrás do qual está Ana. (whom)

RELATIVE PRONOUN	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
que			refers to person / thing; invariable in gender / number:
			(1) subject / object in adjective clause:[1]
	that	*A casa que é nova é dele.*	
	that	*Leia o livro que comprei ontem.*	
	which	*Esta casa, que é nova, é dele.*	
	which	*Leia esse livro, que comprei ontem.*	
	who	*Conhece as meninas que dançam?*	
	whom	*Ele é o menino que vi ontem.*	
			(2) object of short, one-word preposition:[2]
	which	*São as aulas de que falei.*	
	which	*Esta é a caneta com que escrevo.*	

---

[1] In a nonrestrictive adjective clause, Portuguese frequently uses *o / a qual // os / as quais*—as well as *que*—for English "who(m)" / "which" in order to disambiguate two possible antecedents; compare:

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH	SPANISH
o livro, que / o qual custa muito	which	*que / el cual*
os pais dela, que / os quais são altos	who	*que / los cuales / quienes*
o pai de Ana, que / a qual vi ontem	whom	*que / a la cual / a quien*

[2] After a long or compound preposition, *o / a qual // os / as quais* replaces *que* (see p. 111 for details):

São as aulas sobre as quais falei.	(which)
É a mesa, atrás da qual está Ana.	(which)

RELATIVE PRONOUN	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
o que			refers to person / thing; *"o"* is variable in gender / number; subject / object in noun clause:
	(s)he who	*O / A que cala, consente.*	*= quem*
	those who	*Os / As que calam, consentem.*	*= quem*
	(s)he whom	*O / A que vimos é pobre.*	*= quem*
	those whom	*Os / As que vimos são pobres.*	*= quem*
		Que carro quer?	
	the one that	*Quero o que vimos ontem.*	
		Que camisas quer?	
	the ones that	*Quero as que vimos ontem.*	
o que[1]	what (= that which / the thing that)		refers to abstraction, not to concrete antecedent; invariable in gender / number; subject / object in noun clause:
		O que importa é a verdade.	
		Não sei o que quer dizer.	
		Gosto do que gosto!	

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese has no neuter definite article corresponding to Spanish *lo*. To express the neuter, Portuguese uses the masculine article *o;* compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
O que importa é a verdade.	*Lo que importa es la verdad.*
Não sei o que quer dizer.	*No sé lo que quiere decir.*

RELATIVE PRONOUN	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
o qual			refers to person / thing; variable in gender / number *(o / a qual > os / as quais):*
			(1) subject / object in nonrestrictive adjective clause in order to avoid ambiguity (seen on pp. 108n2, 109n1):
	who	*Conheci a mãe do meu colega, o qual estuda muito.*	(i.e., the one who studies is my colleague, not his mother)
	whom	*Chegam os pais de Maria e Ana, os quais conheci ontem.*	(i.e., the ones whom I met are the parents, not the daughters)
	which	*Gosto das mensagens dos livros, as quais são universais.*	(i.e., the messages are universal, not necessarily the books)
			(2) object of long / compound preposition (seen on pp. 108n3, 109n2):
	whom	*São as pessoas sobre as quais falei.*	
	which	*É a mesa, atrás da qual está Alberto.*	
quanto			refers to person / thing; variable in gender / number; agrees with (optional) *todo* (see p. 123 for details); subject / object in noun clause:
	all who	*(Todos) quantos estudam aprendem.*	
	all whom	*(Todas) quantas vemos são pobres.*	
	all that	*Gostou de (todos) quantos viu?*	
quanto[1]			refers to abstraction, not to concrete antecedent; invariable in gender / number, as is (optional) *tudo* (see p. 123 for details); subject / object in noun clause:
	all that	*Gostou de (tudo) quanto viu?*	
	however much	*Estudarei (tudo) quanto puder!*	

---

[1] *quanto mais...mais* = "the more...the more" *(quanto mais bebe, mais quer)*
quanto menos...menos = "the less...the less" *(quanto menos come, menos quer)*

6) ***cujo*** is the only Portuguese relative adjective.[1]

ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
whose[2]		*= de quem // do / da qual;* refers to person / thing; variable in gender / number; agrees with person / thing possessed (= with noun modified), not with possessor; precedes person / thing possessed:
	Aquele é o homem cujo carro eu comprei.[1]	
	Estudo numa academia cujas professoras são excelentes![1]	

7) ***onde*** is the only Portuguese relative adverb.

ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
where	*É uma cidade onde se vive bem.*	*= em que*
from where / whence	*O país de onde somos é pobre.*	EP: *donde*[3]
		colloquial Portuguese often omits:
to where	*O país (para) onde vamos é rico.*	*para* of *para onde*
	O país (a)onde vamos é rico.	*a* of *aonde*

---

[1] Colloquial Portuguese often uses *de quem // do / da qual* instead of *cujo:*
Aquele é o homem de quem eu comprei o carro.
Estudo numa academia da qual as professoras são excelentes!

[2] *cujo* is not used to express the following interrogatives:
"whose?" *(= de quem?)*
"who's?" *(= quem é?)*

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Port. and Sp. *donde* derives from Latin *de unde* ("from where"). Since the etymological meaning of Sp. *donde* is really "from where" (not "where"), Sp. *de donde* is technically redundant.

INTERROGATIVE WORDS

1) An interrogative word[1]

a) asks a question:

O que você viu no museu?

b) may introduce a subordinate clause, which in effect asks a question:

Queremos saber o que você viu no museu.

c) is either a pronoun, an adjective, or an adverb:

Quem é ele?	(= pronoun)
De que cor é seu carro?	(= adjective)
Onde é o museu?	(= adverb)

2) Interrogative pronouns may be either subjects or objects.

Quem trabalha?	(= subject)
O que você viu no museu?	(= direct object)
A quem você mandou o livro?	(= prepositional object)
Com quem você estava dançando?	(= prepositional object)

3) When an interrogative pronoun is a prepositional object, it must follow the preposition, never the verb (unlike in colloquial English); compare:

PORTUGUESE	FORMAL ENGLISH	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH
Com quem você estuda?	*With whom do you study?*	*Who do you study with?*

4) The Portuguese interrogative pronouns follow; certain pronouns are also interrogative adjectives, which precede the nouns that they modify. Each interrogative pronoun corresponds to a relative pronoun.

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates, Portuguese interrogatives are
(a) not marked with an acute accent;
(b) not preceded by an inverted question mark; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
De quem é esse relógio?	*¿De quién es ese reloj?*

INTERROG. PRONOUN	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
quem[1]			refers to person; invariable in gender / number (unlike Sp. *quién[es]*):
	who	*Quem é ele?*	subject
	whom	*Quem você viu ontem?*	object
	whom	*Quero saber para quem é.*	object of preposition
	whose / of whom	*De quem é esse relógio?*	object of preposition
(o) que[2, 3]			refers to person / thing; invariable in gender / number; begins sentence / clause:
			(1) as pronoun, precedes verb:
	what	*O que é um anagrama?*	asks for definition
	what	*Quero saber o que é isso.*	asks for identification
	what	*O que é Paulo? Dentista?*	asks for profession
	what	*O que você viu no museu?*	*= que coisa*
	what... (made) of	*De que é essa cadeira?*	as object of preposition, not preceded by *"o"*
			(2) as adjective, precedes noun; not preceded by *"o":*
	what / which	*Que rapaz deixou o livro?*	
	what kind of	*Que carro vocês preferem?*	*= que tipo / espécie de*
(o) quê[2]	what		circumflex over *e* of *quê;* refers to thing; invariable in gender / number:
		O quê? O que disse?	stands alone
		Disse o quê?	ends sentence
	(made) of what	*De quê? De madeira?*	ends sentence

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: *quem* is both singular and plural; Portuguese has no equivalent of Spanish *quiénes.*

[2] EP: The *"o"* of *(o) que* is used less frequently than in BP:

Quê? Que disse?

[3] *que* is also an exclamation; when used as

(a) an adjective (+ noun), it means "what (a[n])":

Que aulas interessantes!

(b) an adverb (+ adjective), it means "how" and is a synonym of *quão* / *como:*

Que difícil é o exame! (= quão difícil / como é difícil)

INTERROG. PRONOUN	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
qual	which		refers to person / thing; invariable in gender; variable in number *(qual > quais);* asks for choice / selection:
		Qual de vocês vai ao Brasil?	subject
		Quais (das) aulas você prefere?	object
		Não sei de qual você gosta.	object of preposition
quanto			refers to person / thing; variable in gender / number (unlike adverb form; see below):
	how much	*Não sei quanto (trabalho) ele tem.*	
	how many	*Quantas (alunas) chegaram?*	

5) The following are the Portuguese interrogative adverbs.

INTERROG. ADVERB	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
quanto[1]	how much	*Quanto custa a passagem?*	invariable in gender / number (unlike pronoun form; see above)
como[1]	what...like	*Como é Marta? Alta?*	(+ *ser*)
	how	*Como está Pedro? Bem?*	(+ *estar*)
quando	when	*Quando você vai embora?*	
onde	where	*Queremos saber onde é o museu.*	
	from where	*De onde você é?*	EP: *donde*
			colloquial Portuguese often omits:
	to where	*(Para) onde Ana foi?*	*para* of *para onde*
		(A)onde Ana foi?	*a* of *aonde*

---

[1] *quanto* / *como* are also exclamations:

Quanto ela estuda!		(how much)
Como é difícil o exame!	*(= que / quão difícil é)*	(how)

INTERROG. ADVERB	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
por que[1]	why		EP: *porque* (one word):
		Por que não quer jogar?	begins sentence
		Sei por que não quer jogar.	begins clause
por quê[1]	why		EP: *porquê* (one word); circumflex over *e* of *quê:*
		Não quer jogar? Por quê?	stands alone
		Sei por quê!	ends sentence

---

[1] The following are other ways in which *por* is used to express reason / cause / motive.

	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH	DETAILS
(a)	*porque*	because	(one word) subordinating conjunction; precedes clause
(b)	*por*	because / on account of	preposition; precedes infinitive
(c)	*por (causa de)*	because / on account of	(compound) preposition; precedes (pro)noun
(d)	*o porquê*	the reason for / why	noun

(a)	*Não vamos porque está nevando muito.*	(because)
(b)	*Por nevar muito, não vamos.*	(because / on account of)
(c)	*Não vamos por causa da neve.*	(because / on account of)
	Não vamos pela neve.	(because / on account of)
	Não vamos por você.	(because / on account of)
(d)	*A polícia investiga o porquê do crime.*	(reason for)

AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE WORDS

1) The most common negative word in Portuguese is ***não;***
it follows the subject and precedes the verb.

Pedro não quer ler.

2) When any other negative word follows the verb, *não* must precede the verb to make the sentence negative.

Pedro não quer ler nenhum romance nunca.[1]

3) When any other negative word precedes the verb, *não* is not used.

Pedro nunca quer ler nenhum romance.

4) There are two ways to translate a Portuguese negative word into English, as seen in the following translations of the sentence

Pedro não quer ler nenhum romance nunca.

a) negative word:

Pedro never wants to read any novel.

b) "not" + affirmative word:

Pedro doesn't ever want to read any novel.

---

[1] In Portuguese, a multiple negative is perfectly correct (unlike in English), which explains why native speakers of Portuguese and other Romance languages (and even of English) often use one in English. Although a multiple negative is incorrect in English, it clearly does not make the sentence affirmative.

5) The following are the Portuguese affirmative and corresponding negative words.

AFF. / NEG. WORD	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
sim[1]	yes	*Sim, vejo alguém.*	adverb
não[1]	no / not	*Não, não vejo ninguém.*	adverb
ou	or		conjunction
nem	nor / not...or		conjunction
ou...ou	either...or	*Quer (ou) carne ou peixe?*	1st *ou* is optional
nem...nem	neither...nor / not...either...or	*Não quero (nem) carne nem peixe.*	1st *nem* is optional after *não*
com	with	*Vai com João?*	preposition
sem	without	*Vou sem João.*	preposition
alguém[2]	anyone / someone	*Vê alguém?*	invariable pronoun; = *alguma pessoa*
ninguém	no one / not...anyone	*Ninguém vejo.* *Não vejo ninguém.*	invariable pronoun; = *nenhuma pessoa*
algo[3, 4]	anything / something	*Tem algo?*	invariable pronoun; = *alguma coisa*[4]
nada[5]	nothing / not...anything	*Nada tenho.* *Não tenho nada.*	invariable pronoun; = *nenhuma coisa*
algo	somewhat	*É algo bonito!*	adverb
nada	not (at all) / in no way	*Não é nada feio!*	adverb
algum(a)[6]	a(n) / any / some	*Tem alguma (coisa)?*	variable adjective / pronoun; more indefinite than *um(a)*
nenhum(a)	no(ne) / not...any	*Nenhuma (coisa) tenho.* *Não tenho nenhuma (coisa).*	variable adjective / pronoun

---

[1] To express "to say yes / no" in Portuguese, include *que:*

Eu digo <u>que</u> sim, mas Jaime diz <u>que</u> não.

[2] *qualquer pessoa* = "anyone (at all / what[so]ever)"
todo mundo = "everyone"

[3] *qualquer coisa* = "anything (at all / what[so]ever)"
tudo = "everything"

[4] *algo* is used less frequently than *alguma coisa* in colloquial Portuguese.

[5] *o nada* is a noun:

Miguel subiu do nada.

[6] *algum(a)* preceded by a noun is <u>negative</u> and means "no(t)...at all / what(so)ever":

Não tenho dinheiro algum e não vou de maneira alguma.

AFF. / NEG. WORD	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
			adverbs:
em algum lugar / ***em alguma parte***[1]	somewhere / in some place	*Joga em algum lugar?* *Joga em alguma parte?*	= *algures*
em nenhum lugar / ***em nenhuma parte***	nowhere / in no place	*Em nenhum lugar jogo.* *Não jogo em nenhuma parte.*	= *nenhures*
de algum modo // ***de alguma forma / maneira***[2]	somehow // by any / some means // (in) any / some way / manner	*De algum modo é certo?* *É certo de alguma forma / maneira?*	= *de algum jeito*
de nenhum modo // ***de nenhuma forma / maneira***	nohow // by no means // (in) no way / manner	*De nenhum modo é certo.* *Não é certo de nenhuma forma / maneira.*	= *de nenhum jeito*
alguma vez[3]	ever // at any / some time	*Jogou alguma vez?*	
nenhuma vez	never / not...ever / at no time	*Nenhuma vez joguei.* *Não joguei nenhuma vez.*	= *nunca / jamais*
sempre	always	*Sempre jogam?*	
nem sempre	not always	*Nem sempre jogamos.*	
já[4]	already / yet	*Já jantou?*	
ainda não[4]	still not / not...yet	*Ainda não jantei.*	
ainda[4]	still / yet	*Ainda mora no Brasil?*	
já não[4]	no longer / not...any longer / not...anymore	*Já não moro no Brasil.*	= *não...mais*
também	also	*Vai também?*	
também não / ***tampouco***[5]	neither / not...either	*Também não vou.* *Tampouco vou.* *Não vou tampouco.*	EP: *tão-pouco*

---

[1] *em todo lugar / em toda (a) parte* = "everywhere"
em outro lugar / em outra parte = "elsewhere" *(= alhures)*
em qualquer lugar / parte = "anywhere"
[2] *de outro modo // de outra forma / maneira* = "otherwise" *(= de outro jeito)*
de todos modos // de todas formas / maneiras = "anyhow" *(= de todos jeitos)*
de qualquer forma / maneira / modo = "anyhow" *(= de qualquer jeito)*
[3] *algumas vezes* = "sometimes"
[4] *ainda não* is the negative of *já,* and *já não* is the negative of *ainda (que confusão!).*
[5] *tampouco* is used less frequently than *também não* in colloquial Portuguese.

6) In addition to affirmative and negative words, Portuguese uses the following indefinite words.

INDEF. WORD	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
muito[1a]	much / a lot of	*Paulo tem muito (tempo)?*	adjective / pronoun
	many / a lot of	*Têm muitas (aulas)?*	adjective / pronoun
	a lot	*Isabel canta muito?*	adverb
	very	*Pedro é muito gordo?*	adverb
pouco[1a]	(a) little	*Paulo tem pouco (tempo).*	adjective / pronoun
	(a) few	*Temos poucas (aulas).*	adjective / pronoun
	(a) little	*Isabel canta (um) pouco.*	adverb
	not very	*Pedro é pouco gordo.*	adverb
	a little / somewhat	*Marta é um pouco fraca.*	adverb (+ indef. article)
mais[1b]	more	*Filipe tem mais (energia).*	adjective / pronoun
	more	*Dorme mais do que precisa?*	adverb
menos[1b]	less / fewer	*Antônio tem menos (energia).*	adjective / pronoun
	less	*Durmo menos do que quero.*	adverb
demasiado[2]	too much / many	*Tem demasiada (roupa)?*	adjective / pronoun
	too (much)	*Trabalham demasiado?*	adverb
demais[2, 3]	too much / many	*Tem (roupa) demais?*	adjective / pronoun
	too (much)	*Trabalham demais?*	adverb
de menos	too little	*Tem (roupa) de menos.*	adjective / pronoun phrase
	too little / not...enough	*Trabalham de menos.*	adverb phrase
quanto[1a, 4]	how much / many	*Quanta (energia) Filipe tem!*	adjective / pronoun
	how much	*Quanto Miguel fala!*	adverb
tanto[1a, 4]	so much / many	*Filipe tem tanta (energia)!*	adjective / pronoun
	so much	*Miguel fala tanto!*	adverb
bastante[1c]	enough	*Filipe tem bastante (energia).*	adjective / pronoun
	enough	*Miguel fala bastante.*	adverb
	quite / sufficiently	*Filipe é bastante enérgico.*	adverb (= *assaz*)

---

[1] When used as adjectives / pronouns,
(a) *muito / pouco / quanto / tanto* are variable in gender / number;
(b) *mais / menos* are invariable in gender / number;
(c) *bastante* is invariable in gender but variable in number.
When used as adjectives, these words normally precede the nouns that they modify.
[2] *demasiado* is used less frequently than *demais* in colloquial Portuguese.
[3] EP: Written *de mais* (two words).
[4] *quanto / tanto* are often used as exclamations, as are their related and respective adverbs *quão / tão* ("how" / "so"); *quão* is used less frequently than its synonyms *que / como* in colloquial Portuguese; *quão / tão* modify adjectives or adverbs (unlike *quanto / tanto* when used as adverbs):

Quão difícil é o exame!	*(= que difícil é / como é difícil)*	(how)
O exame é tão difícil!		(so)

INDEF. WORD	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
ambos[1]	both	*Vejo ambas (as estátuas).*	adjective / pronoun; as adjective, precedes def. article + noun
cada[2, 3]	each / every	*Você lê cada livro?* *Sim, leio cada um.*	adjective; precedes (pro)noun; = *todo*[4]
certo[5]			adjective:
	(a) certain	*Dei (uma) certa resposta.*	(1) precedes noun; (optional) indef. article makes *certo* less indefinite
	right / correct	*Dei uma resposta certa?*	(2) follows noun
diverso[5] / ***vário***[5]	diverse / various / varied / several / different	*Tem diversas (pinturas).* *Tem vários (manuscritos).*	adjective / pronoun; used mainly in plural; usually precedes noun
outro[5, 6, 7]			adjective / pronoun; precedes noun; follows:
	an- / some other the other	*Vejo (uma) outra (pessoa).* *Vejo a outra (pessoa).*	(1) (optional) indef. article (2) obligatory def. article
outrem	someone else / other people	*Deve-se respeitar o que é de outrem.*	pronoun

---

[1] *ambos* is variable in gender but is used only in the plural.
[2] *cada* is invariable in gender and is used only in the singular.
[3] *cada vez mais / menos* = "more and more" / "less and less" *(come cada vez mais / menos pão)*
[4] Portuguese tends to prefer *todo(s) / toda(s)* to express Eng. "every" (see p. 123 for details).
[5] *certo / diverso / vário / outro* are variable in gender / number.
[6] The following contractions of *de / em* + *outro* are optional:

de	+	*outro(s)/a(s)*	=	*doutro(s)/a(s)*	(used more in EP than in BP)
em	+	*outro(s)/a(s)*	=	*noutro(s)/a(s)*	

[7] The following contractions of demonstratives + *outro* are considered somewhat archaic (they can in turn contract with the prepositions *de / em / a;* see 2nd chart on p. 277 for examples):

este(s)/a(s)	+	*outro(s)/a(s)*	=	*estoutro(s)/a(s)*
esse(s)/a(s)	+	*outro(s)/a(s)*	=	*essoutro(s)/a(s)*
aquele(s)/a(s)	+	*outro(s)/a(s)*	=	*aqueloutro(s)/a(s)*

INDEF. WORD	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
qualquer[1, 2, 4]	any...at all / what(so)ever		plural: *quaisquer;* adjective / pronoun; more indefinite than *algum:*
		Come quaisquer (umas).	as pronoun, precedes (optional) indef. article
			as adjective, follows indef. article and is even more indefinite; used in following two synonymous constructions:
		Come uma coisa qualquer.	(1) follows noun; obligatory indef. article
		Come (uma) qualquer coisa.	(2) precedes noun; (optional) indef. article
quem quer[3, 4]	who(m)ever	*Chorará quem quer que leia a notícia.*	pronoun; precedes *que* + clause
tal[1, 5]	such (a)	*Tais (terras) são pobres.*	plural: *tais;* adjective / pronoun; precedes noun
todo / tudo[6]			
único[7]			adjective / pronoun:
	only (= sole)	*Ele é o único (filho).*	(1) precedes noun; def. article usually used; = *só*
	only (existing one)	*Ele é filho único.*	(2) follows noun; indef. article often omitted
	unique	*Ele é um filho único.*	(3) follows obligatory indef. article + noun

---

[1] Invariable in gender but variable in number are *qualquer / tal (> quaisquer / tais).*
[2] *qualquer pessoa* = "anyone (at all / what[so]ever)"
qualquer coisa = "anything (at all / what[so]ever)"
[3] *quem quer* (two words) is invariable in gender / number.
[4] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates*, qualquer / quem quer* never end in *-a*.
[5] *tal como* means "such as" and follows its antecedent *(as teorias de Einstein, tais como...).*
[6] See p. 123 for ***todo / tudo***.
[7] *único* is variable in gender / number.

INDEF. WORD	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
todo[1, 3]			adjective / pronoun:
	all / each / every		= *cada*[4] (implies plurality); used in following two synonymous constructions:
		Todas as aulas são boas.	(1) *todos*/*as* + plur. def. article + noun
		Toda aula é boa.	(2) *todo*/*a* + sing. noun (no def. article)
	all / whole / entire		= *inteiro* (implies totality); used in following two synonymous constructions:
		Toda a aula é boa.	(1) *todo*/*a* + sing. def. article + noun
		A aula toda é boa.	(2) sing. def. article + noun + *todo*/*a*
	all	*Todos quantos emigraram eram pobres?*	often precedes *quanto*
tudo[2, 5]	everything	*Comeu tudo?*	refers to abstraction, not to concrete antecedent; neuter pronoun
			often precedes neuter pronouns:
	all / everything	*Gostou de tudo quanto viu?*	*quanto* (+ verb)
		Gostou de tudo o que viu?	*o que* (+ verb)
	all	*Tudo isto é tão difícil!*	*isto*
		Tudo isso é fácil!	*isso*
		Tudo aquilo é impossível!	*aquilo*

---

[1] *todo* is variable in gender / number.
[2] *tudo* is invariable in gender / number.
[3] *o mundo todo* = "the whole world"
todo mundo = "everyone"
[4] Portuguese tends to prefer *todo(s) / toda(s)* to express Eng. "every."
[5] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish has no neuter form corresponding to Portuguese *tudo*. To express the neuter, Spanish uses the masculine form *todo;* compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
<u>Tudo</u> isto é tão difícil!	*¡<u>Todo</u> esto es tan difícil!*

PREPOSITIONS

1) A preposition in Portuguese is either simple or compound, as seen in the following examples.

   a) simple (= one word):

      a / com / de / em / para / por / sem

   b) compound (= two or three words):

      atrás de (= adverb + simple preposition)
      em cima de (= adverb phrase + simple preposition)

2) A preposition combines with a (pro)noun to form a prepositional phrase, which functions either as an adjective or as an adverb.

   O anel de diamantes custa muito. (= adjective)
   O relógio dele não custa muito. (= adjective)
   A situação vai de mal a pior. (= adverbs)

3) A prepositional object

   a) may be either a (pro)noun, an infinitive, or a clause (preceded by *que*):

      Pedro se esqueceu de Marta. (= noun)
      Pedro se esqueceu de estudar. (= infinitive)
      Pedro se esqueceu de que vamos embora. (= clause)

   b) must follow the preposition, never the verb (unlike in colloquial English); compare:

PORTUGUESE	FORMAL ENGLISH	COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH
a pessoa com quem estudo	*the person with whom I study*	*the person I study with*
o livro sobre o qual falei	*the book about which I spoke*	*the book I spoke about*

4) The following is a list of simple prepositions, some of which might be problematic for an English (or Spanish) speaker.[1]

---

[1] See pp. 298–300 for charts of compound preposition; and pp. 56, 89, 106, 121n6, 278 (chart) for contractions of prepositions with articles, prepositional pronouns, demonstratives, and *outro.*

PREP.	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
a / para	to		place / destination:
		Quem vai a Cabo Verde?	*a* (= to visit; shorter duration)
		Quem vai para Angola?	*para* (= to stay; longer duration)
		Vocês vão para casa?	*para* (with *casa*) (= "home")
a / para	to	*Você deu o livro a ele?*	instead of indir. obj. pron. *(= lhe)*
a	at	*Vou às três da tarde.*	time (specific hour)
	on	*Foram a pé / a cavalo.*	non-mechanized transportation[1]
ao	(up)on (+ pres. part.)	*Jantamos ao chegar.*	(+ infinitive)
(per)ante	before / in the presence of	*Compareceu ante o juiz.* *Sente-se dor ante a morte.*	person / place / thing
após	after / since	*Após voltar, fiz pouco.* *Voltamos ano após ano.*	*(= depois de)*
até	until / to	*Vai ficar até abril.* *Viajei até Faro.*	time (see p. 126 under *desde*) place (see p. 126 under *desde*)
com	with	*Você vai com João?*	
conforme	according to / in conformity with	*Ela atua conforme a lei.*	*(= consoante / segundo)*
consoante	according to / in consonance with	*Ela atua consoante a lei.*	*(= conforme / segundo)*
contra	against	*Ele fala contra o governo?*	
de	made of	*O piano é de madeira.*	content / material
	of	*Ela comeu parte da maçã.*	part of whole
	from	*Jaime é do Brasil.*	origin
	belongs to	*O carro é de Ana.*	possession / ownership (= "Ana's")
	by	*Fomos de carro.*	mechanized transportation[1] *(= por)*
de			time of day (no specific hour):
	in	*Chegam de manhã.*	*(= pela)*
	in / at	*Estudam de tarde / noite.*	*(= pela / à)*
da			time of day (after specific hour):
	a.m.	*Chega às dez da manhã.*	
	p.m.	*Parte às cinco da tarde.*	

---

[1] Exceptions: *de burro / camelo / mula.*

PREP.	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
desde	since / from	*Está aqui desde março.*	time (see p. 125 under *até*)
		Viajei desde Braga.	place (see p. 125 under *até*)
desde...	since / from...	*Fica desde março até abril.*	time *(= de...a)*
até	until / to	*Viajei desde Braga até Faro.*	place *(= de...a)*
durante	during / for	*O que faz durante as férias?*	
em	on	*O José viaja na terça-feira.*	day of week
	on	*Chegamos no dia 8 de abril.*	day of month
	in	*O Pedro viajava no verão.*	season of year
	in	*Faleceu no ano de / em 1990.*	year
		O livro está:	temporary location (+ *estar*)
	in / on / at	*na sala / na mesa / em casa.*	
	in	*Porto Alegre é no Brasil.*	permanent location (+ *ser*)
entre	between	*Entre você e eu, ele deve ficar.*	
	among	*Entre todas, esta é a maior.*	
exce(p)to	except	*Todos vão exce(p)to vocês.*	*(= menos / salvo)*
mediante	by means of	*Melhorou mediante a terapia.*	*(= por meio de)*
menos	minus / except	*Todos vão menos vocês.*	*(= exce[p]to / salvo)*
para / a	to		place / destination:
		Minha irmã vai para Angola.	*para* (= to stay; longer duration)
		Meu irmão vai a Cabo Verde.	*a* (= to visit; shorter duration)
		Nós vamos para casa.	*para* (with *casa*) (= "home")
para / a	to	*Eu dei o livro para ele.*	instead of indir. obj. pron. *(= lhe)*
para	toward / -ward //	*Vou para o oeste.*	direction toward
	headed to / for	*Você vai para a praia?*	
para			purpose / intent:
	for	*A panela elétrica é para arroz.*	(+ [pro]noun)
	(in order) to	*Fomos para ver meu irmão.*	(+ infinitive)
	for what purpose?	*Para que estudamos Química?*	(+ *que* + clause)
para	for	*Os sapatos são para Marta.*	recipient
	for (...benefit)	*Preparei o jantar para você.*	beneficiary
	for	*Ana trabalha para Pedro.*	employer
	for	*Reservei a sala para o sábado.*	specific time
	by / no later than	*Preciso da sala para amanhã.*	time limit / deadline
	about / ready to	*Estamos para sair.*	readiness (+ *estar*)
	as for...	*Para mim, o exame foi fácil.*	personal opinion / reaction
	for	*Para um jovem, é muito sábio.*	dissimilarity to other(s) in group

PREP.	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES	DETAILS
por			reason / cause / motive:[1]
	because / on account of	*Vou por (causa de) você.*	(+ [pro]noun)
	because / on account of	*Por não nevar, vamos.*	(+ infinitive)
		Por ser jovem, não é muito sábio.	
	why? / for what reason?	*Por que estudamos Química?*	(+ *que* + clause)
	why? / for what reason?	*Por quê?*	(+ *quê*) [stands alone]
	why	*Sei por quê!*	(+ *quê*) [ends sentence]
por			person or thing:
	for (...sake)	*Ana trabalha por Pedro.*	
	on behalf of	*Ana trabalha por Pedro.*	
	in place / lieu of	*Ana trabalha por Pedro.*	
	in support / favor of	*Trabalha pela reforma fiscal.*	
por	for	*Ficamos no Brasil por dois anos.*	duration / extension of time
	for	*Pedro me deu pouco pelo carro.*	price / exchange
	by	*O poema foi escrito por Camões.*	agent of passive voice
	by (means of)	*O Jaime foi por (meio do) carro.*	means of transportation
por			course traveled:
	by way of	*O Antônio foi pela autoestrada.*	
	along	*Eles foram pelo rio.*	
	through	*Elas foram pela floresta.*	
por			non-specific time:
	in	*Estudo pela tarde / manhã.*	*(= à / de)*
	at	*Trabalho pela noite.*	*(= à / de)*
por	around	*Roberto está por aqui?*	non-specific place
	per	*dez por cento*	Latin *per*
salvo	save / except	*Todos vão salvo vocês.*	*(= exce[p]to / menos)*
segundo	according to	*Ele atua segundo a sua natureza.*	*(= conforme / consoante)*
sem	without	*Vou sem João.*	
sob	under[2]	*João fica sob o poder do pai.*	figurative
sobre	on (top of) / above	*O giz está sobre o papel.*	
	about / concerning	*Ana falou sobre a economia.*	

---

[1] See p. 116n1 for more information on how *por* is used to express reason / cause / motive.
[2] In modern Portuguese, *sob* is not usually used to express place.

5) Since *para* and *por* can both mean "for," English speakers may find it difficult to choose the correct preposition. The following contrastive sentences might help to resolve that difficulty.[1]

PARA	*POR*
Vamos para São Paulo. (destination)	*Vamos por São Paulo.* (course traveled ["through"])
Para um jovem, é muito sábio. (unlike most young people)	*Por ser jovem, não é muito sábio.* (because he is young)
Ana trabalha para Pedro. (he is her boss)	*Ana trabalha por Pedro.* (for his sake / on his behalf / in his place)
Quanto me dá para (comprar) o carro? (purpose)	*Quanto me dá pelo carro?* (in exchange for)
Para que estudamos Química? (purpose / intent)	*Por que estudamos Química?* (reason / motive)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese and Spanish use *para* and *por* in the same ways, with the following minor exceptions:
Portuguese often uses *para*
(a) instead of the indirect object pronoun (Spanish uses *a* with the indirect object pronoun);
(b) to express destination (= longer / permanent duration) (Spanish uses *a*); compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Dei o gravador <u>para</u> / a Ana.	*<u>Le</u> di la grabadora <u>a</u> Ana.*
Minha irmã vai <u>para</u> / a Angola.	*Mi hermana va <u>a</u> Angola.*

VERBS AND CORRESPONDING PREPOSITIONS

Numerous Portuguese verbs are followed by a specific preposition, as seen in the following list.[1]

PREP.	PORTUGUESE		ENGLISH (to):
a[2, 3]	*acostumar-se a*		be accustomed to
	aprender a		learn to
	atrever-se a		dare to
	ceder a		(con)cede / yield to
	chegar a / em		arrive at
	começar a	(+ infinitive)	commence // begin / start to...
	continuar a		continue to
	decidir-se a	*(= resolver-se a)*	decide / resolve to
	dedicar-se a		be dedicated / devoted to
	desatar-se a	(+ infinitive)	burst out // begin / start to...
	meter-se a		involve oneself in / set out to
	negar-se a	*(= recusar-se a)*	refuse to
	opor-se a		be opposed to
	resignar-se a		be resigned to
	resistir-se a		resist
	tornar / voltar a	(+ infinitive)	...again
com	*casar(-se) com*		marry / get married to
	concordar com[1a]		agree with
	contar com	*(= depender de)*	count / depend on
	contentar-se com / em		be content / satisfied with
	encontrar-se com		encounter / meet up with
	importar-se com		take notice of / care about
	ocupar-se com		look after / see to
	parecer-se com[1b]		look like / resemble
	passar-se com[1c]		happen to / with
	preocupar-se com[1d]		be preoccupied / worried / concerned about
	sonhar com		dream about

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: The Spanish equivalent of each of these Portuguese verbs is a true cognate and takes the same preposition, with the following exceptions or variants:
(a) also *estar de acuerdo con*
(b) *...a*
(c) *pasar* + indirect object
(d) *...por*
[2] *a* often introduces an infinitive *(já se decidiram a cozinhar mas se negam a costurar)*.
[3] Portuguese (like Spanish) uses the construction "verb + indirect object + *a* + infinitive," as seen in the verbs *aconselhar / ajudar / animar / compelir / convencer / convidar / ensinar / forçar / obrigar / persuadir...a...* (respectively, "to counsel / help / encourage / compel / convince / invite / teach / force / obligate / persuade...to...").

PREP.	PORTUGUESE		ENGLISH (to):
de	*acabar de*	(+ infinitive)	have just...
	afastar-se de[1a]		draw away from
	aperceber-se de	*(= perceber)*	perceive / notice / take into account
	apiedar-se de		(take) pity (on) / feel sorry for
	aproveitar-se de		profit / benefit from // take advantage of
	aproximar-se de[1b]		draw near to / approach
	arrepender-se de		repent / regret
	cansar-se de		tire of
	cessar de	(+ infinitive) *(= deixar / parar de)*	cease / stop...
	chatear-se de[1c]		be annoyed at
	convencer-se de	*(= persuadir-se de)*	be convinced / persuaded of
	dar-se conta de		realize / become aware of
	depender de	*(= contar com)*	depend on
	descer de[1d]		get off / out of [vehicle]
	desistir de		desist from / renounce
	despedir-se de		say good-bye to
	dissuadir de		dissuade from
	duvidar de		have doubts about
	encarregar-se de		take charge of
	esquecer(-se) de[1e]		forget
	fartar-se de		become sick of / sated // gorge oneself
	gostar de[1f]		like / love
	haver de	(+ infinitive)	have to / must...
	indignar-se de		be indignant about / over
	lembrar(-se) de[1g]		remember
	ocupar-se de		be occupied / busy with
	precisar de[2]	(+ [pro]noun)	need [something / someone]
	queixar-se de	*(= reclamar de)*	complain about
	rir(-se) de		laugh at
	sair de		depart / leave [place] / exit
	tratar-se de		treat / be about / deal with / concern
	vingar-se de		avenge // take / wreak vengeance on

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: The following are Spanish exceptions or variants:
(a) *alejarse de*
(b) *...a;* also *acercarse a*
(c) *fastidiar / molestar* + direct object
(d) *bajar de*
(e) *olvidar(se de)*
(f) *gustar* + indirect object
(g) *recordar / acordarse de*

[2] *precisar* + infinitive (without preposition) means "to need to [do something]" *(Preciso dormir!).*

PREP.	PORTUGUESE		ENGLISH (to):
em	*acreditar em*[1a]	*(= crer em)*	believe in
	concordar em		agree on / to
	confiar em		confide / trust / place one's faith in
	consentir em		consent to // agree on / to
	consistir em		consist of
	demorar em	*(= tardar em)*	take...[time] to / be long in / delay
	entrar em	(EP: *entrar a*)	enter
	hesitar em[1b]	*(= vacilar em)*	hesitate to / in
	insistir em	*(= teimar em)*	insist on
	participar em / de		participate in
	pensar em		think of / about
	persistir em		persist in
	subir em[1c]		get on / in [vehicle]
	tropeçar em[1d]		trip / stumble over
para	*apontar para*		point at / out // aim at
	contribuir para		contribute to
	ligar para[1e]	*(= telefonar [para])*[2]	telephone / call
	olhar (para)[1f, 2]		look at
	preparar-se para		prepare oneself / get ready to
	sorrir para[1g]		smile at
por	*apaixonar-se por*[1h]		fall in love / become infatuated with
	desculpar-se por		apologize for
	esforçar-se por / em		make an effort to
	esperar (por)[1i, 2]		wait for / await
	interessar-se por / em		be interested in
	lutar por		fight for
	passar por		pass by / pick up //
			pass as / for [appear to be]
	perguntar por		ask for / about // inquire about
	principiar por		begin by
	suspirar por		long for

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: The following are Spanish exceptions or variants:

(a) *creer en*
(b) *vacilar en*
(c) *...a*
(d) *...con*
(e) *telefonear / llamar (por teléfono)* + (in)direct object
(f) *mirar* + (in)direct object
(g) *sonreír* + indirect object
(h) also *enamorarse de*
(i) *esperar* + (in)direct object

[2] Also + direct object.

CONJUNCTIONS

1) A coordinating conjunction links two sentences or two grammatically equal words, phrases, or clauses within a sentence.

Ela se levanta cedo. E se deita cedo também.
Ele come e bebe muito.
Elas gostam de comer e de beber.
É preciso que você durma bem mas não (é preciso que durma) doze horas!

a) The following are the most common Portuguese coordinating conjunctions.

CONJUNCTION	ENGLISH	EXAMPLE
e	and	*Vamos cantar e dançar.*
mas[1]	but	*Vamos cantar mas não vamos dançar.*
ou	or	*O que vocês vão fazer? Cantar ou dançar?*
ou...ou	either...or	*Vamos (ou) cantar ou dançar.* (1st *ou* is optional)
nem	nor / not...or	*Não cantamos nem dançamos.*
nem...nem	neither...nor / not...either...or	*Não vamos (nem) cantar nem dançar.* (1st *nem* is optional after *não*)

b) The following synonymous coordinating conjunctions all mean "however" / "nevertheless" / "nonetheless" / "yet."

CONJUNCTION	EXAMPLE
contudo	*Vamos ao clube, contudo não vamos beber muito.*
não obstante	*Vamos ao clube, não obstante não vamos beber muito.*
porém	*Vamos ao clube, porém não vamos beber muito.*
todavia[2]	*Vamos ao clube, todavia não vamos beber muito.*

Notes to Spanish Speakers:

[1] *senão* (< *se* ["if"] + *não* ["not"]) is the Port. cognate of Sp. *sino,* but it is rarely used as such in colloquial Portuguese. To express *sino,* use *mas* (which is also used in formal and literary Spanish as a synonym of *pero*):

Não quero estudar mas jogar. (= Não quero estudar senão jogar.)

[2] Port. *todavia* corresponds to Sp. *sin embargo;* Sp. *todavía* corresponds to Port. *ainda (que confusão!).*

2) A subordinating conjunction links a subordinate clause with the main clause on which it depends for its existence.

a) ***que*** ("that") is the most common Portuguese subordinating conjunction; it is used alone (in noun clauses) or with words and phrases to form the following common compound subordinating conjunctions.[1]

CONJUNCTION		SPANISH	ENGLISH
porque		*porque*	because
a fim de que		*a fin de que*	in order for / so that
para que		*para que*	
de forma que		*de forma que*	so (that)
de jeito que			
de maneira que		*de manera que*	
de modo que		*de modo que*	
a menos que		*a menos que*	unless
a não ser que		*a no ser que*	
apesar de que		*a pesar de que*	despite / in spite of / even though
ainda que	*(= embora)*	*aunque*	although / even though / even if
mesmo que			
nem que		*ni que*	(not) even though / even if
contanto que		*con tal (de) que*	provided (that)
desde que			
sempre que		*siempre que*	
sem que		*sin que*	without
sempre que	*(= quando)*	*siempre que / cuando*	each / every time that // when(ever)
desde que			since (= because)
já que		*ya que*	
visto que		*visto que*	

---

[1] See pp. 197–209 for examples of subordinating conjunctions used in indicative and subjunctive subordinate clauses.

CONJUNCTION		SPANISH	ENGLISH
desde que		*desde que*	since (= time)
até que	*(= até quando)*	*hasta que / hasta cuando*	until
antes que		*antes (de) que*	before
depois que		*después (de) que*	after
assim que[1] ***logo que***[1]		*en cuanto*[1]	as soon as
no caso (de) que	*(= caso)*	*en caso (de) que*	in case

b) In addition to *que,* the following are other common simple subordinating conjunctions.

CONJUNCTION		SPANISH	ENGLISH
caso	*(= no caso [de] que)*	*en caso (de) que*	in case
como		*como*	since / as / the way that // however
embora[2]	*(= ainda que / mesmo que)*	*aunque*	although / even though / even if
enquanto[1]		*mientras*[1]	while / as long as
onde		*donde*	where(ever)
quando	*(= sempre que)*	*cuando / siempre que*	when(ever)
quanto		*cuanto*	all / everything that // however much
se		*si*	if / whether

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Port. *assim que / logo que* correspond to Sp. *en cuanto;* Port. *enquanto* corresponds to Sp. *mientras (outra confusão!).*
[2] *embora* < *em boa hora* (= Sp. *en buena hora*).

VERBS

1) The ending of a Portuguese verb indicates its

a)	person	(1st / 2nd / 3rd)
b)	number	(singular / plural)
c)	tense[1]	(present / imperfect / future, etc.)
d)	mood //	(indicative / subjunctive / imperative) //
	type of verbal	(infinitive / past participle / present participle)

EXAMPLES:

parto	=	*part + o*	(1st-person singular, present indicative)
partido	=	*part + ido*	(past participle)

2) The following are the subject pronouns corresponding to each person / number of a verb.[2]

PERSON /	NUMBER	SUBJECT PRONOUN(S)		
1st	singular	*eu*		
1st	plural	*nós*[3]		
2nd	singular	*tu*[4]		
2nd	plural	*vós*[5]		
3rd	singular / plural	*você*[6]	/	*vocês*
3rd	singular / plural	*o senhor*[6]	/	*os senhores*
3rd	singular / plural	*a senhora*[6]	/	*as senhoras*
3rd	singular / plural	*ele*	/	*eles*
3rd	singular / plural	*ela*	/	*elas*

---

[1] See p. 136: 3 for a complete list of tenses.
[2] See subject-pronoun chart on p. 85.
[3] *a gente* is widely used as a colloquial synonym of *nós,* but it takes a 3rd-pers. sing. verb *(a gente canta = nós cantamos)* (see p. 85n1 for details).
[4] In nonstandard colloquial BP, *tu* is often used with 3rd-pers. sing. verbs *("tu canta" = tu cantas);* this usage is incorrect in standard Portuguese.
[5] *vós* and 2nd-pers. plur. verbs are no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon; since 2nd-pers. plur. verbs are found in literature, they will be included in the verb conjugations that follow.
[6] *você(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)* are in effect 2nd-pers. pronouns but take 3rd-pers. verbs (see pp. 85: 2, 86n2 for details).

3) The following are the Portuguese verb moods and verbals, with their corresponding tenses and specific forms.

MOOD / VERBAL	TENSE / SPECIFIC FORM		EXAMPLE *(eles):*
infinitive	(personal) infinitive		*partir(em)*
	compound (personal) infinitive		*ter(em) partido*
participles	present participle		*partindo*
	compound present participle		*tendo partido*
	past participle		*partido*
indicative	present indicative		*partem*
	imperfect (preterite imperfect) indicative		*partiam*
	preterite (preterite perfect) indicative		*partiram*
	simple past perfect (pluperfect) indicative		*partiram*
	future indicative		*partirão*
	conditional		*partiriam*
	present perfect indicative		*têm partido*
	compound past perfect (pluperfect) indicative		*tinham partido*
	future perfect indicative		*terão partido*
	conditional perfect		*teriam partido*
subjunctive	present subjunctive	*(que)*	*partam*
	past (imperfect) subjunctive	*(que)*	*partissem*
	future subjunctive	*(que)*	*partirem*
	present perfect subjunctive	*(que)*	*tenham partido*
	past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive	*(que)*	*tivessem partido*
	future perfect subjunctive	*(que)*	*tiverem partido*
imperative	*tu* (standard)		*parte / não partas*
	vós		*parti / não partais*
	você(s) (standard) *// o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)*		*parta(m)*
	nós (formal)		*partamos*

4) Most Portuguese verbs belong to one of three conjugations, indicated by their infinitive ending:[1, 2]

CONJUGATION	INFINITIVE ENDING	EXAMPLE
1st	-ar	*falar*
2nd	-er	*comer*
3rd	-ir	*partir*

---

[1] *pôr* and its derived infinitives *impor / supor,* etc. (which are not marked with a circumflex) do not belong to one of these three conjugations; in reality, *pôr* constitutes a conjugation of its own.
[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: See p. 38 for differences in conjugation between Sp. and Port. cognates.

IMPERSONAL AND PERSONAL INFINITIVE

1) Impersonal infinitives

a) Impersonal infinitives are called simply "infinitives," except to differentiate them from personal infinitives.

b) The infinitive marker is *-r*.

c) The vowel of the infinitive ending indicates its conjugation.

(1st CONJ.)	(2nd CONJ.)	(3rd CONJ.)
fal<u>a</u>r	*com<u>e</u>r*	*part<u>i</u>r*

2) Personal infinitives[1]

a) The personal infinitive (also called the "inflected" or "conjugated" infinitive) of all verbs derives from its impersonal infinitive.[2, 3]

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falar*	*comer*	*partir*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falares*	*comeres*	*partires*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falar*	*comer*	*partir*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falarmos*	*comermos*	*partirmos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falardes*	*comerdes*	*partirdes*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falarem*	*comerem*	*partirem*

b) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-es	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-mos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-des	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-em	3rd-	pers.	plur.

c) The 1st- / 3rd-persons singular are the same as the impersonal infinitive.

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: A major difference between Portuguese and Spanish is this conjugated infinitive, which does not exist in Spanish.

[2] The forms of a future subjunctive verb derived from a regular preterite indicative verb coincide with those of its corresponding personal infinitive.

[3] The personal infinitive of *pôr* (but not of derived verbs) retains the circumflex only in the 1st- / 3rd-pers. sing. (*p<u>ô</u>r* vs. *pormos / porem // impor / impormos / imporem,* etc.).

3) An infinitive (either impersonal or personal)

a) is expressed in English by "to" + verb;

b) is a verbal;

c) is the only verbal used as the subject of a main verb and is usually the only verbal used as a prepositional object (in English, a present participle ["-ing"] is often used):

Amar é bom.	(to love / loving)
Comer demais não é bom.	(to eat / eating)
Comermos demais não é bom.	(for us to eat / our eating)
por chegar	(by / because of arriving)
para eles chegarem	(in order for them to arrive)

d) may take a noun or pronoun object:

Vimos o homem dar-<u>lhe</u> o <u>livro</u>.	(= indirect / direct)
Era preciso <u>lhe</u> darmos o <u>livro</u>.	(= indirect / direct)

e) may be modified by an adverb:

Cozinhar <u>mal</u> é fácil.
Vimos os rapazes correrem <u>rapidamente</u>.

f) takes an (optional) definite article when it is modified by an adverb and/or is the subject of the main verb:

(<u>O</u>) cozinhar <u>mal</u> é fácil.
(<u>O</u>) vivermos <u>bem</u> é mais difícil no inverno (do) que no verão.

g) may follow the direct object of a main verb
(in particular, "verbs of perception" such as *ver* and *ouvir*);
in this construction, the subject of the infinitive is the direct object of the main verb
(a present participle may also follow the direct object):

Vimos o Paulo <u>correr</u>.	*(= correndo)*
Ouvi os gatos <u>miar(em)</u>.	*(= miando)*

4) An impersonal infinitive (in contrast to a personal infinitive)[1]

a) is used to classify, define, or name a verb (English "to" + verb):

"Comer" é um infinitivo. ("to eat")

b) is not conjugated and has no subject of its own (and is therefore called "impersonal");

c) is invariable in gender and number, regardless of the gender / number of the subject or object:

Os meninos vão comer laranjas.

d) may be modified by a masculine or gender-invariable singular adjective, in which case it takes a definite article or a demonstrative adjective:

Não podemos aguentar o mastigar ruidoso e irritante!
Não podemos aguentar aquele mastigar ruidoso e irritante!

e) is used as the direct object of a main verb:

O Roberto quer fazer tudo mas não deve fazer nada.
Ana e Ronaldo vão jantar conosco.

f) is frequently used as an imperative in public instructions and warnings:

NÃO FUMAR *(= não fumem)*

---

[1] EP: An impersonal infinitive follows *estar a* in "progressive" tenses and forms (Eng. "to be" + "-ing");
BP: A present participle follows *estar:*

EP	BP	ENGLISH
Estamos a estudar.	*Estamos estudando.*	We are studying.
Ele estava a comer.	*Ele estava comendo.*	He was eating.
Estarei a dormir.	*Estarei dormindo.*	I will be sleeping.

5) Certain impersonal infinitives function as nouns, with no verbal function whatsoever; they are masculine but are occasionally used in the plural (unlike purely verbal infinitives).

O ditador tinha muito poder.
Laura tem um olhar triste.
Este prédio tem oito andares.
Os jantares estão saborosos.

6) A personal infinitive (in contrast to an impersonal infinitive)

a) is conjugated and has a subject of its own (and is therefore called "personal");

b) is used to avoid ambiguity concerning the subject of the infinitive, provided that the sentence has one of the following:

i) two subjects (of the main verb and of the infinitive); compare:

PERSONAL INFINITIVE		IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE	
Depois de jantarmos, José saiu.	(we / José)	*Depois de jantar, José saiu.*	(José)
Era (uma) pena elas ficarem doentes.	("it" / they)	*Era (uma) pena ficar doente.*	("it")
É preciso estudarmos.	("it" / we)	*É preciso estudar.*	("it")

ii) only one subject (not clearly identified as the subject of the infinitive):

ambiguous:	*Vimos o rapaz antes de sair.*	(before who left? the boy?)
unambiguous:	*Vimos o rapaz antes de sairmos.*	(before we left)

7) A personal infinitive often replaces a subordinate noun clause as the subject of an "impersonal" expression (= 3rd-person singular of *[poder] ser / parecer* + adjective / noun; see p. 220: 2 for details).

PERSONAL INFINITIVE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
É (uma) pena elas ficarem doentes.	*É (uma) pena que elas fiquem doentes.*
Poderá ser difícil trabalharmos com ele.	*Poderá ser difícil que trabalhemos com ele.*
Parecia absurdo ficarmos.	*Parecia absurdo que ficássemos.*

8) A personal infinitive often replaces a subordinate clause after the following prepositions, which, when followed by *que,* become subordinating conjunctions (see pp. 133–134 for details).

PREPOSITION + PERSONAL INFINITIVE	CONJUNCTION + SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	ENGLISH
por (causa de)	*porque*	because (of)
para	*para que*	in order for / so that
a fim de	*a fim de que*	in order for / so that
de forma / jeito a	*de forma / jeito que*	so (that)
de maneira / modo a	*de maneira / modo que*	so (that)
apesar de	*apesar de que*	despite / in spite of / even though
no caso de	*caso / no caso (de) que*	in case
devido a	*devido (a) que*	due to
dado	*dado que*	given (the fact that)
pelo fa(c)to de	*pelo fa(c)to (de) que*	given the fact that
sem	*sem que*	without
até	*até que*	until
antes de	*antes que*	before
depois de	*depois que*	after

Compare the following examples:

PERSONAL INFINITIVE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
Visitamos os pais por eles terem tempo.	*Visitamos os pais porque eles tinham tempo.*
Trabalham para podermos estudar.	*Trabalham para que possamos estudar.*
Fale bem de modo a compreendermos tudo!	*Fale bem de modo que compreendamos tudo!*
Apesar de vocês ficarem, iríamos.	*Apesar de que vocês ficassem, iríamos.*
Vamos amanhã, no caso de você querer nos acompanhar.	*Vamos amanhã, caso você quiser / no caso (de) que você queira nos acompanhar.*
Devido a termos tempo, virá amanhã.	*Devido a que teremos tempo, virá amanhã.*
Dado a termos tempo, vem hoje.	*Dado que temos tempo, vem hoje.*
Pelo fa(c)to de termos tempo, veio ontem.	*Pelo fa(c)to de que tínhamos tempo, veio ontem.*
Saí sem ninguém saber.	*Saí sem que ninguém soubesse.*
Fique até eu chegar!	*Fique até que eu chegue!*
Fui antes delas chamarem por telefone.	*Fui antes que elas chamassem por telefone.*
Sempre acorda depois deles voltarem.	*Sempre acorda depois que eles voltam.*

9) The subject of a personal infinitive

a) is either a noun or a pronoun:

Abri a porta para Pedro entrar.
Abri a porta para eles entrarem.

b) uses the subject form (not the object form) if it is a pronoun;
English uses an object pronoun or a possessive adjective; compare:

PORTUGUESE (SUBJECT)	ENGLISH (OBJECT / POSSESSIVE)
para elas irem	for them to go
por eu sair	by / because of my leaving
sem eles me verem	without their seeing me

10) The subject of a personal infinitive is either explicit or implicit.

a) An explicit subject eliminates ambiguity in the
i) 1st- / 3rd-persons singular (which share the same form);
ii) 3rd-person plural (which, like the 3rd-singular, can refer to an infinite number of subjects):

implicit:	*Vi o gato antes de ir.*	(before who went? the cat?)
explicit:	*Vi o gato antes de eu ir.*	(before I went)
implicit:	*As tias viram os gatos antes de irem.*	(before who went? the cats?)
explicit:	*As tias viram os gatos antes de elas irem.*	(before the aunts went)

b) It is not necessary to state the subject of a 1st-person plural or a 2nd-person infinitive, since the endings of these forms reveal their subject.

implicit:	*Vimos o gato antes de sairmos.*	(the subject can only be *nós*)

11) A compound infinitive (either impersonal or personal)

a) is the infinitive *ter* ("to have") + masculine singular past participle;[1]

b) expresses an action or state of being completed before that of the main verb:

Sinto não ter estudado.	*(= haver)*	(to have studied)
É bom elas terem viajado!	*(= haverem)*	(for them to have traveled)

---

[1] *haver* occasionally replaces *ter,* although colloquial Portuguese prefers *ter.*

PAST PARTICIPLE AND COMPOUND TENSES AND FORMS

1) Regular past participles

a) A regular past participle

i) derives from its infinitive, with which it shares the same radical;
ii) is formed by dropping the final vowel + *r* of the infinitive and adding the following vowel + past participle marker *-do:*

	(1st CONJ.)	(2nd CONJ.)	(3rd CONJ.)
ending:	*ado*	*ido*	*ido*
infinitive:	*falar*	*comer*	*partir*
past participle:	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

b) An acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / o / u* in the radical.

INFINITIVES	PAST PARTICIPLES
sair / cair	*saído / caído*
doer / moer	*doído / moído*
constituir / construir / destruir	*constituído / construído / destruído*

2) Irregular past participles

a) The following Portuguese past participles (and any derived ones) are irregular and correspond to irregular Spanish ones; the original Latin past participles were also irregular and served as the basis of the English cognates.

INFINITIVE	PORTUGUESE IRREG. PAST PART.		SPANISH IRREG. PAST PART.	ENGLISH COGNATE
abrir	***aberto***	*(entreaberto / reaberto)*	*abierto*	*aperture*
cobrir	***coberto***	*(descoberto / encoberto)*	*cubierto*	*covert*
dizer	***dito***	*(predito)*	*dicho*	*dictate*
fazer	***feito***	*(desfeito / satisfeito)*	*hecho*	*fact*
pôr	***posto***	*(composto / imposto / suposto)*	*puesto*	*post*
ver	***visto***	*(previsto)*	*visto*	*vista*
escrever	***escrito***	*(descrito / inscrito / transcrito)*	*escrito*	*scripture*

b) The past participle of *vir* is ***vindo*** (which is identical to the present participle).

3) The following Portuguese verbs have two forms of the past participle:

a)	regular:	is used in compound tenses with *ter* or *haver*	(see p. 146)
b)	irregular:[1]	is used as an adjective, often with	
	i)	*ser* in the passive voice	(see pp. 147–148)
	ii)	*estar* (or *ficar*)	(see p. 147)

INFINITIVE	REG. PART. (with *ter / haver*)	IRREG. PART. (adjective)	SPANISH IRREG. PART.	ENGLISH COGNATE
absorver	*absorvido*	***absorto***	*absorto*	*absorption*
aceitar	*aceitado*	***aceito*** (EP: *aceite*)	*acepto*	*accepted*
acender	*acendido*	***aceso***		
afligir	*afligido*	***aflito***	*aflicto*	*afflicted*
agradecer	*agradecido*	***grato***	*grato*	*grateful*
atender	*atendido*	***atento***	*atento*	*attended*
benzer	*benzido*	***bento***	*bendito*	*Benedict*
cegar	*cegado*	***cego***	*ciego*	
-cluir	*-cluído*	***-cluso***[2]	*-cluso*	*-clusive*
completar	*completado*	***completo***	*completo*	*complete(d)*
confundir	*confundido*	***confuso***	*confuso*	*confused*
convencer	*convencido*	***convicto***	*convicto*	*convict(ed)*[3]
corrigir	*corrigido*	***correto***	*correcto*	*correct(ed)*
corromper	*corrompido*	***corrupto***	*corrupto*	*corrupt(ed)*
cultivar	*cultivado*	***culto***	*culto*	*cult*
descalçar	*descalçado*	***descalço***	*descalzo*	*discalced*
dispersar	*dispersado*	***disperso***	*disperso*	*dispersed*
dissolver	*dissolvido*	***dissoluto***	*disoluto*	*dissolute*
eleger	*elegido*	***eleito***	*electo*	*elected*
encher	*enchido*	***cheio***		*plenary*
entregar	*entregado*	***entregue***		*integrated*
(des)envolver	*(des)envolvido*	***(des)envolto***	*(des)envuelto*	*involution*
enxugar	*enxugado*	***enxuto***	*enjuto*	
erigir	*erigido*	***ere(c)to***	*erecto*	*erect(ed)*
exaurir	*exaurido*	***exausto***		*exhausted*
exaustar	*exaustado*	***exausto***		*exhausted*
expelir	*expelido*	***expulso***	*expulso*	*expulsion*
expressar	*expressado*	***expresso***	*expreso*	*expressed*
exprimir	*exprimido*	***expresso***	*expreso*	*expressed*
expulsar	*expulsado*	***expulso***	*expulso*	*expulsion*

---

[1] In colloquial Portuguese and Spanish, the regular form often replaces the irregular one when used in the passive voice; most irregular forms, however, are still widely used as adjectives.
[2] *concluso / incluso*
[3] *convicto* normally means "convinced"; in the term *"réu convicto,"* it means "convict(ed)."

INFINITIVE	REG. PART. (with *ter / haver*)	IRREG. PART. (adjective)	SPANISH IRREG. PART.	ENGLISH COGNATE
fartar	*fartado*	***farto***	*harto*	
findar	*findado*	***findo***		
fixar	*fixado*	***fixo***	*fijo*	*fixed*
frigir	*frigido*	***frito***	*frito*	*fritter*
fritar	*fritado*	***frito***	*frito*	*fritter*
ganhar	*ganhado*[1]	***ganho***		*gained*
gastar	*gastado*[1]	***gasto***		*wasted*
imprimir	*imprimido*	***impresso***	*impreso*	*impressed*
infe(c)tar	*infe(c)tado*	***infe(c)to***	*infecto*	*infected*
inserir	*inserido*	***inserto***	*inserto*	*inserted*
isentar	*isentado*	***isento***	*exento*	*exempt(ed)*
juntar	*juntado*	***junto***	*junto*	*joint*
libertar	*libertado*	***liberto***	*liberto*	*liberty*
limpar	*limpado*	***limpo***	*limpio*	*limpid*
manifestar	*manifestado*	***manifesto***	*manifiesto*	*manifest(ed)*
matar	*matado*	***morto***	*muerto*	*mortician*
-mergir	*-mergido*	***-merso***[2]	*-merso*	*-mersed*
morrer	*morrido*	***morto***	*muerto*	*mortician*
murchar	*murchado*	***murcho***		
nascer	*nascido*	***nato / nado***	*nato*	*natal*
ocultar	*ocultado*	***oculto***	*oculto*	*occult*
omitir	*omitido*	***omisso***	*omiso*	*omission*
pagar	*pagado*[1]	***pago***		*paid*
prender	*prendido*	***preso***	*preso*	*prison*
romper	*rompido*	***roto***	*roto*	*ruptured*
salvar	*salvado*	***salvo***	*salvo*	*salvaged*
secar	*secado*	***seco***	*seco*	*sec*
segurar	*segurado*	***seguro***	*seguro*	*secure(d)*
soltar	*soltado*	***solto***	*suelto*	*solution*
sujeitar	*sujeitado*	***sujeito***	*sujeto*	*subject(ed)*
suprimir	*suprimido*	***supresso***	*supreso*	*suppressed*
surpreender	*surpreendido*	***surpreso***	*sorpreso*	*surprised*
suspeitar	*suspeitado*	***suspeito***		*suspect(ed)*
suspender	*suspendido*	***suspenso***	*suspenso*	*suspense*
tingir	*tingido*	***tinto***	*tinto*	*tinted*
-tinguir	*-tinguido*	***-tinto***[3]	*-tinto*	*-tinct*
torcer	*torcido*	***torto***	*tuerto*	*tort*
vagar	*vagado*	***vago***	*vago*	*vague*

---

[1] The irregular form is also used with *ter / haver.*
[2] *emerso / imerso / submerso*
[3] *distinto / extinto*

4) Past participles in compound tenses and forms

a) A past participle is a verbal that is often used with *ter* ("to have") in compound tenses and forms, which are listed below.[1, 2]

TENSE / FORM		EXAMPLE *(eles):*	ENGLISH: (they)... left / been leaving:
present perfect indicative		*têm partido*	have
compound past perfect indicative		*tinham partido*	had
future perfect indicative		*terão partido*	will have
conditional perfect		*teriam partido*	would have
present perfect subjunctive	*(que)*	*tenham partido*	have
past perfect subjunctive	*(que)*	*tivessem partido*	had / would have
future perfect subjunctive	*(que)*	*tiverem partido*	will have
compound (personal) infinitive		*ter(em) partido*	to have
compound present participle		*tendo partido*	having

b) Only the masculine singular past participle is used in compound tenses and forms, regardless of the gender / number of the subject or object.

c) If a past participle has two forms, the regular one is used.

d) *haver* occasionally replaces *ter,* although colloquial Portuguese prefers *ter.*[2]

Ana <u>tinha</u> <u>estudado</u> os textos.	*(= havia)*	(had studied)
Eles <u>terão</u> <u>elegido</u> o senador.	*(= haverão)*	(will have elected)
<u>Tendo</u> <u>lido</u> a revista, Pedro saiu.	*(= havendo)*	(having read)

---

[1] Their specific uses are discussed in the pages corresponding to each tense / form.
[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish uses *haber* (not *tener*) in compound tenses / forms *(han / habían / habrán / habrían / haber / habiendo + partido).*

5) Past participles as adjectives

a) When a past participle functions as an adjective, it agrees in gender and number with the noun that it modifies.

b) The following are the circumstances in which a past participle functions as an adjective:

i) in the passive voice with *ser* ("to be") (see p. 148: 2 for details):

Os livros foram estudados.
O senador será eleito de novo?
Todas as revistas tinham sido lidas.

ii) with *estar* ("to be") or *ficar* ("to be [still] / remain // become / get"); these verbs express a state of being resulting from an action or a change (see pp. 224, 226: 2 for details); compare:

cause:

action:	*José abriu a porta.*	(opened)	(= active)
change:	*A porta foi aberta por José.*	(was opened)	(= passive)

effect:

state of being:	*A porta está aberta.*	(is open [because it was opened])
state of being:	*A porta fica aberta.*	(is [still] / remains open)

iii) if it directly modifies a noun:

as portas abertas	(open)
o prédio recém-pintado	(painted)

iv) if it is "nominalized" (see p. 57: 2 for details):

as (portas) abertas	(the open ones)
o (prédio) recém-pintado	(the painted one)

v) in an "absolute" participial phrase:[1]

Inaugurado o presidente, nós voltamos para casa.
(The president having been inaugurated, we returned home.)

---

[1] In an "absolute" participial phrase, the subject of the participle is not the subject of the main verb; this construction derives from the Latin "ablative absolute" and is normally used only in very formal Portuguese.

PASSIVE VOICE

Portuguese verbs are used in either the active or the passive voice.

1) Active voice:

The subject of the active voice performs the action expressed by the verb.

José abre a porta.	(José opens the door.)
Rosa nos deu um carro.	(Rosa gave us a car.)

2) Passive voice:

a) The "true" passive (vs. the reflexive passive) consists of *ser* + past participle.

b) The subject of the passive voice receives the action expressed by the verb and is acted upon by an "agent," which may or not be expressed;
to introduce the agent, Portuguese uses *"por..."* (English "by...").

A porta é aberta por José.	(The door is opened by José.)
Foi-nos dado um carro por Rosa.	(We were given a car by Rosa.)

c) The past participle of the passive is an adjective and therefore agrees in gender and number with the noun that it modifies.

A porta é aberta por José.	(opened)
As camisas foram lavadas.	(washed)
O menino será premiado.	(rewarded)

d) The passive can be expressed in any tense corresponding to an active one, as seen in the following examples.

TENSE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
present indicative	*Abrem a porta.*	*A porta é aberta.*
imperfect indicative	*Abriam a porta.*	*A porta era aberta.*
preterite indicative	*Abriram a porta.*	*A porta foi aberta.*
simple past perfect indicative	*Abriram a porta.*	*A porta fora aberta.*
future indicative	*Abrirão a porta.*	*A porta será aberta.*
conditional	*Abririam a porta.*	*A porta seria aberta.*

3) The following patterns correspond between the passive and the active voice.

PASSIVE			ACTIVE	
subject	("S")	=	direct object	("DO")
past participle	("PP")	=	verb	("V")
agent	("A")	=	subject	("S")

S PP A
passive: *A porta é aberta por José.*

S V DO
active: *José abre a porta.*

PP S A
passive: *Foi-nos dado um carro por Rosa.*[1]

S V DO
active: *Rosa nos deu um carro.*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: The Portuguese passive *foi-nos dado um carro por Rosa* cannot be expressed in the Spanish passive because it contains an agent *(por Rosa);* instead, the active must be used *(Rosa nos dio un carro)*. Even without the agent, Spanish cannot use the "true" passive (= *ser* + past participle) because the corresponding Spanish active construction contains an indirect object *(nos);* instead, Spanish must use a reflexive passive construction that maintains the indirect object *(se nos dio un carro);* compare:

	PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
active:	*Rosa nos deu um carro.*	*Rosa nos dio un carro.*
passive:	*Foi-nos dado um carro por Rosa.*	——
active:	*Deu-nos um carro.*	*Nos dio un carro.*
passive:	*Foi-nos dado um carro.*	*Se nos dio un carro.*

4) The reflexive pronoun *se* + 3rd-person verb is also used in Portuguese to express the passive (see p. 98 for details).

Abre-se a porta.	(is opened)
Lavam-se carros.	(are washed)

However, there are differences between the "true" passive and the reflexive passive, as seen in the following examples.

	"TRUE" PASSIVE (*SER* + PAST PARTICIPLE)	REFLEXIVE PASSIVE (*SE* + 3rd-PERS. VERB)
subject:	thing or person:	only a thing (not a person):
	A porta é aberta por José.	*Abre-se a porta.*
	As camisas foram lavadas.	*Lavaram-se as camisas.*
	O menino será lavado.	——
agent of passive:	can be expressed:	cannot be expressed:
	A porta é aberta por José.	*Abre-se a porta.*

5) The passive is used when the subject of the verb is unknown, or when it is important to emphasize or contrast the agent of the passive.

A porta foi aberta.	(we don't know by whom)
A porta foi aberta por <u>José</u>.	(by <u>José</u>, not by anyone else)

6) The passive is used more in official and journalistic Portuguese than in English (which tends to discourage its use since it adds words and tends to complicate what, in the active voice, would be the relatively simple construction of subject + verb + direct object).

INDICATIVE MOOD

Portuguese verbs of the indicative mood

1) express an action or state of being that is considered real, factual, certain, true, specific, or definite;

2) are generally used in the main clause of declarative sentences, and in exclamations and questions:

Pedro canta bem.	(Pedro sings well.)
Como Pedro canta bem!	(How well Pedro sings!)
Pedro canta bem?	(Does Pedro sing well?)

3) may be used in subordinate clauses:[1]

Sabemos que Pedro canta bem.	(We know that Pedro sings well.)

---

[1] Since the subjunctive mood is also used in subordinate clauses, English speakers may find it difficult to choose the correct mood; this choice depends on various factors, which are analyzed on pp. 197–209.

PRESENT INDICATIVE: FORMS

1) Regular verbs

A regular present indicative verb derives from its infinitive, with which it shares the same radical.

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falo*	*como*	*parto*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falas*	*comes*	*partes*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*fala*	*come*	*parte*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falamos*	*comemos*	*partimos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falais*	*comeis*	*partis*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falam*	*comem*	*partem*

a) -*a* = 1st-conj. marker: found in all forms except the 1st-pers. sing.
-*e* = 2nd-conj. marker: found in all forms except the 1st-pers. sing.
-*i* = 3rd-conj. marker: found only in the 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur.;
-*e* (= 2nd-conj. marker) is found in all other forms except the 1st-pers. sing.

b) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-*o*	1st- pers. sing.
-*s*	2nd- pers. sing.
-*mos*	1st- pers. plur.
-*is*	2nd- pers. plur.
-*m*	3rd- pers. plur.

c) The 1st- / 2nd-persons plural follow the infinitive in vowel and stress pattern.

2) Orthography-changing verbs

In order to transcribe correctly the sound of the final consonant in the radical of the infinitive, the following orthographic changes must be made in the 1st-person singular of the following verb categories.

INFINITIVE ENDING	ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGE			INFINITIVE	>	1st-PERS. SING.
-cer	ce	>	*ço*	conhecer	>	*conheço*
-ger	ge	>	*jo*	proteger	>	*protejo*
-gir	gi	>	*jo*	dirigir	>	*dirijo*
-guer	gue	>	*go*	erguer	>	*ergo*
-guir[1]	gui	>	*go*	distinguir	>	*distingo*

3) Radical-changing verbs

Radical-changing (= stem-changing) verbs are those in which a sound in the radical of the infinitive changes in certain forms of the verb.

a) The 1st- / 2nd-persons plural follow the infinitive in vowel and stress pattern.

b) The verb endings are regular.

c) In the following verbs, a sound in the radical of the infinitive changes only in the 1st-person singular (not in the other verb forms, except as noted).

INFINITIVE	1st-PERS. SING.	
requerer	*requeiro*	(3rd-pers. sing. = *requer*)
saber	*sei*	
caber	*caibo*	
poder	*posso*	
perder	*perco*	
pedir	*peço*	
medir	*meço*	
ouvir	*ouço*[2]	
valer	*valho*	

---

[1] The radical of *seguir* and its derived verbs changes (see p. 155: 3f for details).
[2] EP: Also *oiço* (see p. 4n4 for details).

d) In the following verb categories, an [e] / [o] in the radical of an *-ar / -er* infinitive often changes to [ɛ] / [ɔ], respectively, in certain stressed positions.

INFINITIVE ENDING	VERB FORMS	EXAMPLES			
-ar[1]		*pesar:*	[e]	*gostar:*	[o]
	1st- pers. sing.	*peso*[2]	[ɛ]	*gosto*[2]	[ɔ]
	2nd- pers. sing.	*pesas*	[ɛ]	*gostas*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. sing.	*pesa*	[ɛ]	*gosta*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. plur.	*pesam*	[ɛ]	*gostam*	[ɔ]
-er[1]		*beber:*	[e]	*correr:*	[o]
		bebo	[e]	*corro*	[o]
	2nd- pers. sing.	*bebes*	[ɛ]	*corres*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. sing.	*bebe*	[ɛ]	*corre*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. plur.	*bebem*	[ɛ]	*correm*	[ɔ]

e) An [ẽ] / [õ] in the radical of an *-ar / -er* infinitive does not change.[3]

EXAMPLES			
lembrar:	[ẽ]	*esconder:*	[õ]
lembro	[ẽ]	*escondo*	[õ]
lembras	[ẽ]	*escondes*	[õ]
lembra	[ẽ]	*esconde*	[õ]
lembram	[ẽ]	*escondem*	[õ]

---

[1] = most verbs with [e] / [o] in radical.

[2] Note the following homographs:

peso	[ɛ]	("I weigh")	vs.	*peso*	[e]	("weight")
gosto	[ɔ]	("I like")	vs.	*gosto*	[o]	("taste")

[3] [ẽ] / [õ] transcribe syllable-final letters *e / o + m / n (lembrar / assombrar / vender / esconder);* the letters *m / n* are not pronounced; rather, they indicate the nasalization of the preceding vowel.

f) In the following verb categories, an [e] / [o] / [u] in the radical of an *-ir* infinitive often changes in certain stressed positions.

INFINITIVE ENDING	VERB FORMS	EXAMPLES			
-ir[1, 2, 5, 6]		*seguir:*[7]	[e]	*dormir:*[7]	[o]
	1st- pers. sing.	*sigo*[4]	[i]	*durmo*	[u]
	2nd- pers. sing.	*segues*	[ɛ]	*dormes*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. sing.	*segue*	[ɛ]	*dorme*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. plur.	*seguem*	[ɛ]	*dormem*	[ɔ]
-ir[3]				*subir:*	[u]
				subo	[u]
	2nd- pers. sing.			*sobes*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. sing.			*sobe*	[ɔ]
	3rd- pers. plur.			*sobem*	[ɔ]

g) An [ẽ] in the radical of an *-ir* infinitive changes in only one position: to [ĩ] in the 1st-person singular.

VERB FORM	EXAMPLES			
	mentir:[7]	[ẽ]	*sentir:*[7]	[ẽ]
1st-pers. sing.	*minto*	[ĩ]	*sinto*	[ĩ]
	mentes	[ẽ]	*sentes*	[ẽ]
	mente	[ẽ]	*sente*	[ẽ]
	mentem	[ẽ]	*sentem*	[ẽ]

---

[1] = many verbs with [e] in radical.
[2] = most verbs with [o] in radical.
[3] = most verbs with [u] in radical.
[4] Orthographic change: *seguir* > *sigo*
[5] Radical change in 1st-pers. sing. of: *pedir / medir* > *peço / meço*

Notes to Spanish Speakers:
[6] 1st-pers. sing. of Spanish: *pedir / medir / seguir* > *pido / mido / sigo*
[7] An [e] / [o] in the radical of a Spanish *-ir* infinitive makes the following changes in all stressed positions:

[e] > [i]: *seguir* > *sigo*
[e] > [ie]: *mentir / sentir* > *miento / siento*
[o] > [ue]: *dormir* > *duermo*

h) In the following verb category, an *e* in the radical of the infinitive changes to *ei* in all stressed positions.

INFINITIVE ENDING	VERB FORMS	EXAMPLES	
-ear[1, 2]		*passear:*	[e]
	1st- pers. sing.	*passeio*	[e^{i}]
	2nd- pers. sing.	*passeias*	[e^{i}]
	3rd- pers. sing.	*passeia*	[e^{i}]
	3rd- pers. plur.	*passeiam*	[e^{i}]

4) Irregular verbs

A number of verbs are irregular in the present indicative. Most of these verbs, however, are linked by patterns of similar forms (indicated by =).

a) The 1st- / 2nd-persons plural usually follow the infinitive in vowel and stress pattern.

b) *rir / sorrir:*

i) -*i* (not -*e*) is found in the 2nd- / 3rd-persons singular;
ii) -*i* is also found in the 1st-person singular / 3rd-person plural;
iii) the 2nd-person plural retains the vestigial -*d*- (< Latin -*t*-):

(sor)rio
(sor)ris
(sor)ri
(sor)rimos
(sor)rides
(sor)riem

---

[1] This change also takes place in five verbs ending in -*iar: ansiar / incendiar / odiar / (re)mediar;* all other verbs ending in -*iar* are regular, as seen in the 1st-pers. sing. of the following infinitives:

elogiar: *elogio*
iniciar: *inicio*

[2] The unstressed *e* in the radical of the infinitive and the 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. *(passeamos / passeais)* is often pronounced [i].

c) In the following verb categories

i) -*i* (not -*e*) is found in the 2nd- / 3rd-persons singular;
ii) -*i* is also found in the 1st-person singular of -*air* verbs;
iii) an acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / u* in the radical of the 1st- / 2nd-persons plural:

INFINITIVE ENDING		EXAMPLES		
-air		*sair:*	*cair:*	
		saio	*caio*	
		sais	*cais*	
		sai	*cai*	
		saímos	*caímos*	
		saís	*caís*	
		saem	*caem*	
-uir		*constituir:*		
		constituo		
		constituis		
		constitui		
		constituímos		
		constituís		
		constituem		
	exceptions:	*construir:*[1]	*destruir:*[1]	
		construo	*destruo*	
		constróis	*destróis*	[ɔ^{i}]
		constrói	*destrói*	[ɔ^{i}]
		construímos	*destruímos*	
		construís	*destruís*	
		constroem	*destroem*	[o^{i}]
-oer		*doer:*[2]	*moer:*	
			móis	[ɔ^{i}]
		dói	*mói*	[ɔ^{i}]
		doem	*moem*	[o^{i}]

---

[1] Portuguese usually uses an open *o* [ɔ] in the radical of the 2nd- / 3rd-pers. sing. and a closed *o* [o] in the radical of the 3rd-pers. plur.; these irregular forms are identical to those of -*oer* infinitives. Alternative forms of *construir / destruir* (which follow the model of *instruir* as well as of most other -*uir* verbs) are:

construis	*destruis*
construi	*destrui*
construem	*destruem*

[2] *doer* is normally used only in the 3rd person.

d) In the following verbs, the final -*e* is dropped in the 3rd-person singular.

INFINITIVE	3rd-PERS. SING.	
querer	*quer*	
requerer	*requer*	(1st-pers. sing. = *requeiro*)

-uzir:	-*uz:*
conduzir	*conduz*
introduzir	*introduz*
(re)produzir	*(re)produz*
traduzir	*traduz*
luzir	*luz*
jazer	*jaz*

e) In the following verbs (and any derived ones)

i) the radical changes in the 1st-person singular;
ii) the final -*e* is dropped in the 3rd-person singular:

fazer:		*trazer:*		*dizer:*
faço[1]		*trago*	=	*digo*
fazes	=	*trazes*	=	*dizes*
faz[2]	=	*traz*[2]	=	*diz*[2]
fazemos	=	*trazemos*	=	*dizemos*
fazeis	=	*trazeis*	=	*dizeis*
fazem	=	*trazem*	=	*dizem*

f) In the following verbs

i) the radical changes in the 1st-person singular;
ii) *ê* is found in the 2nd- / 3rd-persons singular; *ee,* in the 3rd-person plural;[3]
iii) the 2nd-person plural retains the vestigial -*d*- (< Latin -*t*-):

crer:		*ler:*		*ver:*
creio	=	*leio*		*vejo*
crês	=	*lês*	=	*vês*
crê	=	*lê*	=	*vê*
cremos	=	*lemos*	=	*vemos*
credes	=	*ledes*	=	*vedes*
creem	=	*leem*	=	*veem*

---

[1] *faço* = *peço / meço / ouço* *(< pedir / medir / ouvir)*
[2] *faz / traz / diz* = *jaz / -uz* *(< jazer / -uzir)*
[3] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

g) In the following verbs (and any derived ones)

i) *-nh-* is found in the 1st-person singular;
ii) the nasal diphthongs [ẽĩ] // [õĩ] are found in the 2nd- / 3rd-persons singular and 3rd-person plural of *vir / ter // pôr,* respectively;[1]
iii) the 2nd-person plural retains the vestigial *-d-* (< Latin *-t-*):

vir:		*ter:*		*pôr:*[4]
venho	=	*tenho*	=	*ponho*
vens	=	*tens*		*pões*
vem[2, 3]	=	*tem*[3]		*põe*
vimos		*temos*		*pomos*
vindes	=	*tendes*	=	*pondes*
vêm[2]	=	*têm*		*põem*

h) Some of the most common verbs are the most irregular.

haver:[5]		*estar:*		*dar:*		*ir:*[6]		*ser:*
hei		*estou*	=	*dou*	=	*vou*	=	*sou*
hás	=	*estás*	=	*dás*		*vais*		*és*
há	=	*está*	=	*dá*		*vai*		*é*
havemos		*estamos*	=	*damos*	=	*vamos*		*somos*
haveis		*estais*	=	*dais*		*ides*		*sois*
hão	=	*estão*	=	*dão*	=	*vão*	=	*são*

---

[1] The nasal diphthongs [ẽĩ] // [õĩ] are a vestige of the *-n-* in the original Latin infinitives *venire / tenere // ponere;* however, the *-n-* disappeared in the respective Portuguese infinitives *vir / ter // pôr.*
[2] *vem* and *vêm (< vir)* are pronounced like *veem (< ver) (que confusão!).*
[3] An acute accent marks the 3rd-pers. sing. of verbs derived from *vir / ter:*
convém / contém (vs. *vem / tem*)
[4] Infinitives derived from *pôr* are not marked with a circumflex (*impor / supor,* etc.).
[5] *haver:*
(a) *hei = sei (< saber)*
(b) *eis* is a literary form derived from *haveis* (and/or perhaps Latin *ecce*); it means "there is / are" / "behold."
(c) *hemos / heis* are alternative, abbreviated forms of *havemos / haveis,* respectively; they also appear in the endings of the future indicative (see p. 175).
[6] *ir:* five of its conjugated forms derive from Latin *vadere* (> English "wade"); only the 2nd-pers. plur. derives from the Latin synonym *ire,* the *-d-* of which it also retains.

PRESENT INDICATIVE: USES

1) The present indicative tense is expressed in English by

   a) the present tense;
   b) "does" / "do" + verb;
   c) "is" / "am" / "are" + present participle.[1]

2) The present indicative expresses

   a) an action that takes place continually, habitually, or routinely in the present:

Vocês cantam? Cantamos, sim.	(do...sing / sing)
Estudamos muito.	(study)

   b) a state of being (permanent or not) that exists in the present:

Você sente calor?	(feel)
Estamos no Rio de Janeiro.	(are)

   c) the past (in order to make narrative discourse more realistic or vivid):

Os muçulmanos conquistam (= conquistaram) a Península Ibérica no ano 711. Com o decorrer do tempo, estabelecem (= estabeleceram) vários reinos no sul da Península. O último deste reinos não é (= foi) reconquistado pelos cristãos até o ano 1492.

3) The present indicative tense often replaces the future indicative in colloquial Portuguese.

Ele diz que sai.	*(= sairá)*	(He says that he'll leave.)
Vocês saem se puderem?	*(= sairão)*	(Will you leave if you can?)

---

[1] This construction more commonly expresses the Portuguese present "progressive" tense (see p. 212 for details).

PRESENT PERFECT INDICATIVE

1) The present perfect indicative consists of the present indicative of *ter* + masculine singular past participle.[1]

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*tenho*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*tens*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*tem*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*temos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tendes*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*têm*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

2) The present perfect indicative tense

a) expresses an action or state of being that began in the past and continues into the present;

b) is often used with these adverbs:

ultimamente / recentemente	(lately / recently)
repetidas vezes / muito	(repeatedly / a lot)

c) usually is expressed in English by "has been" / "have been" + present participle and corresponds to the English and Spanish present perfect "progressive" tense:[2]

Portuguese:
i) *A polícia não <u>tem</u> <u>prendido</u> muitos estudantes ultimamente.*
ii) *<u>Tenho</u> <u>dito</u> repetidas vezes que iria.*
iii) *Recentemente <u>temos</u> <u>estudado</u> muito.*

Spanish:
i) *La policía no <u>ha</u> <u>estado</u> <u>prendiendo</u> muchos estudiantes últimamente.*
ii) *<u>He</u> <u>estado</u> <u>diciendo</u> repetidas veces que iría.* (= he dicho)
iii) *Recientemente <u>hemos</u> <u>estado</u> <u>estudiando</u> mucho.*

English:
i) *The police <u>have</u> not <u>been</u> <u>arresting</u> many students lately.*
ii) *I <u>have</u> repeatedly <u>been</u> <u>saying</u> that I would go.* (= have said)
iii) *Recently we <u>have</u> <u>been</u> <u>studying</u> a lot.*

---

[1] If a past participle has two forms, the regular one is used.
haver rarely replaces *ter*.
[2] The English and Spanish present perfect often correspond to the Portuguese preterite rather than to the present perfect (see p. 169: 1 for details).

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE: FORMS

1) Regular verbs

A regular imperfect indicative verb (also called the "preterite imperfect" indicative) derives from its infinitive, with which it shares the same radical.

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falava*	*comia*	*partia*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falavas*	*comias*	*partias*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falava*	*comia*	*partia*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falávamos*	*comíamos*	*partíamos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*faláveis*	*comíeis*	*partíeis*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falavam*	*comiam*	*partiam*

a) *-av-* = 1st-conj. marker (*-ar* verbs)
-i- = 2nd- / 3rd-conj. marker (*-er / -ir* verbs)

b) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-a	1st- / 3rd-	pers.	sing.
-as	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-amos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-eis	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-am	3rd-	pers.	plur.

c) An acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / o / u* in the radical.

sair:	*moer:*	*construir:*
saía	*moía*	*construía*
saías	*moías*	*construías*
saía	*moía*	*construía*
saíamos	*moíamos*	*construíamos*
saíeis	*moíeis*	*construíeis*
saíam	*moíam*	*construíam*

2) Irregular verbs

a) In the following verbs (and any derived ones)

i) *-nh-* is found in the radical;[1]
ii) the vowels *i // u* are found in *vir / ter // pôr,* respectively;[1]
iii) the verb endings are regular:

vir:		*ter:*		*pôr:*
vinha	=	*tinha*	=	*punha*
vinhas	=	*tinhas*	=	*punhas*
vinha	=	*tinha*	=	*punha*
vínhamos	=	*tínhamos*	=	*púnhamos*
vínheis	=	*tínheis*	=	*púnheis*
vinham	=	*tinham*	=	*punham*

b) *ser:*

i) is irregular because of its entirely different radical;
ii) has regular verb endings:

era
eras
era
éramos
éreis
eram

---

[1] *-nh-* is also found in the 1st-pers. sing. of the present indicative; the vowels of both tenses, however, differ:

INFINITIVE	1st-PERS. SING. PRESENT INDIC.	RADICAL OF IMPERFECT INDIC.
vir	*venho*	*vinh-*
ter	*tenho*	*tinh-*
pôr	*ponho*	*punh-*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE: USES

1) The imperfect indicative tense is expressed in English by

   a) the past tense;
   b) "used to" / "would" + verb;
   c) "was" / "were" + present participle.[1]

2) The imperfect indicative describes or expresses an action or state of being in the past.

   a) Since the word *imperfect* means "incomplete," the imperfect tense (unlike the preterite) does not take into consideration the beginning, end, or definite time limit of the action or state of being.

      Elas iam a Lisboa. (when, specifically?)

   b) What the imperfect describes may provide background information and/or set the scene (= time, weather, etc.) for another action or state of being (expressed in either the imperfect or the preterite).

      Quando cheguei, era meia-noite e chovia. (arrived // was / was raining)
      Quando elas eram jovens, iam a Lisboa. (were // used to / would go)

3) The imperfect indicative also expresses

   a) two concurrent actions or states of being, one of which is often introduced by *enquanto* ("while"):

      Enquanto ele lia, eu dormia. (was reading / was sleeping)

   b) a continuing, habitual, routine, recurring, or indefinitely repeated action, and is often used with these adverbs:

frequentemente / sempre[2]	(frequently / always)
algumas vezes // às / muitas vezes	(sometimes // at / many times)
todas as semanas // todos os dias / meses / anos	(every week // day / month / year)
antes / antigamente / no passado	(before / formerly / in the past)

Antigamente Gilberto morava no Brasil.
Às vezes os seus pais viajavam a Moçambique?
No passado nós líamos pouco, mas eles liam todos os dias.

---

[1] This construction more commonly expresses the Portuguese imperfect "progressive" tense (see p. 212 for details).
[2] When used with the preterite, *sempre* connotes a definite time limit (e.g., "from beginning to end").

4) The imperfect indicative tense

a) often replaces the conditional in colloquial Portuguese:

Ele disse que saía.	*(= sairia)*	(He said that he'd leave.)
Vocês saíam se pudessem?	*(= sairiam)*	(Would you leave if you could?)

b) is never replaced by the conditional (unlike in English):

Vocês saíam se podiam?	(Did you used to / Would you leave if you could?)
Eu comia muita carne.	(I used to / would eat a lot of meat.)

PRETERITE INDICATIVE: FORMS

1) Regular verbs

A regular preterite indicative verb (also called the "preterite perfect" indicative) derives from its infinitive, with which it shares the same radical.

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falei*	*comi*	*parti*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falaste*	*comeste*	*partiste*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falou*	*comeu*	*partiu*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falamos*[1]	*comemos*	*partimos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falastes*	*comestes*	*partistes*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falaram*	*comeram*	*partiram*

a) *-a* = 1st-conj. marker: found in all forms except the 1st- / 3rd-pers. sing.
-e = 2nd-conj. marker: found in all forms except the 1st-pers. sing.
-i = 3rd-conj. marker: found in all forms

b) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-i	1st- pers. sing.	
-ste	2nd- pers. sing.	
-u	3rd- pers. sing.	
-mos	1st- pers. plur.	
-stes	2nd- pers. plur.	(= 2nd-pers. sing. + *s*)
-ram	3rd- pers. plur.	

c) An acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / o / u* in the radical.

sair:	*moer:*	*construir:*
saí	*moí*	*construí*
saíste	*moeste*	*construíste*
saiu	*moeu*	*construiu*
saímos	*moemos*	*construímos*
saístes	*moestes*	*construístes*
saíram	*moeram*	*construíram*

---

[1] EP optionally marks the [a] of the 1st-pers. plur. ending with an acute accent *(-ámos),* to differentiate it from the [ɐ] of the corresponding present indicative ending *(-amos).*

2) Orthography-changing verbs

In order to transcribe correctly the sound of the final consonant in the radical of the infinitive, the following orthographic changes must be made in the 1st-person singular of the following verb categories.

INFINITIVE ENDING	ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGE			INFINITIVE	>	1st-PERS. SING.
-çar	ça	>	*ce*	dançar	>	*dancei*
-car	ca	>	*que*	tocar	>	*toquei*
-gar	ga	>	*gue*	chegar	>	*cheguei*

3) Irregular verbs

a) Some of the most common verbs are the most irregular.

ser / ir:[1]	*ver:*[2]	*vir:*[2]	*dar:*
fui	*vi*	*vim*	*dei*
foste	*viste*	*vieste*	*deste*
foi	*viu*	*veio*	*deu*
fomos	*vimos*	*viemos*	*demos*
fostes	*vistes*	*viestes*	*destes*
foram	*viram*	*vieram*	*deram*

---

[1] *ser* and *ir* share the same forms.
[2] The forms of *ver* and *vir* are confusingly similar (if the preterite of *vir* were regular, it would be that of *ver!*).

b) The following verbs (and most of their derived ones) are irregular in the preterite because their radicals differ from those of their infinitives.[1]

Regardless of the conjugation of the particular verb,

i) the endings of the 2nd-person singular and 1st- / 2nd- / 3rd-persons plural correspond to those of regular 2nd-conjugation preterite verbs;

ii) the 1st- / 3rd-person singular forms normally end in unstressed -*e* (unlike in regular preterite verbs);
this final -*e* is dropped in *querer / fazer / pôr:*

trazer:		*saber:*		*caber:*		*haver:*
trouxe	=	*soube*	=	*coube*	=	*houve*
trouxeste	=	*soubeste*	=	*coubeste*	=	*houveste*
trouxe	=	*soube*	=	*coube*	=	*houve*
trouxemos	=	*soubemos*	=	*coubemos*	=	*houvemos*
trouxestes	=	*soubestes*	=	*coubestes*	=	*houvestes*
trouxeram	=	*souberam*	=	*couberam*	=	*houveram*

dizer:		*querer:*[2]
disse		*quis*
disseste	=	*quiseste*
disse		*quis*
dissemos	=	*quisemos*
dissestes	=	*quisestes*
disseram	=	*quiseram*

iii) the following verbs have an additional irregularity: the vowel of the 3rd-person singular radical differs from that of the other preterite forms (unlike in Spanish):[3]

ter:		*estar:*		*fazer:*	*pôr:*		*poder:*
tive	=	*estive*		*fiz*	*pus*		*pude*
tiveste	=	*estiveste*	=	*fizeste*	*puseste*	=	*pudeste*
teve	=	*esteve*		*fez*	*pôs*		*pôde*
tivemos	=	*estivemos*	=	*fizemos*	*pusemos*	=	*pudemos*
tivestes	=	*estivestes*	=	*fizestes*	*pusestes*	=	*pudestes*
tiveram	=	*estiveram*	=	*fizeram*	*puseram*	=	*puderam*

---

[1] These "strong" preterite-tense verbs derive from irregular Latin verbs of the "perfect" (= preterite) tense, which were also classified as "strong" (vs. "weak" Latin and Portuguese verbs, which are regular and in which an ending is added to the radical in order to form the preterite).
[2] The preterite of *requerer* is regular *(requeri / requereu / requeremos / requereram).*
[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: The preterite of *andar* is regular *(andei / andou / andamos / andaram),* unlike in Spanish.

PRETERITE INDICATIVE: USES

1) The preterite indicative tense is expressed in English by[1]

   a) the past tense;
   b) "did" + verb;
   c) "has" / "have" + past participle (= present perfect tense).

2) The preterite indicative narrates or expresses an action or state of being completed in the past (whether or not a time is mentioned).

   a) Since the word *perfect* in "preterite perfect" means "complete," the preterite tense (unlike the imperfect) takes into consideration the beginning, end, or definite time limit of the action or state of being.

      Elas foram a Lisboa no mês passado. (did go / went)

   b) The action or state of being may be of short or long duration.

      Ontem ficamos em casa. (= short)
      Salazar foi ditador por trinta e seis anos. (= long)

   c) The action or state of being may have occurred once, or a definite or limited number of times.

      Ela foi a Macau uma vez; ele foi três vezes. (once / thrice)

3) The preterite indicative is often used with these adverbs:

já	(already / yet)
ainda não	(still not / not...yet)
na semana passada // no mês / ano passado	(last week // month / year)

José já comprou o carro? Não, ainda não comprou.
Elas viajaram a Moçambique na semana passada.

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: The Portuguese preterite often corresponds to the Spanish
(a) preterite, if the action / state of being happened a while ago;
(b) present perfect, if the action / state of being has happened a short time ago (the distinction between these tenses varies dialectally); compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Você já comprou o carro?	*¿Usted ya ha comprado / compró el carro?*
Sim, comprei faz um mês.	*Sí, lo compré hace un mes.*
Não, ainda não comprei.	*No, aún no lo he comprado.*

PRETERITE VERSUS IMPERFECT

1) Because English often uses the past tense to express the equivalent of the Portuguese preterite as well as the imperfect, English speakers may find it difficult to choose the correct past tense in Portuguese. The following contrastive sentences might help to resolve that difficulty.[1]

PRETERITE	IMPERFECT
Quando era jovem, fui a Lisboa uma vez. (definite number of times)	*Quando era jovem, ia a Lisboa muitas vezes.* (recurring action)
No mês passado Ana esteve doente. (definite time limit)	*Ana frequentemente estava doente.* (recurring action)
Moramos em Lisboa por um ano. (definite time limit)	*Antigamente morávamos em Lisboa.* (continuing action)
Eles leram o jornal anteontem. (definite time limit)	*Eles liam o jornal todos os dias.* (recurring action)
Pedro foi cadete por quatro anos. (definite time limit)	*Pedro era um bom cadete.* (description in indefinite past)
Chegamos ao meio-dia. (completed action)	*Chegávamos enquanto dançavam.* (two concurrent actions)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese and Spanish use the preterite and the imperfect in the same ways (with one dialectal variation; see p. 169n1).

2) Certain verbs differ in meaning according to whether they are expressed in the imperfect or the preterite.

a) *querer / poder* in the imperfect denote, respectively, intention and ability in the past, without regard for outcome; in the preterite both verbs denote outcome.

querer:

imperfect:		
affirmative:	*Ele queria ir à festa ontem.*	(wanted to)
negative:	*Ela não queria ir à festa ontem.*	(did not want to)
preterite:		
affirmative:	*Ele quis ir à festa ontem.*	(tried to)
negative:	*Ela não quis ir à festa ontem.*	(refused to)

poder:

imperfect:		
affirmative:	*Ele podia ir à festa ontem.*	(was able to)
negative:	*Ela não podia ir à festa ontem.*	(was unable to)
preterite:		
affirmative:	*Ele pôde ir à festa ontem.*	(succeeded in / managed to)
negative:	*Ela não pôde ir à festa ontem.*	(did not succeed in / manage to)

b) *ter / conhecer / saber* in the preterite denote the first-time occurrence of what is indicated in the imperfect.

ter:

imperfect:	*Mariana tinha boas notícias.*	(had)
preterite:	*Mariana teve boas notícias.*	(received / got) (= had for 1st time)

conhecer:

imperfect:	*Roberto conhecia Ricardo.*	(knew)
preterite:	*Roberto conheceu Ricardo.*	(met) (= knew for 1st time)

saber:

imperfect:	*Sabia que você estava doente.*	(knew)
preterite:	*Soube que você estava doente.*	(found out / realized) (= knew for 1st time)

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE

There are two forms of the past perfect indicative (also called the "pluperfect" indicative):
1) simple (used in formal and literary Portuguese)
2) compound (used in both colloquial and formal Portuguese)

1) The simple past perfect indicative of all verbs derives from the 3rd-person plural preterite indicative, with which it shares the same radical.[1, 2]

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falara*	*comera*	*partira*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falaras*	*comeras*	*partiras*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falara*	*comera*	*partira*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*faláramos*	*comêramos*	*partíramos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*faláreis*	*comêreis*	*partíreis*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falaram*	*comeram*	*partiram*

a) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms
(the simple past perfect and the preterite share the same 3rd-pers. plur. form).

-ra	1st- / 3rd-	pers.	sing.
-ras	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-ramos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-reis	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-ram	3rd-	pers.	plur.

b) An acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / u* in the radical.

sair:	*construir:*
saíra	*construíra*
saíras	*construíras*
saíra	*construíra*
saíramos	*construíramos*
saíreis	*construíreis*
saíram	*construíram*

---

[1] The 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. of
(a) regular *-er* verbs and *ser / ir* are marked with a circumflex
(comêramos / comêreis // fôramos / fôreis);
(b) regular *-ar / -ir* verbs and all irregular verbs except *ser / ir* are marked with an acute accent
(faláramos / partíreis // víramos / tivéramos / pudéreis / trouxéramos).

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: The Portuguese simple past perfect indicative tense corresponds to the Spanish past (imperfect) subjunctive tense ending in *-ra,* which is also used in formal and literary Spanish as an alternative past perfect indicative *(Juan comiera [= había comido] antes de llegar).*

c) Even if the 3rd-person plural preterite is irregular, the simple past perfect verb endings are regular.[1]

INFINITIVE	3rd-PERS. PLUR. PRETERITE INDIC.	>	1st-PERS. SING. / PLUR. PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE		
ser / ir	foram	>	*fora*	/	*fôramos*
ver	viram	>	*vira*	/	*víramos*
vir	vieram	>	*viera*	/	*viéramos*
dar	deram	>	*dera*	/	*déramos*
dizer	disseram	>	*dissera*	/	*disséramos*
querer	quiseram	>	*quisera*	/	*quiséramos*
ter	tiveram	>	*tivera*	/	*tivéramos*
estar	estiveram	>	*estivera*	/	*estivéramos*
fazer	fizeram	>	*fizera*	/	*fizéramos*
poder	puderam	>	*pudera*	/	*pudéramos*
pôr	puseram	>	*pusera*	/	*puséramos*
caber	couberam	>	*coubera*	/	*coubéramos*
haver	houveram	>	*houvera*	/	*houvéramos*
saber	souberam	>	*soubera*	/	*soubéramos*
trazer	trouxeram	>	*trouxera*	/	*trouxéramos*

2) The compound past perfect indicative consists of the imperfect indicative of *ter* + masculine singular past participle.[2]

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*tinha*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*tinhas*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*tinha*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tínhamos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tínheis*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tinham*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

---

[1] See p. 172n1 for written accentuation of 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. forms.
[2] If a past participle has two forms, the regular one is used.
haver occasionally replaces *ter*.

3) The past perfect indicative (compound and simple) tense

a) is expressed in English by "had" + past participle:

Ele já tinha jantado / jantara. (had dined)

b) narrates or expresses an action or state of being in the past, which was completed before another one in the past; in effect, the past perfect is the past of the past:

Ele já tinha jantado / jantara quando cheguei. (had dined // arrived)

c) is often used with these adverbs:

já	(already / yet)
ainda não	(still not / not...yet)

Vocês já tinham voltado?
Não, ainda não tínhamos voltado.

4) The compound past perfect indicative tense often replaces the conditional perfect in colloquial Portuguese.

Se tivéssemos querido, não tínhamos voltado. *(= teríamos voltado)*

FUTURE INDICATIVE

1) Regular verbs

a) The radical of a regular future indicative verb (also called the "simple future") is its infinitive; the ending is the corresponding (and abbreviated) present indicative form of *haver (falará < falar + há)*.[1]

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falarei*	*comerei*	*partirei*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falarás*	*comerás*	*partirás*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falará*	*comerá*	*partirá*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falaremos*	*comeremos*	*partiremos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falareis*	*comereis*	*partireis*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falarão*	*comerão*	*partirão*

b) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-ei	1st- pers. sing.
-ás	2nd- pers. sing.
-á	3rd- pers. sing.
-emos	1st- pers. plur.
-eis	2nd- pers. plur.
-ão	3rd- pers. plur.

2) Irregular verbs[2, 3]

The following verbs (and any derived ones) are irregular in the future indicative because they lack the *-ze* of their infinitive radicals; the verb endings, however, are regular.

fazer:		*trazer:*		*dizer:*
farei	=	*trarei*	=	*direi*
farás	=	*trarás*	=	*dirás*
fará	=	*trará*	=	*dirá*
faremos	=	*traremos*	=	*diremos*
fareis	=	*trareis*	=	*direis*
farão	=	*trarão*	=	*dirão*

---

[1] See p. 159: 4h for present tense of *haver*.
[2] Future-tense forms of *pôr* (and derived verbs) are not marked with a circumflex *([su]porei)*.
[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish has more irregular future-tense verbs than Portuguese; many have a [d], which facilitates the phonetic transition from [n] / [l] to [r] and which appeared after the Latin [e] disappeared (Latin *tenēre-habeo* > *ten'r-hei* > Sp. *tendré*).

3) Placement of object pronouns

a) An object pronoun should precede a future-tense verb, if the verb does not begin the sentence.

Eu não o comprarei.
O que lhe trará o seu amigo?

b) In formal Portuguese, an object pronoun often separates the radical of a future-tense verb from its ending, if the verb begins the sentence.[1]

Comê-lo-ão amanhã.[2]	(They / You will eat it tomorrow.)
Falar-lhes-emos logo.	(We will speak to them / you soon.)

4) The future indicative tense expresses

a) a future idea from the standpoint of the present (English "will" / "shall"):

Sairemos logo.	(We will / shall leave soon.)

b) a determination or command:

Não fumarão!	(You will / shall not smoke!)

c) the conclusion (= what will occur if the condition is carried out) in the main clause of a conditional sentence.

The condition is

i) explicit or implicit;
ii) considered likely or possible;
iii) expressed in the subordinate clause by *se* ("if") + future subjunctive:[3]

Se quisermos, sairemos.	(If we want, we will leave.)
Ele irá (se puder).	(He will go [if he can].)

---

[1] A hyphen precedes and follows the object pronoun.
[2] The direct object pronoun and the radical of the verb undergo phonetic changes, seen on p. 93: 3.
[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Portuguese, modern Spanish uses the present indicative after *si* ("if") if the main verb is in the present / future indicative // imperative *(si queremos, saldremos // si quiere, salga).*

5) The future indicative tense is not commonly used in colloquial Portuguese, which uses the following alternative ways of expressing the future.

a) present indicative:

Ele diz que sai.	*(= sairá)*
Vocês saem se puderem?	*(= sairão)*

b) present indicative of *ir* + infinitive (called the "compound future"):[1, 3]

Eu vou sair.	(am going to)
Nós vamos sair.	(are going to)

c) present indicative of *haver de* + infinitive;
this construction also connotes an obligation and is a partial synonym of *ter que* and *ter de;* it is used in formal Portuguese:

Havemos de ir.	(will / shall // have to / must)

6) The future indicative also expresses probability, doubt, or conjecture with respect to the present.

Ele <u>estará</u> em casa?	(Can it be that he is...?)
Ele <u>estará</u> em casa.	(He is probably / may be...)

Another common way to express probability, doubt, or conjecture is to use the present indicative of *dever* + infinitive.[2, 4]

Ele deve estar em casa.

---

[1] Portuguese uses the present indicative of *vir* + infinitive to express "coming to" (= toward the speaker):

Ele vem jantar.	(is coming to)

[2] *será que* also expresses probability / doubt / conjecture; it is used with the following indic. tenses:

Será que ele está em casa.	(is probably)	(present)
Será que ele tem estado em casa.	(has probably been)	(present perfect)
Será que ele estava em casa.	(was probably)	(imperfect)
Será que ele esteve em casa ontem.	(was probably)	(preterite)
Será que ele tinha estado em casa.	(had probably been)	(past perfect)

Notes to Spanish Speakers:

[3] Unlike Spanish, Portuguese does not use the preposition *a* between *ir / vir* and an infinitive; Portuguese does use *a* (or *para*) before the name of a place or destination:

Vamos sair.
Vamos a Portugal.

[4] Unlike Spanish, Portuguese does not use the preposition *de* between *dever* and an infinitive.

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

1) The future perfect indicative consists of the future indicative of *ter* + masculine singular past participle.[1]

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*terei*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*terás*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*terá*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*teremos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tereis*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*terão*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

2) The future perfect indicative tense expresses an action or state of being which will have been completed before that of the main verb (English "will have" + past participle).

Terei posto a mesa antes de ela se sentar.	(will have set...before...)
Ele terá trazido o carro antes de eu chegar.	(will have brought...before...)
Teremos voltado antes de você sair.	(will have returned before...)

3) The future perfect indicative also expresses probability, doubt, or conjecture with respect to the present perfect or the preterite.[2]

Ele terá estado em casa?	(Can it be that he has been...?)
Ele terá estado em casa.	(He has probably / may have been...)

---

[1] If a past participle has two forms, the regular one is used.
haver rarely replaces *ter.*
[2] *será que* + present perfect indic. also expresses probability / doubt / conjecture *(será que ele tem estado em casa);* see p. 177n2.

CONDITIONAL[1]

1) Regular verbs

a) The radical of a regular conditional-tense verb is its infinitive; the ending is the corresponding (and abbreviated) imperfect indicative form of *haver (falaria < falar + havia)*.

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falaria*	*comeria*	*partiria*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falarias*	*comerias*	*partirias*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falaria*	*comeria*	*partiria*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falaríamos*	*comeríamos*	*partiríamos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falaríeis*	*comeríeis*	*partiríeis*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falariam*	*comeriam*	*partiriam*

b) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms (which are the endings of the 2nd- / 3rd-conj. imperfect indicative).

-ia	1st- / 3rd-	pers.	sing.
-ias	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-íamos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-íeis	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-iam	3rd-	pers.	plur.

2) Irregular verbs[2, 3]

The following verbs (and any derived ones) are irregular in the conditional tense because they lack the *-ze* of their infinitive radicals; the verb endings, however, are regular.

fazer:		*trazer:*		*dizer:*
faria	=	*traria*	=	*diria*
farias	=	*trarias*	=	*dirias*
faria	=	*traria*	=	*diria*
faríamos	=	*traríamos*	=	*diríamos*
faríeis	=	*traríeis*	=	*diríeis*
fariam	=	*trariam*	=	*diriam*

---

[1] The authors are of the opinion that, since conditional tenses refer to the future (although with respect to the past), they in fact belong to the indicative and do not constitute a separate verb mood.
[2] Conditional-tense forms of *pôr* (and derived verbs) are not marked with a circumflex *([su]poria)*.
[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish has more irregular conditional-tense verbs than Portuguese; many have a [d], which facilitates the phonetic transition from [n] / [l] to [r] and which appeared after the Latin [e] disappeared (Latin *tenēre-habeba* > *ten'r-hia* > Sp. *tendría*).

3) Placement of object pronouns

a) An object pronoun should precede a conditional-tense verb, if the verb does not begin the sentence.

Eu não o compraria.
O que lhe traria o seu amigo?

b) In formal Portuguese, an object pronoun often separates the radical of a conditional-tense verb from its ending, if the verb begins the sentence.[1]

Comê-lo-iam se pudessem.[2] (They / You would eat it...)
Falar-lhes-íamos. (We would speak to them / you.)

4) The conditional tense expresses

a) a future idea from the standpoint of the past (English "would" / "should"):[3]

Dissemos que sairíamos logo.
(We said that we would / should leave soon.)

b) a wish or a request—often with *gostar* ("would like")
(with *querer,* the imperfect indicative is usually used):

Gostaríamos de ir a Angola. *(= Queríamos ir a Angola.)*
Você gostaria de se levantar? *(= Você queria se levantar?)*

c) the conclusion (= what would occur if the condition were carried out) in the main clause of a conditional sentence.

The condition is

i) explicit or implicit;
ii) considered unlikely or impossible (= contrary to fact);
iii) expressed in the subordinate clause by *se* ("if") + past subjunctive:

Se quiséssemos, sairíamos. (If we wanted, we would leave.)
Ele iria (se pudesse). (He would go [if he could].)

---

[1] A hyphen precedes and follows the object pronoun.
[2] The direct object pronoun and the radical of the verb undergo phonetic changes, seen on p. 93: 3.
[3] To express futurity from the standpoint of the past, Portuguese and English (as well as Spanish) use the conditional tense in indirect discourse and the future tense in direct discourse; compare:

INDIRECT DISCOURSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE
Dissemos que sairíamos.	*Dissemos: "Sairemos."*
(We said that we would leave.)	(We said, "We will leave.")

5) The conditional tense never replaces the imperfect indicative (unlike in English).

Ele ia (se podia).	He used to / would go [if he could].)
Eu comia muita carne.	(I used to / would eat a lot of meat.)

6) The conditional tense is not commonly used in colloquial Portuguese, which uses the following alternative ways of expressing the conditional.

a) imperfect indicative:

Ele disse que saía.	*(= sairia)*
Vocês saíam se pudessem?	*(= sairiam)*

b) imperfect indicative of *ir* + infinitive:[1, 2]

Eu ia sair.	(was going to)
Nós íamos sair.	(were going to)

c) imperfect indicative of *haver de* + infinitive; this construction also connotes an obligation and is a partial synonym of *ter que* and *ter de;* it is used in formal Portuguese:

Havíamos de ir.	(would / should // had to / must)

---

[1] Portuguese uses the imperfect indicative of *vir* + infinitive to express "coming to" (= toward the speaker):

Ele vinha jantar. (was coming to)

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese does not use the preposition *a* between *ir / vir* and an infinitive; Portuguese does use *a* (or *para*) before the name of a place or destination:

Íamos sair.
Íamos a Portugal.

7) The conditional also expresses probability, doubt, or conjecture with respect to the imperfect.

Ele <u>estaria</u> em casa?	(Could it be that he was...?)
Ele <u>estaria</u> em casa.	(He was probably / might be...)

Another common way to express probability, doubt, or conjecture is to use the imperfect indicative of *dever* + infinitive.[1, 2]

Ele devia estar em casa.

---

[1] *será que* + imperfect indic. also expresses probability / doubt / conjecture *(será que ele estava em casa);* see p. 177n2.

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese does not use the preposition *de* between *dever* and an infinitive.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT

1) The conditional perfect consists of the conditional of *ter* + masculine singular past participle.[1]

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*teria*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*terias*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*teria*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*teríamos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*teríeis*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*teriam*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

2) The conditional perfect tense expresses the conclusion (= what would have occurred if the condition had been carried out) in the main clause of a conditional sentence.

The condition is

a) explicit or implicit;
b) considered unlikely or impossible (= contrary to fact);
c) expressed in the subordinate clause by *se* ("if") + past perfect subjunctive:

Se tivéssemos querido, teríamos saído. (If we had wanted, we would have left.)
Ele teria ido (se tivesse podido). (He would have gone [if he could have].)

3) The conditional perfect also expresses probability, doubt, or conjecture with respect to the past perfect.[2]

Ele teria estado em casa? (Could it be that he had been...?)
Ele teria estado em casa. (He had probably / might have been...)

4) The compound past perfect indicative tense often replaces the conditional perfect in colloquial Portuguese.

Se tivéssemos querido, não tínhamos voltado. *(= teríamos voltado)*

---

[1] If a past participle has two forms, the regular one is used.
haver rarely replaces *ter.*
[2] *será que* + past perfect indic. also expresses probability / doubt / conjecture
(será que ele tinha estado em casa); see p. 177n2.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1) Portuguese verbs of the subjunctive mood express what is felt, or what is uncertain, doubtful, unspecific, indefinite, negated, speculative, hypothetical, or conditional; unlike the indicative, the subjunctive does not express actions or states of being that are considered real, factual, or true.

2) English often uses "may" / "might" to express the uncertainty, doubt, and speculation conveyed by the Portuguese subjunctive.[1]

É possível que ele saia.	(may possibly leave)
Era possível que ele saísse.	(might possibly leave)

3) Subjunctive verbs are not usually main verbs; rather, they are used in subordinate clauses.[2]

Eu quero que o gato durma.

a) In "indirect" commands, the main clause is implied, not stated.

Pois, que durma! *(= Quero que durma.)*

b) The subject of a subordinate noun or adjective clause is not usually the subject of the main clause; if the subject of both verbs is the same, an impersonal infinitive is used instead of a clause.

	Eu quero um gato que durma muito.	(= adjective clause)
	Eu quero que o gato durma.	(= noun clause)
vs.	*Eu quero dormir.*	(= infinitive)

c) A subordinate adverb clause and a main clause may share the same subject.

Nós estudaremos logo que (nós) chegarmos.

---

[1] Although the subjunctive has all but disappeared in colloquial English, it is still used in formal English after a singular subject to express what is considered contrary to fact ("[as] if he were a king"), and after a few

(a)	"impersonal" expressions	(It is urgent that he go.)
(b)	verbs	(We prefer / demand / insist / ask / request that he go.)
(c)	conjunctions	(We will stay provided (that) he go.)

[2] Since both the subjunctive and the indicative are used in subordinate clauses, English speakers may find it difficult to choose the correct mood; this choice depends on various factors, which are analyzed on pp. 197–209.

4) The Portuguese subjunctive mood has

a) three simple tenses: present, past, future[1]
b) three compound tenses: present perfect, past perfect, future perfect[1]

5) The most important factor that determines which subjunctive tense to use in the subordinate clause is which indicative tense is used in the main clause.

VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		VERB IN THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE:
present / future indicative // imperative	→	present (or present perfect) subjunctive / future (or future perfect) subjunctive
past indicative / conditional	→	past (or past perfect) subjunctive

6) Noun clauses take the present / past subjunctive;
adjective and adverb clauses take the present / future / past subjunctive.

INDIC. TENSE	MAIN CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	TYPE OF CLAUSE	SUBJ. TENSE
present	*Insisto em*	*que ele viaje.*	noun	present
future	*Insistirei em*	*que ele viaje.*	noun	present
present	*Quero um gato*	*que durma muito.*	adjective	present
future	*Comprarei um gato*	*que durma muito.*	adjective	present
future	*Serão aprovados os alunos*	*que estudarem.*	adjective	future
present	*Trabalho muito*	*para que ele viaje.*	adverb	present
future	*Trabalharei*	*quando ele estiver viajando.*	adverb	future
imperfect	*Queria*	*que ele viajasse.*	noun	past
past perfect	*Tinha querido*	*que ele viajasse.*	noun	past
conditional	*Gostaria*	*que ele viajasse.*	noun	past
imperfect	*Queria um gato*	*que dormisse muito.*	adjective	past
past perfect	*Tinha querido um gato*	*que dormisse muito.*	adjective	past
conditional	*Compraria um gato*	*que dormisse muito.*	adjective	past
imperfect	*Trabalhava muito*	*para que ele viajasse.*	adverb	past
preterite	*Trabalhei por um ano*	*para que ele viajasse.*	adverb	past
past perfect	*Tinha trabalhado muito*	*para que ele viajasse.*	adverb	past

---

[1] See pp. 186–196 for their forms and pp. 197–209 for their specific uses.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

1) Regardless of the radical of the infinitive, the present subjunctive of most verbs derives from the 1st-person singular present indicative, with which it shares the same radical; the endings of most present subjunctive verb forms are regular.

a) Regular verbs

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*fale*	*coma*	*parta*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*fales*	*comas*	*partas*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*fale*	*coma*	*parta*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falemos*	*comamos*	*partamos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*faleis*	*comais*	*partais*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falem*	*comam*	*partam*

i) *-e* = 1st-conj. marker (*-ar* verbs)
-a = 2nd- / 3rd-conj. marker (*-er* / *-ir* verbs)

ii) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms (which are identical to those of the present indicative).

-s	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-mos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-is	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-m	3rd-	pers.	plur.

b) Verbs in which the radical of the regular 1st-person singular present indicative form—and, consequently, of all present subjunctive forms—differs from that of other present indicative forms.

INFINITIVE	REG. 1st-PERS. SING. PRESENT INDIC.	>	1st-PERS. SING. / PLUR. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		
subir	subo	>	*suba*	/	*subamos*
construir	construo	>	*construa*	/	*construamos*
moer	moo[1]	>	*moa*	/	*moamos*
traduzir	traduzo	>	*traduza*	/	*traduzamos*

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *o* of *oo*.

c) Orthography-changing verbs

In order to transcribe correctly the sound of the final consonant in the radical of the infinitive, the following orthographic changes must be made in all present subjunctive forms of the following verb categories.

INFINITIVE ENDING	ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGE			INFINITIVE	>	1st-PERS. SING. / PLUR. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		
-cer	ce	>	*ça*	conhecer	>	*conheça*	/	*conheçamos*
-ger	ge	>	*ja*	proteger	>	*proteja*	/	*protejamos*
-gir	gi	>	*ja*	dirigir	>	*dirija*	/	*dirijamos*
-guer	gue	>	*ga*	erguer	>	*erga*	/	*ergamos*
-guir[1]	gui	>	*ga*	distinguir	>	*distinga*	/	*distingamos*
-çar	ça	>	*ce*	dançar	>	*dance*	/	*dancemos*
-car	ca	>	*que*	tocar	>	*toque*	/	*toquemos*
-gar	ga	>	*gue*	chegar	>	*chegue*	/	*cheguemos*

[1] The radical of *seguir* and its derived verbs changes from [e] to [i] (see p. 188).

d) Radical-changing verbs

The radical of the 1st-person singular present indicative form—and, consequently, of present subjunctive forms (except as noted)—differs from that of the infinitive.

INFINITIVE ENDING	VOWEL CHANGE	INFINITIVE	1st-PERS. SING. PRES. INDIC.	>	1st-PERS. SING. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	/	PLUR. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
-ir	[o] > [u]	dormir	durmo	>	*durma*	/	*durmamos*
-ir	[e] > [i]	seguir	sigo	>	*siga*	/	*sigamos*
-ear[1, 2]	[e] > [e[i]]	passear	passeio	>	*passeie*	/	*passeemos*[1]
-air		sair	saio	>	*saia*	/	*saiamos*
		cair	caio	>	*caia*	/	*caiamos*
		(sor)rir	(sor)rio	>	*(sor)ria*	/	*(sor)riamos*
		requerer	requeiro	>	*requeira*	/	*requeiramos*
		crer	creio	>	*creia*	/	*creiamos*
		ler	leio	>	*leia*	/	*leiamos*
		ver	vejo	>	*veja*	/	*vejamos*
		caber	caibo	>	*caiba*	/	*caibamos*
		poder	posso	>	*possa*	/	*possamos*
		perder	perco	>	*perca*	/	*percamos*
		pedir	peço	>	*peça*	/	*peçamos*
		medir	meço	>	*meça*	/	*meçamos*
		ouvir	ouço	>	*ouça*[3]	/	*ouçamos*[3]
		fazer	faço	>	*faça*	/	*façamos*
		trazer	trago	>	*traga*	/	*tragamos*
		dizer	digo	>	*diga*	/	*digamos*
		valer	valho	>	*valha*	/	*valhamos*
		ter	tenho	>	*tenha*	/	*tenhamos*
		vir	venho	>	*venha*	/	*venhamos*
		pôr	ponho	>	*ponha*	/	*ponhamos*

---

[1] This change takes place in all forms except the 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. of verbs ending in *-ear* and also of five verbs ending in *-iar: ansiar / incendiar / odiar / (re)mediar;* all other verbs ending in *-iar* are regular:

elogiar:	elogio	>	*elogie*	/	*elogiemos*
iniciar:	inicio	>	*inicie*	/	*iniciemos*

[2] The unstressed *e* in the radical of the infinitive and the 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. *(passeemos / passeeis)* is often pronounced [i].

[3] EP: Also *oiça / oiçamos* (see p. 4n4 for details).

2) Irregular verbs

a) The following verbs are irregular in the present subjunctive because their radicals differ from those of their respective 1st-person singular present indicative forms; their endings, however, are regular.

INFINITIVE	1st-PERS. SING.	/	PLUR.
querer	*queira*	/	*queiramos*
saber	*saiba*	/	*saibamos*
haver	*haja*	/	*hajamos*
ser	*seja*	/	*sejamos*
estar	*esteja*	/	*estejamos*

b) *ir:*

i) the 1st- / 3rd-persons plural coincide with those of the present indicative;
ii) *á* is found in the singular forms;
iii) except for the vestigial *-d-* in the 2nd-person plural, the endings correspond phonetically to those of regular 2nd- / 3rd-conjugation present subjunctive verbs:

vá	*vamos*
vás	*vades*
vá	*vão*

c) *dar:*

i) *ê* is found in the singular forms; *ee,* in the 3rd-person plural;[1]
ii) the endings correspond phonetically to those of regular 1st-conjugation present subjunctive verbs:

dê	*demos*[2]
dês	*deis*
dê	*deem*[1]

3) The present subjunctive tense refers to the present or the future.
It corresponds to the English present tense or to "may" / "will" + verb.

Espero que ele fique.	(stays // may / will stay)
Ela não compra nada que custe muito.	(costs / may cost)
Diz que vai ficar até que cheguemos.	(arrive)

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*
[2] EP: Also *dêmos.*

PRESENT PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

1) The present perfect subjunctive consists of the present subjunctive of *ter* (or the less frequently used *haver*) + masculine singular past participle.

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*tenha*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*tenhas*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*tenha*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tenhamos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tenhais*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tenham*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

2) The present perfect subjunctive tense

a) corresponds to the English past tense or to "has" / "have" + past participle;

b) is used in the subordinate (often noun) clause if

i) the verb in the main clause is in the present / future indicative, or the imperative;
ii) the subordinate clause refers to the present perfect or the past.[1]

3) The following contrastive sentences exemplify the difference between the present perfect subjunctive and the present subjunctive (which is used if the subordinate clause refers to the present or the future).

PRESENT PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
Espero que ele <u>tenha ficado</u>.	*Espero que ele <u>fique</u>.*
Será possível que ele <u>tenha ficado</u>?	*Será possível que ele <u>fique</u>?*
Não creia que ele <u>tenha ficado</u>!	*Não creia que ele <u>fique</u>!*
([has] stayed / has been staying)	(stays / is staying // may / will stay // may / will be staying)

---

[1] If the main verb is in the present / future indicative, the past subjunctive is not normally used to express the past, except when the main verb expresses emotion; compare:
<u>Sinto</u> que ele não <u>tenha ficado</u>. (I <u>am</u> <u>sorry</u> that he <u>has</u> not stayed / <u>has</u> not been staying.)
vs.
<u>Sinto</u> que ele não <u>ficasse</u>. (I <u>am</u> <u>sorry</u> that he <u>did</u> not stay.)

PAST SUBJUNCTIVE

1) The past (imperfect) subjunctive of all verbs derives from the 3rd-person plural preterite indicative, with which it shares the same radical.[1, 2]

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falasse*	*comesse*	*partisse*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falasses*	*comesses*	*partisses*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falasse*	*comesse*	*partisse*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falássemos*	*comêssemos*	*partíssemos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falásseis*	*comêsseis*	*partísseis*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falassem*	*comessem*	*partissem*

a) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-sse	1st- / 3rd-	pers.	sing.
-sses	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-ssemos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-sseis	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-ssem	3rd-	pers.	plur.

b) An acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / u* in the radical.

sair:	*construir:*
saísse	*construísse*
saísses	*construísses*
saísse	*construísse*
saíssemos	*construíssemos*
saísseis	*construísseis*
saíssem	*construíssem*

---

[1] The 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. of
(a) regular *-er* verbs and *ser / ir* are marked with a circumflex
(comêssemos / comêsseis // fôssemos / fôsseis);
(b) regular *-ar / -ir* verbs and all irregular verbs except *ser / ir* are marked with an acute accent
(falássemos / partísseis // víssemos / tivéssemos / pudésseis / trouxéssemos).

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese has only form of the past subjunctive, which ends in *-sse;* the Portuguese tense that ends in *-ra* is used only as the simple past perfect indicative, not as an alternative past subjunctive (see pp. 172–174 for details).

c) Even if the 3rd-person plural preterite is irregular, the past subjunctive verb endings are regular.[1]

INFINITIVE	3rd-PERS. PLUR. PRETERITE INDIC.	>	1st-PERS. SING. PAST SUBJUNCTIVE	/	PLUR.
ser / ir	foram	>	*fosse*	/	*fôssemos*
ver	viram	>	*visse*	/	*víssemos*
vir	vieram	>	*viesse*	/	*viéssemos*
dar	deram	>	*desse*	/	*déssemos*
dizer	disseram	>	*dissesse*	/	*disséssemos*
querer	quiseram	>	*quisesse*	/	*quiséssemos*
ter	tiveram	>	*tivesse*	/	*tivéssemos*
estar	estiveram	>	*estivesse*	/	*estivéssemos*
fazer	fizeram	>	*fizesse*	/	*fizéssemos*
poder	puderam	>	*pudesse*	/	*pudéssemos*
pôr	puseram	>	*pusesse*	/	*puséssemos*
caber	couberam	>	*coubesse*	/	*coubéssemos*
haver	houveram	>	*houvesse*	/	*houvéssemos*
saber	souberam	>	*soubesse*	/	*soubéssemos*
trazer	trouxeram	>	*trouxesse*	/	*trouxéssemos*

2) The past subjunctive tense refers to the past or the conditional.
It corresponds to the English past tense or to "might" / "would" + verb.

Esperava que ele <u>ficasse</u>.	(stayed // might / would stay)
Ela não comprava nada que <u>custasse</u> muito.	(cost / might cost)
Disse que ia ficar até que <u>chegássemos</u>.	(arrived)
Estudaríamos se <u>quiséssemos</u>.	(wanted)

---

[1] See p. 191n1 for written accentuation of 1st- / 2nd-pers. plur. forms.

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

1) The past perfect subjunctive (also called the "pluperfect" subjunctive) consists of the past subjunctive of *ter* (or the less frequently used *haver*) + masculine singular past participle.

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*tivesse*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*tivesses*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*tivesse*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tivéssemos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tivésseis*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tivessem*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

2) The past perfect subjunctive tense

a) corresponds to English "had" / "would have" + past participle;

b) is used in the subordinate clause if

i) the verb in the main clause is in the past indicative, the conditional, or the conditional perfect;
ii) the subordinate clause refers to the past perfect or the conditional perfect.

3) The following contrastive sentences exemplify the difference between the past perfect subjunctive and the past subjunctive (which is used if the subordinate clause refers to the past or the conditional).

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Esperava que ele <u>tivesse ficado</u>.
Seria possível que ele <u>tivesse ficado</u>?
(had stayed / had been staying /
would have stayed /
would have been staying)
Teríamos estudado se <u>tivéssemos</u> <u>querido</u>.
(had wanted)

PAST SUBJUNCTIVE

Esperava que ele <u>ficasse</u>.
Seria possível que ele <u>ficasse</u>?
(stayed / was staying //
might / would stay //
might / would be staying)
Estudaríamos se <u>quiséssemos</u>.
(wanted)

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

1) The future subjunctive of all verbs derives from the 3rd-person plural preterite indicative, with which it shares the same radical.[1]

			falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*falar*	*comer*	*partir*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*falares*	*comeres*	*partires*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*falar*	*comer*	*partir*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falarmos*	*comermos*	*partirmos*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falardes*	*comerdes*	*partirdes*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*falarem*	*comerem*	*partirem*

a) The following are the markers of their corresponding forms.

-r	1st- / 3rd-	pers.	sing.
-res	2nd-	pers.	sing.
-rmos	1st-	pers.	plur.
-rdes	2nd-	pers.	plur.
-rem	3rd-	pers.	plur.

b) An acute accent marks a stressed *i* preceded by *a / u* in the radical.

sair:	*construir:*
sair	*construir*
saíres	*construíres*
sair	*construir*
sairmos	*construirmos*
sairdes	*construirdes*
saírem	*construírem*

---

[1] The forms of a future subjunctive verb derived from a regular preterite indicative verb coincide with those of its corresponding personal infinitive.

c) Even if the 3rd-person plural preterite is irregular, the future subjunctive verb endings are regular.

INFINITIVE	3rd-PERS. PLUR. PRETERITE INDIC.	>	1st-PERS. SING. / PLUR. FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE		
ser / ir	foram	>	*for*	/	*formos*
ver	viram	>	*vir*[1]	/	*virmos*
vir[1]	vieram	>	*vier*	/	*viermos*
dar	deram	>	*der*	/	*dermos*
dizer	disseram	>	*disser*	/	*dissermos*
querer	quiseram	>	*quiser*	/	*quisermos*
ter	tiveram	>	*tiver*	/	*tivermos*
estar	estiveram	>	*estiver*	/	*estivermos*
fazer	fizeram	>	*fizer*	/	*fizermos*
poder	puderam	>	*puder*	/	*pudermos*
pôr	puseram	>	*puser*	/	*pusermos*
caber	couberam	>	*couber*	/	*coubermos*
haver	houveram	>	*houver*	/	*houvermos*
saber	souberam	>	*souber*	/	*soubermos*
trazer	trouxeram	>	*trouxer*	/	*trouxermos*

2) The future subjunctive tense expresses an action or state of being occurring before or at the same time as the main verb.[2]
It corresponds to the English present tense or to "may" / "will" + verb
(as does the present subjunctive).

O aluno que <u>estudar</u>, irá ao cinema.	(studies / will study)
Estudem sempre que <u>puderem</u>!	(can // are / may be / will be able)
Estudaremos se <u>quisermos</u>.[3]	(want)

---

[1] Besides being an infinitive, *vir* is also the future subjunctive of *ver!*

Notes to Spanish Speakers:
[2] The corresponding Spanish future subjunctive tense is still used in very formal speech and in legalese, as well as in the idiomatic expressions "sea lo que fuere" and "digan lo que dijeren."
[3] Unlike Portuguese, modern Spanish uses the present indicative after *si* ("if") if the main verb is in the present / future indicative // imperative; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Estudaremos se <u>quisermos</u>.	*Estudiaremos si <u>queremos</u>.*
Traga o carro se <u>puder</u>!	*Traiga el carro si <u>puede</u>!*

FUTURE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

1) The future perfect subjunctive consists of the future subjunctive of *ter* (or the less frequently used *haver*) + masculine singular past participle.

					(1st CONJ.) *falar*	(2nd CONJ.) *comer*	(3rd CONJ.) *partir*
1st-	PERS.	SING.	*tiver*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	SING.	*tiveres*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	SING.	*tiver*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
1st-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tivermos*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
2nd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tiverdes*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*
3rd-	PERS.	PLUR.	*tiverem*	+	*falado*	*comido*	*partido*

2) The future perfect subjunctive tense

a) corresponds to English "has" / "(will) have" + past participle;

b) is used in the subordinate clause if

i) the verb in the main clause is in the future indicative or the imperative;
ii) the subordinate clause refers to the future perfect by expressing an action or state of being which will have been completed before that of the main verb.

3) The following contrastive sentences exemplify the difference between the future perfect subjunctive and the future subjunctive (which is used if the subordinate clause expresses an action or state of being occurring before or at the same time as the main verb).

FUTURE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE (implies "in the future")
O aluno que <u>tiver</u> <u>estudado</u>, irá ao cinema. (has / will have studied [= finished studying])	*O aluno que <u>estudar</u>, irá ao cinema.* (studies / will study)
Voltem quando <u>tiverem</u> <u>acabado</u> o trabalho! (when [= after] you have finished)	*Voltem quando <u>acabarem</u> o trabalho!* (when you finish)

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

1) Unlike an indicative verb, a subjunctive verb is not usually the main verb of a sentence; rather, it is used in a subordinate clause.

2) There are three categories of subordinate clauses, which are determined by their function within the sentence: noun, adjective, and adverb.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN NOUN CLAUSES

1) A noun clause functions within the sentence as a noun.

The following sentences exemplify how a simple noun, an infinitive, and a noun clause function in the same way: as direct objects of the verb *quer.*

Ana quer <u>o livro</u>.	(the book)
Ana quer <u>comprar o livro</u>.	(to buy the book)
Ana quer <u>que eu compre o livro</u>.	(that I buy / me to buy the book)

2) A noun clause is used as

a) the subject of the main verb in "impersonal" expressions
(in English, the true subject of the main verb is "it"; see p. 220: 2 for details):

É preciso <u>que eu compre o livro</u>.

b) the object (direct or prepositional) of the main verb:

Ana quer <u>que eu compre o livro</u>.
Ana insiste em <u>que eu compre o livro</u>.

3) Noun clauses are normally introduced by *que.*

4) Provided that the subject of the noun clause is not the subject of the main clause, either the indicative or the subjunctive may be used in the noun clause.

5) If the verb in the main clause expresses knowledge, belief, or certainty, the indicative is used in the noun clause to express what is considered credible or true.

Pedro <u>sabe</u> que ficarei.
Pedro <u>sabia</u> que ficaria.
Pedro <u>crê</u> / <u>acredita</u> / <u>acha</u> / <u>pensa</u> que vou ficar.
Pedro <u>estava certo</u> (de) que ia ficar.

6) If the verb in the main clause expresses emotion, will, doubt, or denial, the present or past subjunctive is used in the noun clause to express what is felt, wanted, doubted, or denied.

7) A subjunctive noun clause may take either the present or past subjunctive; which tense to use depends on the tense of the verb in the main clause.

VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:
present / future indicative // imperative	→	present
past indicative / conditional	→	past

8) The following sentences exemplify how the subjunctive is used in noun clauses.[1, 2]

hope:	*Pedro (não) espera que eu fique.*	
joy:	*Pedro (não) está contente de que eu fique.*	*(= está contente de eu ficar)*
sadness:	*Pedro (não) está triste de que eu fique.*	*(= está triste de eu ficar)*
regret:	*Pedro (não) lamentava que eu ficasse.*	*(= lamentava eu ficar)*
sorrow:	*Pedro (não) sentia que eu ficasse.*	
fear / dread:	*Pedro (não) teme / tem medo (de) que eu fique.*	
surprise:	*(A Pedro) (não) lhe surpreende que eu fique.*	
desire / wish:	*Pedro (não) deseja / quer que eu fique.*	
approval:	*Pedro (não) gosta (de) que eu fique.*	
preference:	*Pedro (não) prefere que eu fique.*	
need:	*Pedro (não) precisava que eu ficasse.*	
demand:	*Pedro (não) exigia que eu ficasse.*	*(= me exigia ficar)*
command / order:	*Pedro (não) mandava que eu ficasse.*	*(= me mandava ficar)*
	Pedro (não) me diz que fique.	*(= diz para eu ficar)*
insistence:	*Pedro (não) insiste em que eu fique.*	*(= insiste em eu ficar)*
request:	*Pedro (não) me pede que fique.*	*(= pede para eu ficar)*
advice:	*Pedro (não) recomendará que eu fique.*	*(= me recomendará [a] ficar)*
permission:	*Pedro (não) permite / deixa que eu fique.*	*(= me permite / deixa ficar)*
prohibition:	*Pedro (não) proíbe que eu fique.*	*(= me proíbe ficar)*
hindrance:	*Pedro (não) impede que eu fique.*	*(= me impede de ficar)*
avoidance:	*Pedro (não) evitaria que eu ficasse.*	
denial:	*Pedro negava que eu ficasse.*	
doubt:	*Pedro duvidava que eu ficasse.*	
disbelief:	*Pedro não crê / acredita / acha / pensa que eu fique.*[3]	
uncertainty:	*Pedro não está certo (de) que eu fique.*[3]	

---

[1] See pp. 272–274 for a more complete list of verbs that require the subjunctive.

[2] A personal infinitive often replaces a subjunctive noun clause; these alternative constructions are indicated in parentheses.

[3] The indicative is occasionally used; it conveys less disbelief / uncertainty than the subjunctive. Affirmative forms of *crer / acreditar / achar / pensar / estar certo* normally take the indicative since they express what is considered credible / true.

9) The subjunctive is also used in the noun clause if the verb in the main clause is one of the following:[1]

a) a 3rd-person singular (impersonal) form of *bastar / convir / poder ser + que // não parecer + que:*[2]

Basta que fiquemos.	*(= Basta ficarmos.)*
Convém que fiquemos.	*(= Convém ficarmos.)*
Podia ser que ficássemos.	
Não parecia que ficássemos.	

b) a 3rd-person singular (impersonal) form of *ser / poder ser / parecer,* followed by an adjective / noun that expresses anything except knowledge, belief, or certainty:[3]

Não é certo que fiquemos.	*(= Não é certo ficarmos.)*
É importante que fiquemos.	*(= É importante ficarmos.)*
Será bom que fiquemos.	*(= Será bom ficarmos.)*
Seria pior que não ficássemos.	*(= Seria pior não ficarmos.)*
Era (uma) pena que não ficássemos!	*(= Era [uma] pena não ficarmos!)*
Pode ser bom que fiquemos.	*(= Pode ser bom ficarmos.)*
Parecia uma desgraça que não ficássemos.	*(= Parecia uma desgraça não ficarmos.)*

c) any (personal) form of *crer / achar / considerar,* followed by an adjective / noun that expresses anything except knowledge, belief, or certainty:[3]

Creio necessário que fiquemos.	*(= Creio necessário ficarmos.)*
Acho lamentável que não fiquemos!	*(= Acho lamentável não ficarmos!)*
Achavam uma infelicidade que não ficássemos.	*(= Achavam uma infelicidade não ficarmos.)*
Consideravam interessante que ficássemos.	*(= Consideravam interessante ficarmos.)*
Considero um horror que não fiquemos!	*(= Considero um horror não ficarmos!)*

---

[1] A personal infinitive often replaces a subjunctive noun clause; these alternative constructions are indicated in parentheses.
[2] The indicative is used with affirmative *parecer + que* since it expresses what is considered likely.
[3] The indicative is used if the adjective / noun expresses knowledge / belief / certainty.

10) The following exclamations and adverbs (rather than a main clause) introduce the subjunctive.

a) *tomara que / oxalá (que)*[1, 2]

i) mean "hopefully" / "would that" / "God willing"
and are similar in meaning to *esperar que;*
ii) take either the present or past subjunctive:

	SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:		WHEN THE HOPE / WISH:
aa)	present	→	may possibly come true
bb)	past	→	probably will not come true

aa)	*Tomara que chova!*	(Hopefully it will rain! [it just may])
bb)	*Oxalá (que) chovesse!*	(Would that it would rain! [it probably won't])

b) *talvez / quiçá*[3]

i) mean "perhaps" / "maybe"
and are similar in meaning to *ser possível / provável que;*
ii) take either the present or past subjunctive, when they precede the verb:[4, 5]

	SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:		IF THE SENTENCE REFERS TO THE:
aa)	present	→	present / future
bb)	past	→	past

aa)	*Talvez chova hoje.*	(Perhaps it will rain today.)
bb)	*Quiçá chovesse ontem.*	(Maybe it rained yesterday.)

---

[1] *tomara que* is used more in BP than in EP.
[2] *oxalá* (= Sp. *ojalá*) derives from Arabic *inshallah* ("God willing!").
[3] *quiçá* is used more in formal and literary than in colloquial Portuguese.
[4] When *talvez / quiçá* follow the verb, they take the indicative:
Choverá amanhã, talvez.
Choveu ontem, quiçá.
[5] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike their Spanish cognates, *talvez / quiçá* always take the subjunctive when they precede the verb, even if they refer to something likely to occur.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

1) An adjective clause functions within the sentence as an adjective.

The following sentences exemplify how a simple adjective and an adjective clause function in the same way: they both modify the noun *livro* by stating "what kind of."

Quero ler um livro interessante.	(interesting)
Quero ler um livro que me interesse.	(that interests me)

2) Adjective clauses are normally introduced by *que.*

3) Either the indicative or the subjunctive may be used in an adjective clause; the choice of the correct mood depends on whether the noun or pronoun is definite, indefinite, or nonexistent.

4) An indicative adjective clause describes a noun or pronoun that is definite, specific, and objectively real.

Compre aquele carro que custa pouco!	(that car)

5) A subjunctive adjective clause describes

a) an indefinite, unspecific noun or pronoun that exists only in the imagination or mind of the subject; it is not objectively real:

Compre um carro que custe pouco!	(a car)

b) a nonexistent, negative noun or pronoun:

Não compre nenhum carro que custe muito!	(not...any / no car)

6) A subjunctive adjective clause may modify the following indefinite or negative words.

INDEFINITE / NEGATIVE WORD	ENGLISH
um / algum	a(n) / any / some
nenhum	no(ne) / not...any
alguém / alguma pessoa	anyone / someone
ninguém / nenhuma pessoa	no one / not...anyone
algo / alguma coisa	anything / something
nada / nenhuma coisa	nothing / not...anything
qualquer	any...at all / what(so)ever
quem quer	who(m)ever
todo	all / each / every
tudo	all / everything

7) A subjunctive adjective clause may take either the present, future, or past subjunctive; which tense to use depends on the tense of the verb in the main clause.

VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJ. TENSE:		IF THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE REFERS TO THE:
present / future indicative // imperative	→	present	→	present
present / future indicative // imperative	→	future	→	future
past indicative / conditional	→	past	→	past / conditional

8) Since adjective clauses may take either a subjunctive or an indicative verb, the following contrastive sentences might help an English speaker to choose the correct mood.

SUBJUNCTIVE (indefinite / negative antecedent)	INDICATIVE (definite antecedent)
Não tem nenhum carro que seja econômico?	*Não tem aquele carro que é econômico?*
Compraria um carro que fosse econômico.	*Comprei o único carro que era econômico.*
Não compre nada que custe muito!	*Não compre esse carro que custa muito!*
Não conheço ninguém que fale chinês.	*Não conheço o dentista que fala chinês.*
Você conhecia alguém que falasse chinês?	*Você conhecia o dentista que falava chinês?*
Comprarei qualquer camisa que seja barata.	*Comprarei esta camisa que é barata.*
Queria comprar uma camisa que fosse barata.	*Comprei a única camisa que era barata.*
Queremos ler um livro que seja interessante.	*Queremos ler esse livro que é interessante.*
Coma tudo que não tenha gordura!	*Coma essa salada que não tem gordura!*
Quem quer que esteja na turma, deve estudar. (is / may be)	*O aluno que está na turma, deve estudar.* ([routinely] is)
Serão aprovados os alunos que estudarem. ([will] study)	*São aprovados os alunos que estudam.* ([routinely] study)

SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADVERB CLAUSES

1) An adverb clause functions within the sentence as an adverb.

The following sentences exemplify how a simple adverb and an adverb clause function in the same way: they both modify the verb group *pode partir* by stating "when."

Você pode partir <u>*amanhã*</u>.	(tomorrow)
Você pode partir <u>*quando quiser*</u>.	(when[ever] you want)

2) Indicative and subjunctive adverb clauses are introduced by a subordinating conjunction, which links the subordinate adverb clause with the main clause (see the following pages).

3) Either the indicative or the subjunctive may be used in many (but not all) adverb clauses; the choice of the correct mood depends on the nature of the verb in the main clause.

4) An indicative adverb clause expresses

a) an action, state of being, or condition that is habitually or routinely fulfilled;
b) an action or state of being that is considered real, certain, or factual (and therefore implies or states "indeed").

5) A subjunctive adverb clause expresses an action or state of being that has not been completed but is merely a plan, speculation, hypothesis, or condition.

6) Since many adverb clauses may take either a subjunctive or an indicative verb, the contrastive sentences in the following pages might help an English speaker to choose the correct mood.[1]

---

[1] A personal infinitive often replaces an adverb clause; these alternative constructions are indicated in parentheses.

7) Either the present or past subjunctive or the indicative may be used after the following conjunctions.

CONJUNCTION(S)	MOOD	ENGLISH	
de forma / jeito / maneira / modo que	subjunctive	so that	(= purpose)
	indicative	so	(= effect / result)
desde que	subjunctive	provided (that)	
	indicative	since	(= because / time)
até que	subjunctive	until	
até quando[1]	indicative	until	

VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:
present / future indicative // imperative	→	present
past indicative / conditional	→	past

The indicative is used when the main verb expresses an action or state of being that is routinely fulfilled or is considered real, certain, or factual; compare:

SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE (implies "routinely" / "indeed")
Fale bem, de modo que <u>ouçamos</u> tudo! *(= de modo a ouvirmos)* (so that we [may] hear] (= purpose of speaking well)	*Você fala bem, de modo que <u>ouvimos</u> tudo.* *(= de modo a ouvirmos)* (so we [do] hear) (= effect / result of speaking well)
Ficarei desde que ela <u>chegue</u> cedo. (provided that she <u>arrive</u>)[2]	*Fico desde que ela <u>chega</u> cedo.* (since she arrives // will / does arrive)
Ficaria desde que ela <u>chegasse</u> cedo. (provided that she arrived)	*Fiquei desde que ela <u>chegou</u> cedo.* (since she arrived / did arrive)
Você ficará até que eu <u>chegue</u>? *(= até eu chegar)* (until I arrive)	*Você sempre fica até quando eu <u>chego</u>.* *(= até eu chegar)* (until I [do] arrive)
Você ficaria até que eu <u>chegasse</u>? *(= até eu chegar)* (until I arrived)	*Você sempre ficava até quando eu <u>chegava</u>.* *(= até eu chegar)* (until I arrived / used to arrive)

---

[1] *até quando* also takes the future subjunctive.
[2] Formal English uses the subjunctive after a singular subject to express a provision referring to the present or the future.

8) Either the present or past subjunctive may be used after the following conjunctions (the indicative is never used).

CONJUNCTION(S)	ENGLISH
antes que	before
a menos que / a não ser que	unless
por...que (*mais / menos,* etc.)	no matter how... (much / little, etc.)
sem que	without
a fim de que / para que	in order for / so that
apesar de que	despite / in spite of / even though
embora[1] */ ainda que / mesmo que*	although / even though / even if
nem que	(not) even though / even if
contanto que / sempre que[2]	provided (that)
no caso (de) que[3]	in case

VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:
present / future indicative // imperative	→	present
past indicative / conditional	→	past

SUBJUNCTIVE

Fui antes que ele <u>chegasse</u>.	(before he arrived)
(= antes dele chegar)	
Não vou a menos que você me <u>acompanhe</u>.	(unless you accompany me)
Por mais que você <u>estude</u>, não vai saber tudo.	(no matter how much you study)
Saí sem que ninguém <u>soubesse</u>.	(without anyone knowing)
(= sem ninguém saber)	
Trabalham para que <u>possamos</u> estudar.	(so that we can study)
(= para podermos estudar)	
Apesar de que vocês <u>ficassem</u>, iríamos.	(even though you [might] stay)
(= apesar de vocês ficarem)	
Estude, embora não <u>queira</u>!	(even if you do / may not want to)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Sp. *aunque,* Port. *embora* always takes the subjunctive, even if it refers to a reality.

[2] *sempre que* + present subjunctive = "provided (that)"
sempre que + future subjunctive = "when(ever)" (see p. 206n2 for examples)

[3] *no caso (de) que* normally takes the present subjunctive; *caso* takes the future subjunctive:
Vou amanhã, no caso (de) que você <u>queira</u> me acompanhar. *(= no caso de você querer)*
Vou amanhã, caso você <u>quiser</u> me acompanhar. *(= no caso de você querer)*

9) Either the future or past subjunctive or the indicative may be used after the following conjunctions.

CONJUNCTION(S)	MOOD	ENGLISH
depois que[1]	subjunctive / indicative	after
assim que[1] / *logo que*[1]	subjunctive / indicative	as soon as
enquanto	subjunctive / indicative	while / as long as
quanto	subjunctive	however much
	indicative	all / everything that
como	subjunctive	however
	indicative	since / as / the way that
onde	subjunctive / indicative	where(ever)
quando	subjunctive / indicative	when(ever)
sempre que[2]	subjunctive / indicative	when(ever) // each / every time that

VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:
present / future indicative // imperative	→	future
past indicative / conditional	→	past

The indicative is used when the main verb expresses an action or state of being that is routinely fulfilled; compare:

SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE (implies "routinely")
Irei depois que eles <u>voltarem</u>. *(= depois deles voltarem)* (after they return)	*Vou depois que eles <u>voltam</u>.* *(= depois deles voltarem)* (after they [do] return)
Eu estudaria enquanto ele <u>jantasse</u>. (while he dined)	*Eu estudava enquanto ele <u>jantava</u>.* (while he dined / used to dine)
Estudarei quanto <u>puder</u>. (however much I can)	*Estudo quanto <u>posso</u>.* (all that I can)
Teresa, estude como <u>puder</u>! (however you can)	*Como Teresa <u>pode</u>, estuda.* (since Teresa can)

---

[1] The present subjunctive may also be used after these conjunctions.

[2] *sempre que* + indicative / future subjunctive = "when(ever)"
sempre que + present subjunctive = "provided (that)"

Ela estuda sempre que <u>pode</u>.	(when[ever] she can)
Estude sempre que <u>puder</u>!	(when[ever] you can)
Estude, sempre que <u>possa</u>!	(provided [that] you can)

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

1) Either the future, past, or past perfect subjunctive may be used in the subordinate adverb clause of a conditional sentence after the conjunction *se* ("if").

	VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJ. TENSE:		IF THE ADVERB CLAUSE EXPRESSES A:
a)	present / future indicative // imperative	→	future[1]	→	condition in the <u>future</u>, considered likely or possible
b)	conditional[2a]	→	past	→	condition in the <u>present</u>, considered contrary to fact (= unlikely or impossible)
c)	conditional perfect[2b]	→	past perfect	→	condition in the <u>past</u>, considered contrary to fact

a) *Traga o carro se <u>puder</u>!*[1]
(if you can)

Ele trará o carro se <u>puder</u>.[1]
(if he can)

b) *Ele traria*[2a] *o carro se <u>pudesse</u>.*
(if he could / <u>were</u> able)[3]

c) *Ele teria trazido*[2b] *o carro se <u>tivesse</u> <u>podido</u>.*
(if he could have / had been able)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Portuguese, modern Spanish uses the present indicative after *si* ("if") if the main verb is in the present / future indicative // imperative *(si puede).*

[2] In colloquial Portuguese:
(a) the imperfect indicative *(trazia)* often replaces the conditional *(traria);*
(b) the compound past perfect indicative *(tinha trazido)* often replaces the conditional perfect *(teria trazido).*

[3] Formal English uses the subjunctive "were" after a singular subject to express a condition considered contrary to fact.

2) The indicative may also be used in the subordinate adverb clause of a conditional sentence after the conjunction *se* ("if" / "whether").

A clause with *se* + indicative expresses

a) one likely alternative; the other alternative is either implied or expressed, in which case it is introduced by the conjunction *ou* ("or"):

Não sabe se vai trazer a moto (ou não).
Não sabia se ia trazer a moto ou deixá-la na garagem.
Não saberá até amanhã se trará a moto ou a bicicleta.

b) a condition that is routinely / indeed / really fulfilled (*quando* often replaces *se* in the indicative); compare:

SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE (implies "routinely" / "indeed")	
Ele trará o carro se puder. (if he can)	*Ele traz o carro se pode.* (if he can)	*(= quando pode)* (= when[ever])
Ele traria o carro se pudesse. (if he could / were able)	*Ele trazia o carro se podia.* (if he could / was able)	*(= quando podia)* (= when[ever])

3) Either the past or past perfect subjunctive may be used after *como se* ("as if").

	SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:		EXPRESSES WHAT IS NOT REAL WITH RESPECT TO THE:		SUBJUNCTIVE VERB REFERS TO:
a)	past	→	past	→	the same time as that of the main verb, which is in either the present or past indicative
b)	past perfect	→	past perfect	→	a time before that of the main verb, which is in either the present or past indicative

a) *Paula fala / falava português como se fosse portuguesa.*
(as if she were Portuguese) (but she is / was not)

b) *Paula fala / falava português como se tivesse nascido em Portugal.*
(as if she had been born in Portugal) (but she had not been)

SUBJUNCTIVE IN COMMON EXPRESSIONS

The following expressions always take the subjunctive.

1) *(pelo) que...saber*[1]

a) means "as far as...know(s) / knew";
b) is fully conjugated;
c) is used in either the present or past subjunctive:

	VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE:		SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE:
i)	present / future / preterite indic.	→	present
ii)	imperfect indic. / conditional	→	past

	(Pelo) que...muito.	As far as...a lot.
i)	*eu <u>saiba</u>, chove*	I know, it rains
i)	*eu <u>saiba</u>, choverá*	I know, it will rain / probably rains
i)	*eu <u>saiba</u>, choveu*	I know, it rained
ii)	*eu <u>soubesse</u>, chovia*	I knew, it rained / used to rain
ii)	*eu <u>soubesse</u>, choveria*	I knew, it would rain / probably rained

2) *ou seja*[2]

a) means "that is" (= "i.e.");
b) is used only in the 3rd-person singular present subjunctive tense, regardless of the person / number / tense of the main verb:

Pedro é brasileiro; ou <u>seja</u>, nasceu e mora no Brasil.

Notes to Spanish Speakers:

[1] Port. *(pelo) que...saber* corresponds to Sp. *que...saber:*
Que yo sepa, llueve / lloverá / llovió mucho.
Que yo supiera / supiese, llovía / llovería mucho.

[2] Port. *ou seja* corresponds to Sp. *o sea:*
Pedro es brasileño; o sea, nació y vive en (el) Brasil.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND PROGRESSIVE TENSES AND FORMS

1) The present participle of all verbs

   a) derives from its infinitive, with which it shares the same radical;

   b) is formed by dropping the *-r* of the infinitive and adding the present participle marker *-ndo:*[1]

falar (1st CONJ.)	*comer* (2nd CONJ.)	*partir* (3rd CONJ.)
falando	*comendo*	*partindo*

2) A present participle[2]

   a) is expressed in English by "-ing";

   b) is a verbal;

   c) is invariable in gender and number, regardless of the gender / number of the subject or object:

      Estando as professoras na sala de aula, ninguém fez barulho.
      Os meninos chegaram comendo laranjas.

   d) usually functions as an adverb, often after a verb:

      O Paulo chegou correndo.

   e) may in turn be modified by an adverb:

      O Paulo chegou correndo <u>rapidamente</u>.

   f) may follow the direct object of a main verb
      (in particular, "verbs of perception" such as *ver* and *ouvir*)
      (an impersonal or personal infinitive may also follow the direct object):

      Vimos o Paulo <u>correndo</u>. *(= correr)*
      Ouvi os gatos <u>miando</u>. *(= miar[em])*

---

[1] The present participle of *pôr* (and derived verbs) is not marked with a circumflex *([su]pondo)*.
[2] See p. 211nn1–2 concerning the terms *present participle* and *gerund.*

3) A present participle

a) may take a noun or a pronoun object:

Vimos o homem dando-lhe o livro. (= indirect / direct)

b) has an explicit subject, if this subject differs from that of the main verb:

Estando as professoras na sala de aula, você não deve fazer barulho!

c) does not usually function as an adjective (unlike in English);[1, 2]

d) is never a subject or a direct object and is not usually a prepositional object (unlike in English); the only verbal subject or object that Portuguese normally uses is an infinitive (see pp. 138–139 for details).[1]

---

[1] Although grammarians of Portuguese sometimes call present participles "gerunds," grammarians of English distinguish between present participles and gerunds:

(a) present participles:

are used in verb groups	(she is running)	
function as adjectives / adverbs	(I saw her running / she arrived running)	

(b) gerunds:

function as nouns	(running is easy)	(subject)
	(she likes running)	(direct object)
	(she excels in running)	(prepositional object)

[2] Portuguese often uses an adjective ending in *-nte* for an English present participle:

conta corrente (checking account)

Since this *-nte* form derives from the Latin present participle, grammarians sometimes call it the "true" present participle to differentiate it from the *-ndo* form, which they call the "gerund" and which derives from the Latin gerund. Theoretically, any "true" present participle can be formed by dropping the *-r* of the infinitive and adding *-nte.* The following are common words ending in *-nte,* many of which derive directly from Latin present participles.

-ar (1st CONJ.)	*-er* (2nd CONJ.)	*-ir* (3rd CONJ.)
distante	*agente*	*ouvinte*
estudante	*cliente*	*pedinte*
importante	*corrente*	
migrante	*diferente*	
	doente	
	gerente	
	presente	
	presidente	
	suficiente	

4) Present participles in "progressive" tenses and forms

a) In BP, a present participle follows *estar* in "progressive" tenses and forms (English "to be" + "-ing"); in EP, an impersonal infinitive follows *estar a.*

BRAZILIAN PORTUGUESE	EUROPEAN PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
Estamos estudando.	*Estamos a estudar.*	We are studying.
Ele estava comendo.	*Ele estava a comer.*	He was eating.
Estarei dormindo.	*Estarei a dormir.*	I will be sleeping.

b) Any tense or form of *estar* can be used in the progressive.

c) A progressive verb expresses a continuous, on-going action or state of being that takes place only during the time indicated by *estar;* it implies "at this / that time."

d) The following contrastive sentences exemplify the difference between a simple verb (which expresses a routine / habitual action or state of being) and a progressive verb.

TENSE	SIMPLE VERB (implies "routinely")	PROGRESSIVE VERB (implies "at this / that time")
present indicative	*Bebe café.* (drinks)	*Está bebendo café.* (is drinking)
imperfect indicative	*Bebia café.* (drank / used to drink)	*Estava bebendo café.* (was drinking)
present subjunctive	*Talvez beba café.* (maybe...drinks)	*Talvez esteja bebendo café.* (maybe...is drinking)
past subjunctive	*Talvez bebesse café.* (maybe...drank / used to drink)	*Talvez estivesse bebendo café.* (maybe...was drinking)

e) *andar / ficar / ir / vir* occasionally replace *estar* in the "progressive."

VERB	MEANING	EXAMPLES	ENGLISH
andar	repetitive action	*A criança anda chorando.*	is crying over and over
ficar	continuous action	*A criança fica chorando.*	is continuing to cry
ir	movement away from speaker	*O homem ia andando.*	was going (away from)
	progress	*O doente vai melhorando.*	is progressively improving
vir	movement toward speaker	*O homem vinha andando.*	was coming (toward)
	gradual action	*O doente vem melhorando.*	is gradually improving

5) A compound present participle

a) is the present participle of *ter (= tendo)* + masculine singular past participle;[1]

b) expresses an action or state of being completed before that of the main verb:

Tendo cortado o bolo, Pedro começou a comê-lo.	*(= havendo)*	(having cut)
Tendo feito a reserva, fomos ao teatro apesar da neve.	*(= havendo)*	(having made)

---

[1] *havendo* occasionally replaces *tendo,* although colloquial Portuguese prefers *tendo.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Portuguese verbs of the imperative mood express a command, order, request, instruction, or warning.

Portuguese has several types of imperatives (which are detailed in the following pages).[1] When to use a certain type depends on the subject pronoun used by the speaker when addressing the listener;[2] this choice of subject pronoun depends, in turn, on such factors as the degree of familiarity between speaker and listener and the speaker's and/or listener's regional dialect, age, social class, and level of education (see pp. 85–86 for details on subject pronouns).

To complicate matters further, the choice of subject pronoun—and, consequently, type of imperative—is constantly evolving; the uses of the following types of imperatives are therefore subject to exception and change.

1) *tu*

a) BP: those dialects in which *tu* is the most informal "you" tend to use the standard <u>affirmative</u> form corresponding to *tu* (see below) for <u>both</u> the affirmative and negative imperative; this form
   i) coincides with the 3rd-person singular present <u>indicative</u>;[3]
   ii) is also used when the speaker addresses the listener by *você;*
   iii) is the colloquial BP informal imperative;

b) EP uses the standard imperative forms corresponding to *tu:*
   i) the affirmative form usually coincides with the 3rd-person singular present <u>indicative</u>;[4, 5, 6]
   ii) the negative form is the 2nd-person singular present <u>subjunctive</u>:[4]

---

[1] See p. 271 for a list of imperative forms of irregular verbs.
[2] When to use a certain type of imperative may also depend on the degree of severity of the intended command; e.g., a Brazilian mother might use the gentler, colloquial one to coax her toddler to stop crying *("Não chora, meu filho!"),* but the harsher, standard one to order her teenager to lower the volume of his acoustic guitar *("João Miguel Peres, baixe o volume!").* English speakers also adjust the degree of severity of a command ("Don't cry, Sweetie!" vs. "John Michael Peterson, turn down the volume!").
[3] Exception: Colloquial BP tends to use the 3rd-person singular present <u>subjunctive</u> (the standard form used with *você*) in the following imperatives:
(não) esteja *(< estar)*
(não) seja *(< ser)*
(não) saiba *(< saber)*
[4] See pp. 152–159 for indicative forms and pp. 186–189 for subjunctive forms.
[5] Exception: The only irregular standard *tu* affirmative imperative is *sê* (< *ser*).
[6] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish has more irregular *tú* affirmative imperatives than Portuguese: *sal / ten / ven / pon / haz / di / sé / ve (< salir / tener / venir / poner / hacer / decir / ser / ir).*

INFINITIVE		COLLOQUIAL BP *TU*	STANDARD *TU* AFF.[1]	STANDARD *TU* NEG.
falar	(1st conj.)	*(não) fala*	*fala*	*não fales*
comer	(2nd conj.)	*(não) come*	*come*	*não comas*
partir	(3rd conj.)	*(não) parte*	*parte*	*não partas*
vir		*(não) vem*	*vem*	*não venhas*
ir		*(não) vai*	*vai*	*não vás*

c) The following are examples of the *tu* imperative.

	COLLOQUIAL BP *TU*	STANDARD *TU*	ENGLISH
Filipe:	*me diz a verdade!*	*diz(e)-me a verdade!*	tell me the truth!
Ricardo:	*põe a mesa!*	*põe a mesa!*	set the table!
Roberto:	*não fecha a porta!*	*não feches a porta!*	don't close the door!
Maria:	*não faz barulho!*	*não faças barulho!*	don't make any noise!

2) *vós*

Although BP and EP no longer use the imperative forms corresponding to *vós* except in an occasional formal speech or sermon, these forms are common in older (particularly EP) literary works:

i) the affirmative form usually coincides with the 2nd-person plural present <u>indicative</u>, minus *-s;*[2, 3]

ii) the negative form is the 2nd-person plural present <u>subjunctive</u>:[4]

INFINITIVE		*VÓS* AFFIRMATIVE	*VÓS* NEGATIVE
falar	(1st conj.)	*falai*	*não faleis*
comer	(2nd conj.)	*comei*	*não comais*
partir	(3rd conj.)	*parti*	*não partais*
vir		*vin<u>d</u>e*	*não venhais*
ir		*i<u>d</u>e*	*não va<u>d</u>es*

---

[1] EP: The following *tu* affirmative imperatives have an alternative form ending in *-e:*

ENDING	INFINITIVE	IMPERATIVE
	(re)querer	*(re)quer(e)*
	fazer / jazer / trazer // dizer	*faz(e) / jaz(e) / traz(e) // diz(e)*
-uzir	luzir // conduzir / introduzir	*luz(e) // conduz(e) / introduz(e)*

[2] Exception: The only irregular *vós* affirmative imperative is *se<u>d</u>e* (< *ser*).

[3] Note to Spanish Speakers: All Spanish *vosotros* affirmative imperatives are formed by dropping the *-r* of the infinitive and adding *-d* (a vestige of Latin *-t-*) *(come<u>r</u> > come<u>d</u>)*.

[4] See pp. 186–189 for those forms.

3) *você(s)*

a) Colloquial BP tends to use the 3rd-person present indicative; this form[1, 2]
   i) is widely used in the affirmative singular;
   ii) is often used in the negative and/or plural but occasionally alternates with the standard formal subjunctive form (see below);
   iii) is the colloquial BP informal imperative;

b) EP and formal BP use the standard formal imperative form corresponding to *você(s);* this form[3]
   i) is the 3rd-person present subjunctive;[4]
   ii) is also used in both colloquial and formal Portuguese when the speaker addresses the listener(s) by *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s):*

INFINITIVE		COLLOQUIAL BP				STANDARD			
			VOCÊ	/	*VOCÊS*		*VOCÊ*	/	*VOCÊS*
falar	(1st conj.)	*(não)*	*fala*	/	*falam*	*(não)*	*fale*	/	*falem*
comer	(2nd conj.)	*(não)*	*come*	/	*comem*	*(não)*	*coma*	/	*comam*
partir	(3rd conj.)	*(não)*	*parte*	/	*partem*	*(não)*	*parta*	/	*partam*
sair		*(não)*	*sai*	/	*saem*	*(não)*	*saia*	/	*saiam*
vir		*(não)*	*vem*	/	*vêm*	*(não)*	*venha*	/	*venham*
ir		*(não)*	*vai*	/	*vão*	*(não)*	*vá*	/	*vão*

c) The following are examples of the *você(s)* imperative.

	COLLOQUIAL BP *VOCÊ(S)*	STANDARD *VOCÊ(S)*	ENGLISH
Filipe:	*me diz a verdade!*	*diga-me a verdade!*	tell me the truth!
Filhos:	*põem a mesa!*	*ponham a mesa!*	set the table!
Roberto:	*não fecha a porta!*	*não feche a porta!*	don't close the door!
Alunas:	*não fazem barulho!*	*não façam barulho!*	don't make any noise!

---

[1] Exception: Colloquial BP tends to use 3rd-person present subjunctive (the standard form used with *você[s]*) in the following imperatives:

(não) esteja(m) *(< estar)*
(não) seja(m) *(< ser)*
(não) saiba(m) *(< saber)*

[2] Context and intonation should indicate whether a particular form is an imperative or a present indicative verb.

[3] This book uses the formal command in all examples except those illustrating colloquial BP usage.

[4] See pp. 186–189 for those forms.

4) *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)*

EP and BP (both colloquial and formal) use the standard formal imperative form corresponding to *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s);* this form

i) is the 3rd-person present subjunctive;[1]

ii) is also used in EP and formal BP when the speaker addresses the listener(s) by *você(s):*

INFINITIVE			*O SENHOR* / *OS SENHORES*	
			A SENHORA / *AS SENHORAS*	
falar	(1st conj.)	*(não)*	*fale*	/ *falem*
comer	(2nd conj.)	*(não)*	*coma*	/ *comam*
partir	(3rd conj.)	*(não)*	*parta*	/ *partam*
sair		*(não)*	*saia*	/ *saiam*
vir		*(não)*	*venha*	/ *venham*
ir		*(não)*	*vá*	/ *vão*
querer		*(não)*	*queira*	/ *queiram*
saber		*(não)*	*saiba*	/ *saibam*
ser		*(não)*	*seja*	/ *sejam*
estar		*(não)*	*esteja*	/ *estejam*

5) *nós*

Portuguese also uses an imperative with *nós* as its subject (English "let's" + verb). There are two forms of this imperative:

i) 1st-person plural present subjunctive (used in formal Portuguese):[1]

Esperemos!
Não fumemos!

ii) *vamos* + impersonal infinitive (used in colloquial Portuguese):[2]

Vamos esperar!
Não vamos fumar!

---

[1] See pp. 186–189 for those forms.

[2] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish, Portuguese does not use the preposition *a* between *ir* and an infinitive.

6) Placement of object pronouns

a) An object pronoun should

i) follow an affirmative imperative, if the imperative begins the sentence (in colloquial BP, however, *me / te / se / nos* often precede the imperative):

Levante-se!
Digam-me a verdade!

ii) follow the *não* of a negative imperative:

Não se sente!
Não me digam uma mentira!

iii) precede an affirmative imperative, if the imperative does not begin the sentence:

Sempre se levante quando é apresentado a uma senhora!
Sempre me digam a verdade!

b) When a direct object pronoun follows a formal *nós* affirmative imperative, the final *-s* of the imperative is dropped.

levantemos	+	*nos*	=	*levantemo-nos*
vamos	+	*nos*	=	*vamo-nos*

7) In addition to imperative forms, Portuguese has other ways of expressing a command, order, request, instruction, or warning. The following examples all convey the messages *"espere"* ("wait") or *"não fumem"* ("don't smoke").

a) impersonal infinitive, which is sometimes preceded by *é favor (de)* ("please") and is often used in public instructions and warnings:

Esperar!	*É favor de esperar!*
NÃO FUMAR	***É FAVOR NÃO FUMAR***

b) future indicative (as in the Ten Commandments):

Não fumarão!

c) *que* + present subjunctive (= "indirect" command):

Pois, que espere! *(= Quero que espere.)*

8) The following are ways in which Portuguese "softens" a command, order, request, instruction, or warning. The examples all convey the messages *"espere"* or *"não fumem."*

a) the following expressions, which are usually used after the imperative:

por favor:	*Espere, por favor!*	(please)
faz favor:[1]	*Não fumem, faz favor!*	(please)

b) *queira(m)*[2] + impersonal infinitive:

Queira esperar, por favor!	(please)
Não queiram fumar, por favor!	(please)

c) imperative form of the following expressions + impersonal infinitive:[3]

fazer o favor de:	*Façam o favor de não fumar!*	(please / kindly)
ter a bondade de:	*Tenha a bondade de esperar!*	(please / kindly)
ter a gentileza de:	*Tenham a gentileza de não fumar!*	(please / kindly)

d) present indicative form of the following verbs + impersonal infinitive:

dever:	*Deve esperar!*	(ought / should)
poder:	*Não podem fumar!*	(may)
querer:	*Não querem fumar!*	(want)

---

[1] Although the expression *faz favor* incorporates the standard *tu* imperative *faz,* it is used with all imperatives, regardless of their number or degree of formality.
[2] *queira(m)* is the standard formal imperative of *querer.*
[3] The personal infinitive is occasionally used in colloquial Portuguese.

IMPERSONAL VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS

1) "Impersonal" verbs

a) correspond to English "it" + verb;
b) have no explicit subject (in English, "it" is the explicit subject);
c) are usually used only in the 3rd-person singular;
d) often describe the weather:[1, 2]

i) *chover / nevar / ventar*

Está <u>chovendo</u> a cântaros!	(It's raining buckets!)
Ontem <u>nevou</u> muito.	(Yesterday it snowed a lot.)
Estava <u>ventando</u> demais!	(It was too windy!)

ii) *fazer* + noun (English "to be" + adjective) (= *estar* + adjective)

<u>Fazia</u> frio. (= *estava frio*)	(It was cold.)

2) "Impersonal" expressions

a) correspond to English "it" + verb + adjective / noun;
b) have an explicit subject (= personal infinitive / subordinate noun clause) (in English, "it" is the explicit subject);
c) consist of the 3rd-person singular of *ser / poder ser / parecer* + adjective / noun:[3, 4]

Era importante que ele ficasse.	(It was important that he stay.)
Era difícil ficarmos.	(It was difficult for us to stay.)
Poderia ser (uma) pena não ficar!	(It could be a pity not to stay!)
Parece preferível que ele fique.	(It seems preferable that he stay.)

---

[1] Other weather-related impersonal verbs are:

amanhecer	("to grow / turn light" [at dawn])
anoitecer	("to grow / turn dark" [at dusk])
chuviscar	("to drizzle / sprinkle")
relampejar	("to lighten" [= lightning])
trovejar	("to thunder")

[2] Non-weather-related impersonal verbs are:

ter / haver	when they mean "there to be" (= "to exist") (see p. 227: 2b)
haver que	(see p. 228: 2g)
haver / fazer	in expressions of time (see pp. 229–230)

[3] See p. 199 for details on the use of the subjunctive in subordinate noun clauses.

[4] *bastar / convir* are also used in impersonal expressions:

Basta ficarmos.	(It is enough that we stay.)
Convém que fiquemos.	(It is fitting that we stay.)

VERBS THAT TAKE AN INDIRECT OBJECT WITHOUT A DIRECT OBJECT

1) A number of Portuguese verbs take an indirect object without needing a direct object to complete their meaning (this kind of verb also exists in English and Spanish).

2) The indirect object is the person or animal that is affected by and/or involved in the experience of the verb.

3) The indirect object may be

   a) an indirect object pronoun:

      A fonética lhe interessa.

   b) the prepositional phrase *a* + noun or prepositional pronoun:[1, 2]

      A fonética interessa a Antônio.
      A fonética interessa a ele.

4) These verbs are often used in the 3rd person (singular and plural).

5) The following are common verbs of this kind.

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH[3]	ENGLISH (to):
agradar	*agradar*	be pleasing
apetecer	*apetecer*	appeal / be tempting
convir	*convenir*	be convenient / fitting / suitable
doer	*doler*	hurt (= pain)
importar	*importar*	be important / matter
interessar	*interesar*	(be of) interest
pertencer	*pertenecer*	belong // pertain / concern

---

[1] *para* is not used in this construction.

Notes to Spanish Speakers:

[2] Unlike in Portuguese, the indirect object pronoun is obligatory in Spanish, even when the indirect object is expressed in a prepositional phrase; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
A fonética interessa a Antônio / a ele.	*La fonética le interesa a Antonio / a él.*

[3] Another Spanish verb of this kind is *gustar;* however, its Portuguese cognate *gostar* takes the preposition *de,* the object of which corresponds to the subject of *gustar;* compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Elas gostam da filosofia.	*A ellas les gusta la filosofía.*

SER VERSUS *ESTAR*

1) Since *ser* and *estar* both mean "to be," English speakers often find it difficult to choose the correct Portuguese verb.[1]

The following is the basic difference between these two verbs.

ser: expresses a permanent, inherent, or essential characteristic or attribute;

estar: expresses a temporary, transitory, accidental, or apparent state of being, which often results from an action or a change.

2) The origins of *ser* and *estar* help to explain the difference between these two verbs.

ser: although the infinitive derives from Latin *sedere* (> English *seat* [of power], as in *Holy See* / Portuguese *Sé*), most tenses derive from Latin *esse(re)* (> English *essence*) (= permanent / inherent);

estar: the infinitive and all tenses derive from Latin *stare* (> English *stand*) (= temporary / transitory).

3) *estar* is never followed by a pronoun (unlike *ser*) and is not usually followed by a noun, except in idiomatic expressions.[2]

4) *ser* is never followed by a present participle (unlike *estar*).

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese and Spanish use *ser* and *estar* in the same ways, with one notable exception: unlike Spanish, Portuguese uses *ser* to express a permanent location; compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Belém é no Brasil.	*Belén está en (el) Brasil.*

[2] When *estar* is followed by a noun in idiomatic expressions, the noun functions as an adjective; e.g., in the utterance *"esse quarto está uma bagunça,"* the noun *bagunça* modifies the noun *quarto* and means "a mess."

5) The following are the specific uses of *ser*.

USE	FOLLOWED BY:	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES
permanent / inherent / essential characteristic	adjective	to be	*Ana era alta.*
content / material	*de* + noun	to be made of	*O piano é de madeira.*
origin	*de* + noun adjective	to be from to be	*Ana é de Macau.* *Ana é macaense.*
possession / ownership	*de* + (pro)noun	to belong to	*O piano é de Ana.* (= Ana's) *O piano é dela.* (= hers)
classification / identification (profession / religion, etc.)	noun adjective	to be to be	*João é estudante.* *João é católico.*
time day of week day of month	time day of week day of month	to be to be to be	*Eram duas e meia.* *Hoje é domingo.* *Hoje é 18 de maio.*
mathematical equality	number	to be / equal	*Um mais um são dois.*
passive voice (see p. 148: 2)	past participle	to be + past participle	*A porta foi aberta.*
"impersonal" expressions (see p. 220: 2)	noun adjective	it + to be it + to be	*É (uma) pena ir!* *É bom rirmos!*
site / location of event / activity	adverb adverb phrase	to be / take place to be / take place	*A festa foi aqui.* *A festa é no clube.*
permanent location[1]	*em* + noun	to be in	*Belém é no Brasil.* *(= fica no)*

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Unlike Spanish (see example on p. 222n1).

6) The following are the specific uses of *estar.*

USE	FOLLOWED BY:	ENGLISH	EXAMPLES
temporary / transitory /	adjective	to be	*A porta está aberta.*
accidental / apparent	adjective	to look	*José está magro.*
state of being	adjective	to be / feel	*Miguel está doente.*
	adverb	to be / feel	*Ana está melhor.*
"progressive" verbs		to be +	
(see p. 212)		present participle	
BP:	present participle		*Está estudando.*
EP:	*a* + infinitive		*Está a estudar.*
temporary location	*em* + noun	to be in	*Está no Brasil.*
			(= fica no)
	em + noun	to be on	*O livro está na mesa.*
	em + noun	to be at	*O livro está em casa.*
weather	adjective	to be	*Estava frio.*
			(= fazia frio)
readiness	*para* + infinitive	to be about / ready to	*Estou para sair.*
			(= estou a ponto de)
physical / emotional feeling	*com* + noun[1]	to be / feel + adj.	*Está com fome.*
			(= tem // fica com)
		to have / feel + noun	*Estão com dor.*
			(= têm // ficam com)

---

[1] *estar com* is frequently used with the following nouns, as are its true synonym *ter* and its partial synonym *ficar com:*

ESTAR COM +	ENGLISH (to):	*ESTAR COM* +	ENGLISH (to):
calor	be / feel hot	*pressa*	be in a hurry
ciúme(s) (de)	be jealous (of)	*raiva (de)*	be angry (at)
dor (de)	have a (...) pain / ache (in)	*saudade(s) (de)*	feel nostalgia //
fome	be / feel hungry		long / yearn (for)
frio	be / feel cold	*sede*	be / feel thirsty
inveja (de)	be envious (of)	*sono*	be / feel sleepy
medo (de)	be afraid (of)	*sorte*	be lucky
pena (de)	feel sorry / pity (for)	*vergonha (de)*	be / feel ashamed (about)
preguiça	be lazy	*vontade de...*	feel like / have a mind to...

7) Since *ser* and *estar* both mean "to be," the following contrastive sentences might help an English speaker to choose the correct Portuguese verb.

SER	*ESTAR*
De onde é Pedro? Do Brasil? (origin)	*Onde está Pedro? No Brasil?* (temporary location)
Onde foi a festa? No restaurante? (location of event)	*Onde esteve Pedro? No restaurante?* (temporary location)
Onde é Belém? No Brasil? (permanent location)	*Onde está Pedro? No Brasil?* (temporary location)
Como é Paulo? Alto? (characteristic)	*Como está Paulo? Bem?* (temporary state)
Fernanda é (uma pessoa) viva. (she is a <u>lively</u> person)	*Fernanda está viva.*[1] (she is <u>alive</u> as a <u>result</u> of not having died)
O ditador é morto! (he has been <u>killed</u>) (passive voice)	*O ditador está morto.*[1] (he is <u>dead</u> as a <u>result</u> of having died)
Carlos e Camila são casados! (they have married each other)	*Carlos e Camila estão casados.*[1] (they are married as a <u>result</u> of having married each other)
José é magro. (he is a thin person)	*José está magro.* (he <u>looks</u> thinner than he might be or he is thin as a <u>result</u> of having dieted)
A porta foi aberta. (was <u>opened</u>) (passive voice)	*A porta está aberta.* (is <u>open</u> as a <u>result</u> of having been opened)
Como são os legumes? Bons? (good for one's <u>health</u>)	*Como estão os legumes? Bons?* (good <u>tasting</u>)

---

[1] *ser* is occasionally used instead of *estar.*

FICAR[1]

1) *ficar em* + noun

a) means "to be" and expresses permanent location; it is a synonym of *ser em:*

Belém fica no Brasil. *(= é no)*

b) means "to be / stay / remain" and expresses temporary location; it is a partial synonym of *estar em:*

Pedro ficou no Brasil por dois anos. *(= esteve no)*

2) *ficar* + adjective / adverb

means "to (still) be / remain // become / get" (ill, etc.) and expresses a state of being resulting from an action or a change; it is a partial synonym of *estar:*

A janela ficou aberta. *(= esteve)*
Ana fica melhor. *(= está)*

3) *ficar com* + noun[2]

a) means "to be(come) / get" and expresses a physical or emotional feeling resulting from an action or a change; it is a partial synonym of *estar com* and *ter:*

Miguel fica com fome. *(= está com / tem)*

b) means "to keep" (in one's possession):

Eles ficaram com o livro.

4) *ficar* + present participle

expresses a continuous action:

A criança fica chorando. (is continuing to cry)

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Port. *ficar* often corresponds to Sp. *quedar(se);* compare:

PORTUGUESE	SPANISH
Belém fica no Brasil.	*Belén queda en (el) Brasil.*
Pedro ficou no Brasil por dois anos.	*Pedro se quedó en (el) Brasil por dos años.*
A janela ficou aberta.	*La ventana quedó abierta.*
Ana fica melhor.	*Ana queda mejor.*
Eles ficaram com o livro.	*Ellos se quedaron con el libro.*

[2] Colloquial BP: *ficar com* also means "to hook up with" (in a sexual sense).

TER AND *HAVER*

1) Although *ter* and *haver* have similar meanings, they are not always interchangeable.

2) The following are the specific uses of *ter* and *haver.*[1]

a) *ter* + (pro)noun[2]

means "to have / possess / own":

Quantos cachorros você tem? Tenho dois.
Quantas aulas vocês tinham? Tínhamos três.

b) *ter / haver* + (pro)noun

mean "there to be" (= "to exist");
they are used in the 3rd-person singular and do not, therefore, agree in number with the direct object (pro)noun:[3, 4, 5, 6]

Tem um aluno.	*(= há um aluno)*	(there is)
Não tem dois.	*(= não há dois)*	(there are not)
Tinha duas alunas.	*(= havia duas alunas)*	(there were / used to be)
Terá algumas.	*(= haverá algumas)*	(there will be / probably are)
Teria muitos.	*(= haveria muitos)*	(there would be / probably were)

c) *ter* + noun[2]

means "to be / feel" (+ adjective) / "to have / feel" (+ noun) and expresses a physical or emotional feeling; it is a true synonym of *estar com* and a partial synonym of *ficar com:*

Tem pouca fome.	*(= está com / fica com)*
Tinham muita dor.	*(= estavam com / ficavam com)*

---

[1] See pp. 229–231 for *haver* in expressions of time.
[2] *haver* is not used in this construction.
[3] Colloquial BP prefers *ter* to express "there to be," whereas EP prefers *haver.*
[4] Whether or not the (pro)noun is a direct object has been a matter of debate; for historical and syntactic reasons, however, the authors concur with Milton M. Azevedo (*Portuguese* 243) that it is.
[5] In colloquial Portuguese, *ter / haver* are often used in the 3rd-person plural when the direct object is plural *(tinham duas alunas);* this usage is considered incorrect in formal Portuguese. When the verb "there to be" is used in the present or past tense, English distinguishes between singular and plural, because the (pro)noun is the subject (not the direct object):
there <u>is</u> one / there <u>are</u> three // there <u>was</u> one / there <u>were</u> three
[6] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish uses *haber* (not *tener*) to express "there to be" *(hay / había / hubo / habrá / habría + dos alumnos).*

d) *ter / haver* + past participle[1, 4]

mean "to have" (+ past participle) in compound tenses and forms:

Temos ido muito.	*(= havemos ido)*	(have been going)
Tínhamos ido.	*(= havíamos ido)*	(had gone)
Sinto ter ido.	*(= haver ido)*	(to have gone)
Tendo ido,...	*(= havendo ido)*	(having gone)

e) *ter que / ter de* + infinitive[2]

mean "to have to / must" (+ verb) and are partial synonyms of *haver de:*

Temos que ir.	*(= temos de ir)*	(have to / must go)
Tínhamos que ir.	*(= tínhamos de ir)*	(had to / must go)
Terá que ir.	*(= terá de ir)*	(will have to go)
Teriam que ir.	*(= teriam de ir)*	(would have to go)

f) *haver de* + infinitive[3]

	CONNOTES A:			WHEN USED IN THE:
i)	present / future	obligation	→	present indicative
ii)	past / conditional	obligation	→	imperfect indicative

i)	*<u>Havemos</u> de ir.*	(have to / must // will / shall go)
ii)	*<u>Havíamos</u> de ir.*	(had to / must // would / should go)

g) *haver que* + infinitive[5]

means the impersonal "one" + "to have to / must" (+ verb);
it is used only in the 3rd-person singular:

Há que dormir.	(one has to / must sleep)
Havia que dormir.	(one had to / must sleep)
Haverá que dormir.	(one will have to sleep)
Haveria que dormir.	(one would have to sleep)

---

[1] *haver* occasionally replaces *ter,* although colloquial Portuguese prefers *ter.*
[2] Colloquial Portuguese prefers *ter que;* formal Portuguese prefers *ter de.*
[3] *haver de* is used in formal Portuguese.

Notes to Spanish Speakers:
[4] Spanish uses *haber* (not *tener*) in compound tenses / forms *(hemos / habíamos / haber + ido).*
[5] Port. *haver que* corresponds to Sp. *haber que (hay / había / habrá / habría + que dormir).*

HAVER AND *FAZER* IN EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

1) *haver* and *fazer* are used interchangeably in three basic constructions that express time.[1]

One construction expresses elapsed time (= ago):

a)	*há / faz*	+ time ago	+ *que*	+ <u>preterite</u> indicative

Two constructions express length of time (= for how long):

b)	*há / faz*	+ length of time	+ *que*	+ <u>present</u> indicative
c)	*havia / fazia*	+ length of time	+ *que*	+ <u>imperfect</u> indicative

2) In these three constructions, *haver* and *fazer* are used only in the 3rd-person singular and do not, therefore, agree in number with the direct object indicating time.[2a]

3) Each basic construction has an alternative, synonymous one, which differs only in its inverted word order and the omission of *que.*

4) The following are examples of each basic construction.
The first example of each construction is a question, followed by two answers, the last of which is the alternative construction.

a)	i)	*há / faz*	+ time ago	+ *que*	+ preterite
	ii)	preterite	+ *há / faz*		+ time ago

i) *Há / Faz quanto tempo que morou no Brasil?*
i) *Há / Faz dez anos que morei no Brasil.*
ii) *Morei no Brasil há / faz dez anos.*

(How long <u>ago</u> did you live in Brazil?)
(I lived in Brazil ten years <u>ago</u>.)

The adverb *atrás* is also used to express "ago," but it follows the time.[2b]

Dez anos <u>atrás</u> morei no Brasil.
Morei no Brasil dez anos <u>atrás</u>.

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish uses *hacer* (not *haber*) in expressions of time:
Viví en (el) Brasil hace diez años.
Hacía diez años que vivía en (el) Brasil.

[2] In the following colloquial usages (which are considered incorrect in formal Portuguese),
(a) *haver / fazer* are often used in the 3rd-person plural when the direct object is plural *(fazem dez anos que morei no Brasil);*
(b) the redundant *há* (but not *faz*) often precedes the time *(morei no Brasil há dez anos atrás).*

b)	i)	*há / faz*	+ length of time	+ *que*	+ present[1a]
	ii)	present	+ *há / faz*		+ length of time

i) *Há / Faz quanto tempo que mora no Brasil?*
i) *Há / Faz dez anos que moro no Brasil.*
ii) *Moro no Brasil há / faz dez anos.*

(For how long have you lived in Brazil?)
(I have lived in Brazil for ten years.)

i) *Há / Faz quanto tempo que estão estudando?*
i) *Há / Faz uma hora que estamos estudando.*
ii) *Estamos estudando há / faz uma hora.*

(For how long have you been studying?)
(We have been studying for one hour.)

c)	i)	*havia / fazia*	+ length of time	+ *que*	+ imperfect[1b]
	ii)	imperfect	+ *havia / fazia*		+ length of time

i) *Havia / Fazia quanto tempo que morava no Brasil?*
i) *Havia / Fazia dez anos que morava no Brasil.*
ii) *Morava no Brasil havia / fazia dez anos.*

(For how long had you lived in Brazil?)
(I had lived in Brazil for ten years.)

i) *Havia / Fazia quanto tempo que estavam estudando?*
i) *Havia / Fazia uma hora que estávamos estudando.*
ii) *Estávamos estudando havia / fazia uma hora.*

(For how long had you been studying?)
(We had been studying for one hour.)

---

[1] The verb is either a simple or a progressive form; English usually uses the simple or progressive:
(a) present perfect (= "has / have [been]")
(b) past perfect (= "had [been]")

5) Compare the following sentences, each of which expresses a different kind of time:

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
Moro no Brasil desde o ano 1988.	I have lived in Brazil since 1988 (and still do).
Moro no Brasil há / faz dez anos.	I have lived in Brazil for ten years (and still do).
Morava no Brasil havia / fazia dez anos.	I had lived in Brazil for ten years (but might not now).
Morei no Brasil por dez anos.	I lived in Brazil for ten years (but probably do not now).
Morei no Brasil há / faz dez anos. // Morei no Brasil dez anos atrás.	I lived in Brazil ten years ago (but probably do not now).

ACABAR

1) *acabar* + (pro)noun

means "to terminate / finish / end" and is a synonym of *terminar:*

Célia acabou o projeto ontem. *(= terminou)*

2) *acabar com* + (pro)noun

means "to put an end to / finish off / liquidate / kill (off)":

Quando é que vão acabar com a corrupção?

3) *acabar por* + infinitive

means "to end up" + present participle:

Acabamos por jantar num restaurante japonês.

4) *acabar de* + infinitive

	MEANS:		WHEN USED IN THE:
a)	has just / have just	→	present / preterite indicative[1]
b)	had just	→	imperfect / simple past perfect indicative[1]

a) *Carlos <u>acaba</u> de ler o jornal.* (= "has just")
Carlos <u>acabou</u> de ler o jornal. (= "has just")

b) *Carlos <u>acabava</u> de ler o jornal quando chegamos.* (= "had just")
Carlos <u>acabara</u> de ler o jornal quando chegamos. (= "had just")

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Spanish uses only the present and the imperfect indicative:
Carlos <u>acaba</u> de leer el periódico. (= "has just")
Carlos <u>acababa</u> de leer el periódico cuando llegamos. (= "had just")

SABER VERSUS *CONHECER*

1) Since *saber* and *conhecer* both mean "to know" and are followed by direct objects, English speakers often find it difficult to choose the correct Portuguese verb.[1]

The following is the basic difference between these two verbs.

saber: expresses knowledge of a thing;

conhecer: expresses acquaintance with a thing,
as well as knowledge of or acquaintance with a person or a place.

2) *saber* is never followed by a personal direct object (unlike *conhecer*).

3) *conhecer* is never followed by an infinitive or a noun clause (unlike *saber*).

4) The following are the specific uses of *saber.*

	EXPRESSES:		MEANS:		WHEN USED IN (THE):		FOLLOWED BY A(N):
a)	knowledge of a fact, lesson, or information[2]	→	to know	→	present / imperfect indic.	→	noun (clause)
b)	knowing a fact, lesson, or information for the 1st time	→	to find out, realize, learn, or discover	→	preterite / future indic. // conditional	→	noun (clause)
c)	knowledge of a skill	→	to know how to	→	any tense	→	infinitive

a) *Os senhores sabem os nomes de todos os seus estudantes?*
A Ana sabia a lição melhor (do) que a Inês.
Vocês sabem que Salazar foi o ditador de Portugal?
Eu sabia onde ficava o refeitório.

b) *A Isabel soube ontem que o Jaime estava doente.*
A Paula disse que eles saberiam a verdade logo.

c) *Vocês sabem andar a cavalo?*
A senhora saberá falar português daqui a pouco!

---

[1] Note to Spanish Speakers: Portuguese and Spanish use these two verbs in the same ways.
[2] Knowledge of a person / place is expressed by *conhecer.*

5) The following are the specific uses of *conhecer.*

	EXPRESSES:		MEANS:		WHEN USED IN THE:
a)	acquaintance or familiarity with a person, place, or thing	→	to know or be acquainted with	→	present / imperfect indic.
b)	knowledge of a person or place[1]	→	to know	→	present / imperfect indic.
c)	making an acquaintance, or knowing a person or place for the 1st time	→	to meet or become acquainted with	→	preterite / future indic. // conditional

a) *A senhora conhecia a embaixadora?*
Não conhecemos a teoria da relatividade.

b) *Uma mãe conhece os seus filhos melhor (do) que ninguém!*
Os diplomatas não conheciam Coimbra.

c) *Em que ano você conheceu Porto Alegre?*
Quando a Raquel conhecerá o Roberto?
O Pedro disse que a Raquel conheceria o Roberto amanhã na festa.

6) Since *saber* and *conhecer* both mean "to know," the following contrastive sentences might help an English speaker to choose the correct Portuguese verb.

SABER	*CONHECER*
Sei onde mora o senador. (to know <u>information</u>)	*Conheço o senador.* (to know or be acquainted with a <u>person</u>)
Soube onde morava o senador. (to find out)	*Conheci o senador.* (to meet or become acquainted with a <u>person</u>)
Marta sabia a resposta. (to know a <u>fact</u>)	*Marta conhecia Brasília.* (to know or be acquainted with a <u>place</u>)
Marta soube a resposta. (to find out)	*Marta conheceu Brasília.* (to become acquainted with a <u>place</u>)
Eles sabem cozinhar. (to know a <u>skill</u>)	*Eles conhecem a cozinha portuguesa.* (to be acquainted with a <u>thing</u>)

---

[1] The degree of knowledge does not matter. Knowledge of a thing is expressed by *saber.*

VERB AND OTHER GRAMMAR CHARTS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

REGULAR VERBS: DERIVATION OF TENSES AND FORMS

ORIGINAL FORM / TENSE	PERSON	DERIVED FORM / TENSE
infinitive (impersonal)		personal infinitive present participle past participle present indicative imperfect (preterite imperfect) indicative preterite (preterite perfect) indicative future indicative conditional standard *tu* affirmative imperative *vós* affirmative imperative
present indicative	1st singular	present subjunctive standard formal imperative standard *tu* negative imperative *vós* negative imperative
preterite indicative	3rd plural	simple past perfect (pluperfect) indicative past (imperfect) subjunctive future subjunctive

REGULAR VERBS[1, 2]

IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE / PAST PART. / PRES. PART.	PERSONAL INFINITIVE	PRESENT INDIC.	IMPERFECT INDIC.	PRETERITE INDIC.	SIMPLE PAST PERFECT INDIC.
falar falado falando	falar falares falar falarmos falardes falarem	falo falas fala falamos falais falam	falava falavas falava falávamos faláveis falavam	falei falaste falou falamos falastes falaram	falara falaras falara faláramos faláreis falaram
comer comido comendo	comer comeres comer comermos comerdes comerem	como comes come comemos comeis comem	comia comias comia comíamos comíeis comiam	comi comeste comeu comemos comestes comeram	comera comeras comera comêramos comêreis comeram
partir partido partindo	partir partires partir partirmos partirdes partirem	parto partes parte partimos partis partem	partia partias partia partíamos partíeis partiam	parti partiste partiu partimos partistes partiram	partira partiras partira partíramos partíreis partiram

---

[1] Listed in this series of verb charts is the standard *tu* affirmative imperative form; the colloquial BP form (which usually coincides with the standard one) is detailed on pp. 214–215.
[2] Not listed are the following imperative forms (which are their respective present subjunctive ones): standard *tu* negative, *vós* negative, and standard formal *você(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)*.

FUTURE INDIC.	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJ.	PAST SUBJ.	FUTURE SUBJ. [coincides with PERSONAL INFINITIVE]	*TU / VÓS* AFFIRMATIVE IMPERATIVE
falarei falarás falará falaremos falareis falarão	falaria falarias falaria falaríamos falaríeis falariam	fale fales fale falemos faleis falem	falasse falasses falasse falássemos falásseis falassem	falar falares falar falarmos falardes falarem	fala falai
comerei comerás comerá comeremos comereis comerão	comeria comerias comeria comeríamos comeríeis comeriam	coma comas coma comamos comais comam	comesse comesses comesse comêssemos comêsseis comessem	comer comeres comer comermos comerdes comerem	come comei
partirei partirás partirá partiremos partireis partirão	partiria partirias partiria partiríamos partiríeis partiriam	parta partas parta partamos partais partam	partisse partisses partisse partíssemos partísseis partissem	partir partires partir partirmos partirdes partirem	parte parti

IRREGULAR VERBS[1, 2]

INFINITIVE / PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDIC.	IMPERFECT INDIC.	PRETERITE INDIC.	SIMPLE PAST PERFECT INDIC.
caber	caibo cabes cabe cabemos cabeis cabem		coube coubeste coube coubemos coubestes couberam	coubera couberas coubera coubéramos coubéreis couberam
crer	creio crês crê cremos credes creem[3]			
dar	dou dás dá damos dais dão		dei deste deu demos destes deram	dera deras dera déramos déreis deram
dizer dito	digo dizes diz dizemos dizeis dizem		disse disseste disse dissemos dissestes disseram	dissera disseras dissera disséramos disséreis disseram

---

[1] Listed in this series of verb charts is the standard *tu* affirmative imperative form; the colloquial BP form is detailed on pp. 214–215.

[2] Not listed are:

(a) the following imperative forms (which are their respective present subjunctive ones): standard *tu* negative, *vós* negative, and standard formal *você(s)*

(b) personal infinitives and present participles (which are always regular)

(c) regular tenses and forms

[3] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

FUTURE INDIC.	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJ.	PAST SUBJ.	FUTURE SUBJ.	*TU / VÓS* AFF. IMPERATIVE
		caiba caibas caiba caibamos caibais caibam	coubesse coubesses coubesse coubéssemos coubésseis coubessem	couber couberes couber coubermos couberdes couberem	
		creia creias creia creiamos creiais creiam			crê crede
		dê dês dê demos deis deem[1]	desse desses desse déssemos désseis dessem	der deres der dermos derdes derem	dá dai
direi dirás dirá diremos direis dirão	diria dirias diria diríamos diríeis diriam	diga digas diga digamos digais digam	dissesse dissesses dissesse disséssemos dissésseis dissessem	disser disseres disser dissermos disserdes disserem	diz(e) dizei

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

INFINITIVE / PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDIC.	IMPERFECT INDIC.	PRETERITE INDIC.	SIMPLE PAST PERFECT INDIC.
estar	estou estás está estamos estais estão		estive estiveste esteve estivemos estivestes estiveram	estivera estiveras estivera estivéramos estivéreis estiveram
fazer feito	faço fazes faz fazemos fazeis fazem		fiz fizeste fez fizemos fizestes fizeram	fizera fizeras fizera fizéramos fizéreis fizeram
haver	hei hás há havemos haveis hão		houve houveste houve houvemos houvestes houveram	houvera houveras houvera houvéramos houvéreis houveram
ir	vou vais vai vamos ides vão		fui foste foi fomos fostes foram	fora foras fora fôramos fôreis foram
ler	leio lês lê lemos ledes leem[1]			

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

FUTURE INDIC.	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJ.	PAST SUBJ.	FUTURE SUBJ.	*TU / VÓS* AFF. IMPERATIVE
		esteja estejas esteja estejamos estejais estejam	estivesse estivesses estivesse estivéssemos estivésseis estivessem	estiver estiveres estiver estivermos estiverdes estiverem	está estai
farei farás fará faremos fareis farão	faria farias faria faríamos faríeis fariam	faça faças faça façamos façais façam	fizesse fizesses fizesse fizéssemos fizésseis fizessem	fizer fizeres fizer fizermos fizerdes fizerem	faz(e) fazei
		haja hajas haja hajamos hajais hajam	houvesse houvesses houvesse houvéssemos houvésseis houvessem	houver houveres houver houvermos houverdes houverem	há havei
		vá vás vá vamos vades vão	fosse fosses fosse fôssemos fôsseis fossem	for fores for formos fordes forem	vai ide
		leia leias leia leiamos leiais leiam			lê lede

INFINITIVE / PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDIC.	IMPERFECT INDIC.	PRETERITE INDIC.	SIMPLE PAST PERFECT INDIC.
poder	posso podes pode podemos podeis podem		pude pudeste pôde pudemos pudestes puderam	pudera puderas pudera pudéramos pudéreis puderam
pôr[1] posto	ponho pões põe pomos pondes põem	punha punhas punha púnhamos púnheis punham	pus puseste pôs pusemos pusestes puseram	pusera puseras pusera puséramos puséreis puseram
querer	quero queres quer queremos quereis querem		quis quiseste quis quisemos quisestes quiseram	quisera quiseras quisera quiséramos quiséreis quiseram
(**sor**)**rir**	(sor)rio (sor)ris (sor)ri (sor)rimos (sor)rides (sor)riem			
saber	sei sabes sabe sabemos sabeis sabem		soube soubeste soube soubemos soubestes souberam	soubera souberas soubera soubéramos soubéreis souberam

---

[1] The present participle of *pôr* (and derived verbs) is not marked with a circumflex *([su]pondo)*.

FUTURE INDIC.	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJ.	PAST SUBJ.	FUTURE SUBJ.	*TU / VÓS* AFF. IMPERATIVE
		possa possas possa possamos possais possam	pudesse pudesses pudesse pudéssemos pudésseis pudessem	puder puderes puder pudermos puderdes puderem	
		ponha ponhas ponha ponhamos ponhais ponham	pusesse pusesses pusesse puséssemos pusésseis pusessem	puser puseres puser pusermos puserdes puserem	põe ponde
		queira queiras queira queiramos queirais queiram	quisesse quisesses quisesse quiséssemos quisésseis quisessem	quiser quiseres quiser quisermos quiserdes quiserem	quer(e) querei
		(sor)ria (sor)rias (sor)ria (sor)riamos (sor)riais (sor)riam			(sor)ri (sor)ride
		saiba saibas saiba saibamos saibais saibam	soubesse soubesses soubesse soubéssemos soubésseis soubessem	souber souberes souber soubermos souberdes souberem	

INFINITIVE / PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDIC.	IMPERFECT INDIC.	PRETERITE INDIC.	SIMPLE PAST PERFECT INDIC.
ser	sou és é somos sois são	era eras era éramos éreis eram	fui foste foi fomos fostes foram	fora foras fora fôramos fôreis foram
ter	tenho tens tem temos tendes têm	tinha tinhas tinha tínhamos tínheis tinham	tive tiveste teve tivemos tivestes tiveram	tivera tiveras tivera tivéramos tivéreis tiveram
trazer	trago trazes traz trazemos trazeis trazem		trouxe trouxeste trouxe trouxemos trouxestes trouxeram	trouxera trouxeras trouxera trouxéramos trouxéreis trouxeram
ver visto	vejo vês vê vemos vedes veem[1]		vi viste viu vimos vistes viram	vira viras vira víramos víreis viram
vir vindo	venho vens vem vimos vindes vêm	vinha vinhas vinha vínhamos vínheis vinham	vim vieste veio viemos viestes vieram	viera vieras viera viéramos viéreis vieram

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

FUTURE INDIC.	CONDITIONAL	PRESENT SUBJ.	PAST SUBJ.	FUTURE SUBJ.	*TU / VÓS* AFF. IMPERATIVE
		seja sejas seja sejamos sejais sejam	fosse fosses fosse fôssemos fôsseis fossem	for fores for formos fordes forem	sê sede
		tenha tenhas tenha tenhamos tenhais tenham	tivesse tivesses tivesse tivéssemos tivésseis tivessem	tiver tiveres tiver tivermos tiverdes tiverem	tem tende
trarei trarás trará traremos trareis trarão	traria trarias traria traríamos traríeis trariam	traga tragas traga tragamos tragais tragam	trouxesse trouxesses trouxesse trouxéssemos trouxésseis trouxessem	trouxer trouxeres trouxer trouxermos trouxerdes trouxerem	traz(e) trazei
		veja vejas veja vejamos vejais vejam	visse visses visse víssemos vísseis vissem	vir vires vir virmos virdes virem	vê vede
		venha venhas venha venhamos venhais venham	viesse viesses viesse viéssemos viésseis viessem	vier vieres vier viermos vierdes vierem	vem vinde

VERB TENSES AND FORMS[1, 2, 3]

---

[1] Not listed in this series of verb charts are 2nd-pers. plur. verbs (which take the subject pronoun *vós* and are no longer used in Portuguese except in an occasional formal speech or sermon); 2nd-pers. plur. verbs are listed in the charts of regular and irregular verbs on pp. 238–247.
[2] Irregular forms are italicized.
[3] Examples of verb models are not necessarily limited to those listed under "other verbs."

PRESENT INDICATIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ // ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS // ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove infinitive ending, then add:)					
-AR	-o	-as	-a	-amos	-am
-ER	-o	-es	-e	-emos	-em
-IR	-o	-es	-e	-imos	-em
ORTHOGRAPHY-CHANGING VERBS (1st-pers. sing. only)					
-CER	*-ço*				
conhecer	*conheço*	conheces	conhece	conhecemos	conhecem
other verbs: **aborrecer**, **acontecer**, **adormecer**, **agradecer**, **amanhecer**, **anoitecer**, (**des**)**aparecer**, **apetecer**, **apodrecer**, **aquecer**, **arrefecer**, **descer**, **desconhecer**, **emagrecer**, **embranquecer**, **empobrecer**, **enegrecer**, **enfraquecer**, **enriquecer**, **entristecer**, **envelhecer**, **esquecer**, **estabelecer**, **florescer**, **fornecer**, **guarnecer**, **merecer**, **nascer**, (**des**)**obedecer**, **oferecer**, (**com**)**parecer**, **reconhecer**, **tecer**, **torcer**, (**con**)**vencer**					
-GER / -GIR	*-jo*				
proteger	*protejo*	proteges	protege	protegemos	protegem
dirigir	*dirijo*	diriges	dirige	dirigimos	dirigem
other verbs: **eleger**; **afligir**, (**re**)**agir**, **corrigir**, **erigir**, **exigir**, **fingir**, **frigir**, (**a**)**tingir**; **fugir**, **-vergir** (see p. 250 for radical changes)					
-GUER / -GUIR	*-go*				
erguer	*ergo*	ergues	ergue	erguemos	erguem
extinguir	*extingo*	extingues	extingue	extinguimos	extinguem
other verbs: **distinguir**; **seguir** (see p. 250 for radical change)					

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ // ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS // ELES / ELAS*
RADICAL-CHANGING VERBS					
-IR (E > I)					
seguir[1]	*sigo*	segues	segue	seguimos	seguem
sentir[2]	*sinto*	sentes	sente	sentimos	sentem
vestir[3]	*visto*	vestes	veste	vestimos	vestem
other verbs: **aderir**, **despir**, **ferir**,[4] **gerir**,[5] **-gredir**, **inserir**, **mentir**, **-pelir**, **-petir**, **prevenir**, **refletir**, **-vergir**, **-vertir**					
-IR (O > U)					
cobrir[6]	*cubro*	cobres	cobre	cobrimos	cobrem
dormir	*durmo*	dormes	dorme	dormimos	dormem
other verbs: **engolir**, **tossir**					
-IR (U > O)					
fugir	*fujo*	*foges*	*foge*	fugimos	*fogem*
subir	subo	*sobes*	*sobe*	subimos	*sobem*
other verbs: **-cudir**, **cuspir**, (**con**)**sumir**					
-EAR (E > EI)					
passear	*passeio*	*passeias*	*passeia*	passeamos	*passeiam*
other verbs: **barbear**, **basear**, **bronzear**, **cear**, **chatear**, **espernear**, **folhear**, **nomear**, **pentear**, **recear**, **rechear**, **rodear**, **saborear**, **semear**, **vaguear**; also **ansiar**, **incendiar**, **odiar**, (**re**)**mediar**					

Also derived verbs:
[1] **conseguir**, **perseguir**, **prosseguir**
[2] **consentir**, **pressentir**, **ressentir**
[3] **desvestir**, **investir**, **revestir**
[4] **conferir**, **deferir**, **diferir**, **inferir**, **interferir**, **preferir**, **proferir**, **referir**, **transferir**
[5] **digerir**, **ingerir**, **sugerir**
[6] **descobrir**, **encobrir**, **recobrir**

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (variant conjugation models // acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / u*)					
(sor)rir	*(sor)rio*	*(sor)ris*	*(sor)ri*	(sor)rimos	*(sor)riem*
-AIR					
cair[1]	*caio*	*cais*	*cai*	*caímos*	caem
sair	*saio*	*sais*	*sai*	*saímos*	saem
trair[2]	*traio*	*trais*	*trai*	*traímos*	traem
-UIR					
fluir[3]	fluo	*fluis*	*flui*	*fluímos*	fluem
-cluir[4]	-cluo	*-cluis*	*-clui*	*-cluímos*	-cluem
-stituir[5]	-stituo	*-stituis*	*-stitui*	*-stituímos*	-stituem
-tribuir[6]	-tribuo	*-tribuis*	*-tribui*	*-tribuímos*	-tribuem
other verbs: **instruir**, **poluir**, **possuir**					
construir[7]	construo	*constróis*	*constrói*	*construímos*	*constroem*
destruir[7]	destruo	*destróis*	*destrói*	*destruímos*	*destroem*
-OER					
doer			*dói*		doem
moer	moo[8]	*móis*	*mói*	moemos	moem
other verbs: **(cor)roer**					

(Also) derived verbs:
[1] **decair**, **recair**
[2] **abstrair**, **atrair**, **distrair**, **extrair**, **subtrair**
[3] **afluir**, **influir**, **refluir**
[4] **concluir**, **excluir**, **incluir**, **recluir**
[5] **constituir**, **instituir**
[6] **atribuir**, **contribuir**, **distribuir**

[7] Alternative forms:		*construis*	*construi*		construem
		destruis	*destrui*		destruem

[8] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *o* of *oo.*

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ // ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS // ELES / ELAS*
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (irregular 1st-pers. sing. and/or abbreviated 3rd-pers. sing.)					
caber	*caibo*	cabes	cabe	cabemos	cabem
perder	*perco*	perdes	perde	perdemos	perdem
poder	*posso*	podes	pode	podemos	podem
saber	*sei*	sabes	sabe	sabemos	sabem
valer	*valho*	vales	vale	valemos	valem
medir	*meço*	medes	mede	medimos	medem
ouvir	*ouço*[1]	ouves	ouve	ouvimos	ouvem
pedir	*peço*	pedes	pede	pedimos	pedem
querer	quero	queres	*quer*	queremos	querem
requerer	*requeiro*	requeres	*requer*	requeremos	requerem
dizer[2]	*digo*	dizes	*diz*	dizemos	dizem
fazer[3]	*faço*	fazes	*faz*	fazemos	fazem
trazer	*trago*	trazes	*traz*	trazemos	trazem
jazer	jazo	jazes	*jaz*	jazemos	jazem
-UZIR					
luzir	luzo	luzes	*luz*	luzimos	luzem
-duzir[4]	-duzo	-duzes	*-duz*	-duzimos	-duzem

---

[1] EP: Also *oiço.*

(Also) derived verbs:
[2] **predizer**, **redizer**
[3] **desfazer**, **refazer**, **satisfazer**
[4] **conduzir**, **deduzir**, **induzir**, **introduzir**, **(re)produzir**, **reduzir**, **seduzir**, **traduzir**

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
TRUE IRREGULAR VERBS					
crer	*creio*	*crês*	*crê*	cremos	*creem*[5]
ler	*leio*	*lês*	*lê*	lemos	*leem*[5]
ver[1]	*vejo*	*vês*	*vê*	vemos	*veem*[5]
pôr[2]	*ponho*	*pões*	*põe*	*pomos*	*põem*
ter[3]	*tenho*	*tens*	*tem*	temos	*têm*
vir[4]	*venho*	*vens*	*vem*	vimos	*vêm*
haver	*hei*	*hás*	*há*	havemos	*hão*
dar	*dou*	*dás*	*dá*	damos	*dão*
estar	*estou*	*estás*	*está*	estamos	*estão*
ir	*vou*	*vais*	*vai*	*vamos*	*vão*
ser	*sou*	*és*	*é*	*somos*	*são*

Also derived verbs:
[1] **prever**, **rever**
[2] **compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**
[3] **abster**, **conter**, **deter**, **manter**, **reter**, **suster**
[4] **convir**, **revir**

[5] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee.*

IMPERFECT (PRETERITE IMPERFECT) INDICATIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove infinitive ending, then add:)					
-AR	-ava	-avas	-ava	-ávamos	-avam
-ER	-ia	-ias	-ia	-íamos	-iam
-IR	-ia	-ias	-ia	-íamos	-iam
(acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / o / u*)					
-AIR / -UIR / -OER					
sair	*saía*	*saías*	*saía*	*saíamos*	*saíam*
-fluir	*-fluía*	*-fluías*	*-fluía*	*-fluíamos*	*-fluíam*
moer	*moía*	*moías*	*moía*	*moíamos*	*moíam*
other verbs: **-cair**, **-trair**; **-cluir**, **poluir**, **possuir**, **-stituir**, **-struir**, **-tribuir**; **doer**, **(cor)roer**					
IRREGULAR VERBS					
pôr[1]	*punha*	*punhas*	*punha*	*púnhamos*	*punham*
ter[2]	*tinha*	*tinhas*	*tinha*	*tínhamos*	*tinham*
vir[3]	*vinha*	*vinhas*	*vinha*	*vínhamos*	*vinham*
ser	*era*	*eras*	*era*	*éramos*	*eram*

Also derived verbs:
[1] **compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**
[2] **abster**, **conter**, **deter**, **manter**, **reter**, **suster**
[3] **convir**, **revir**

PRETERITE (PRETERITE PERFECT) INDICATIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove infinitive ending, then add:)					
-AR	-ei	-aste	-ou	-amos	-aram
-ER	-i	-este	-eu	-emos	-eram
-IR	-i	-iste	-iu	-imos	-iram
(acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / o / u*)					
-AIR / -UIR / -OER					
sair	*saí*	*saíste*	saiu	*saímos*	*saíram*
-fluir	*-fluí*	*-fluíste*	-fluiu	*-fluímos*	*-fluíram*
moer	*moí*	moeste	moeu	moemos	moeram
other verbs: **-cair**, **-trair**; **-cluir**, **poluir**, **possuir**, **-stituir**, **-struir**, **-tribuir**; (**cor**)**roer**					
ORTHOGRAPHY-CHANGING VERBS (1st-pers. sing. only)					
-ÇAR	*-cei*				
dançar	*dancei*	dançaste	dançou	dançamos	dançaram
other verbs: **almoçar**, **começar**, (**es**)**forçar**, **tropeçar**					
-CAR	*-quei*				
tocar	*toquei*	tocaste	tocou	tocamos	tocaram
other verbs: **brincar**, **buscar**, **dedicar**, **ficar**, **-ificar**, **secar**					
-GAR	*-guei*				
chegar	*cheguei*	chegaste	chegou	chegamos	chegaram
other verbs: **apagar**, (**en**)**carregar**, **cegar**, **entregar**, **enxugar**, **instigar**, **investigar**, **jogar**, **julgar**, (**des**)**ligar**, **negar**, **obrigar**, **pagar**, **pegar**, (**em**)**pregar**, **prolongar**, **rasgar**, (**inter**)**rogar**, **vingar**					

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (variant conjugation models // radicals differing from those of infinitives // abbreviated 1st / 3rd-pers. sing. and/or different vowel in 3rd-pers. sing. [in some verbs])					
haver	*houve*	*houveste*	*houve*	*houvemos*	*houveram*
caber	*coube*	*coubeste*	*coube*	*coubemos*	*couberam*
saber	*soube*	*soubeste*	*soube*	*soubemos*	*souberam*
trazer	*trouxe*	*trouxeste*	*trouxe*	*trouxemos*	*trouxeram*
dizer[1]	*disse*	*disseste*	*disse*	*dissemos*	*disseram*
querer[7]	*quis*	*quiseste*	*quis*	*quisemos*	*quiseram*
ter[2]	*tive*	*tiveste*	*teve*	*tivemos*	*tiveram*
estar	*estive*	*estiveste*	*esteve*	*estivemos*	*estiveram*
fazer[3]	*fiz*	*fizeste*	*fez*	*fizemos*	*fizeram*
poder	*pude*	*pudeste*	*pôde*	*pudemos*	*puderam*
pôr[4]	*pus*	*puseste*	*pôs*	*pusemos*	*puseram*
TRUE IRREGULAR VERBS					
dar	*dei*	*deste*	*deu*	*demos*	*deram*
ver[5]	*vi*	*viste*	*viu*	*vimos*	*viram*
vir[6]	*vim*	*vieste*	*veio*	*viemos*	*vieram*
ir	*fui*	*foste*	*foi*	*fomos*	*foram*
ser	*fui*	*foste*	*foi*	*fomos*	*foram*

Also derived verbs:
[1] **predizer**, **redizer**
[2] **abster**, **conter**, **deter**, **manter**, **reter**, **suster**
[3] **desfazer**, **refazer**, **satisfazer**
[4] **compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**
[5] **prever**, **rever**
[6] **convir**, **revir**

[7] The preterite of *requerer* is regular *(requeri / requereste / requereu / requeremos / requereram)*.

SIMPLE PAST PERFECT (PLUPERFECT) INDICATIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove 3rd-pers. plur. preterite ending, then add:)					
-AR	-ara	-aras	-ara	-áramos	-aram
-ER	-era	-eras	-era	-êramos	-eram
-IR	-ira	-iras	-ira	-íramos	-iram
(acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / u*)					
-AIR / -UIR					
sair	*saíra*	*saíras*	*saíra*	*saíramos*	*saíram*
-fluir	*-fluíra*	*-fluíras*	*-fluíra*	*-fluíramos*	*-fluíram*
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (derived from irregular 3rd-pers. plur. preterite)					
haver	*houvera*	*houveras*	*houvera*	*houvéramos*	*houveram*
caber	*coubera*	*couberas*	*coubera*	*coubéramos*	*couberam*
saber	*soubera*	*souberas*	*soubera*	*soubéramos*	*souberam*
trazer	*trouxera*	*trouxeras*	*trouxera*	*trouxéramos*	*trouxeram*
dizer	*dissera*	*disseras*	*dissera*	*disséramos*	*disseram*
querer	*quisera*	*quiseras*	*quisera*	*quiséramos*	*quiseram*
ter	*tivera*	*tiveras*	*tivera*	*tivéramos*	*tiveram*
estar	*estivera*	*estiveras*	*estivera*	*estivéramos*	*estiveram*
fazer	*fizera*	*fizeras*	*fizera*	*fizéramos*	*fizeram*
poder	*pudera*	*puderas*	*pudera*	*pudéramos*	*puderam*
pôr	*pusera*	*puseras*	*pusera*	*puséramos*	*puseram*
dar	*dera*	*deras*	*dera*	*déramos*	*deram*
ver	*vira*	*viras*	*vira*	*víramos*	*viram*
vir	*viera*	*vieras*	*viera*	*viéramos*	*vieram*
ir	*fora*	*foras*	*fora*	*fôramos*	*foram*
ser	*fora*	*foras*	*fora*	*fôramos*	*foram*

FUTURE INDICATIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (to infinitive, add:)					
-AR	-ei	-ás	-á	-emos	-ão
-ER	-ei	-ás	-á	-emos	-ão
-IR	-ei	-ás	-á	-emos	-ão
pôr[1, 2]	*porei*	*porás*	*porá*	*poremos*	*porão*
IRREGULAR VERBS (no *-ze* of infinitive)					
dizer[3]	*direi*	*dirás*	*dirá*	*diremos*	*dirão*
fazer[4]	*farei*	*farás*	*fará*	*faremos*	*farão*
trazer	*trarei*	*trarás*	*trará*	*traremos*	*trarão*

---

[1] Future indicative forms of *pôr* (and derived verbs) are not marked with a circumflex.

Also derived verbs:
[2] **compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**
[3] **predizer**, **redizer**
[4] **desfazer**, **refazer**, **satisfazer**

CONDITIONAL

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (to infinitive, add:)					
-AR	-ia	-ias	-ia	-íamos	-iam
-ER	-ia	-ias	-ia	-íamos	-iam
-IR	-ia	-ias	-ia	-íamos	-iam
pôr[1, 2]	*poria*	*porias*	*poria*	*poríamos*	*poriam*
IRREGULAR VERBS (no *-ze* of infinitive)					
dizer[3]	*diria*	*dirias*	*diria*	*diríamos*	*diriam*
fazer[4]	*faria*	*farias*	*faria*	*faríamos*	*fariam*
trazer	*traria*	*trarias*	*traria*	*traríamos*	*trariam*

---

[1] Conditional forms of *pôr* (and derived verbs) are not marked with a circumflex.

Also derived verbs:
[2] **compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**
[3] **predizer**, **redizer**
[4] **desfazer**, **refazer**, **satisfazer**

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove 1st-pers. sing. present indicative // infinitive ending, then add:)					
-AR	-e	-es	-e	-emos	-em
-ER	-a	-as	-a	-amos	-am
-IR	-a	-as	-a	-amos	-am
The present subjunctive normally derives from the 1st-pers. sing. present indicative, regardless of whether any other present indicative forms are irregular.					
conduzir	conduza	conduzas	conduza	conduzamos	conduzam
construir	construa	construas	construa	construamos	construam
cuspir	cuspa	cuspas	cuspa	cuspamos	cuspam
fluir	flua	fluas	flua	fluamos	fluam
sacudir	sacuda	sacudas	sacuda	sacudamos	sacudam
subir	suba	subas	suba	subamos	subam
(con)sumir	(con)suma	(con)sumas	(con)suma	(con)sumamos	(con)sumam
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (derived from orthography-changing or irregular 1st-pers. sing. present indicative)					
proteger	*proteja*	*protejas*	*proteja*	*protejamos*	*protejam*
dirigir	*dirija*	*dirijas*	*dirija*	*dirijamos*	*dirijam*
fugir	*fuja*	*fujas*	*fuja*	*fujamos*	*fujam*
erguer	*erga*	*ergas*	*erga*	*ergamos*	*ergam*
extinguir	*extinga*	*extingas*	*extinga*	*extingamos*	*extingam*
chegar	*chegue*	*chegues*	*chegue*	*cheguemos*	*cheguem*
conhecer	*conheça*	*conheças*	*conheça*	*conheçamos*	*conheçam*
dançar	*dance*	*dances*	*dance*	*dancemos*	*dancem*
tocar	*toque*	*toques*	*toque*	*toquemos*	*toquem*
seguir	*siga*	*sigas*	*siga*	*sigamos*	*sigam*
sentir	*sinta*	*sintas*	*sinta*	*sintamos*	*sintam*
dormir	*durma*	*durmas*	*durma*	*durmamos*	*durmam*
passear	*passeie*	*passeies*	*passeie*	passeemos	*passeiem*
sair	*saia*	*saias*	*saia*	*saiamos*	*saiam*
(sor)rir	*(sor)ria*	*(sor)rias*	*(sor)ria*	*(sor)riamos*	*(sor)riam*

(cont.)

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ // ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS // ELES / ELAS*
crer	*creia*	*creias*	*creia*	*creiamos*	*creiam*
ler	*leia*	*leias*	*leia*	*leiamos*	*leiam*
ver	*veja*	*vejas*	*veja*	*vejamos*	*vejam*
dizer	*diga*	*digas*	*diga*	*digamos*	*digam*
trazer	*traga*	*tragas*	*traga*	*tragamos*	*tragam*
fazer	*faça*	*faças*	*faça*	*façamos*	*façam*
medir	*meça*	*meças*	*meça*	*meçamos*	*meçam*
ouvir[1]	*ouça*	*ouças*	*ouça*	*ouçamos*	*ouçam*
pedir	*peça*	*peças*	*peça*	*peçamos*	*peçam*
pôr	*ponha*	*ponhas*	*ponha*	*ponhamos*	*ponham*
ter	*tenha*	*tenhas*	*tenha*	*tenhamos*	*tenham*
vir	*venha*	*venhas*	*venha*	*venhamos*	*venham*
caber	*caiba*	*caibas*	*caiba*	*caibamos*	*caibam*
perder	*perca*	*percas*	*perca*	*percamos*	*percam*
poder	*possa*	*possas*	*possa*	*possamos*	*possam*
requerer	*requeira*	*requeiras*	*requeira*	*requeiramos*	*requeiram*
valer	*valha*	*valhas*	*valha*	*valhamos*	*valham*
TRUE IRREGULAR VERBS (not derived from 1st-pers. sing. present indicative)					
haver	*haja*	*hajas*	*haja*	*hajamos*	*hajam*
estar	*esteja*	*estejas*	*esteja*	*estejamos*	*estejam*
ser	*seja*	*sejas*	*seja*	*sejamos*	*sejam*
dar	*dê*	*dês*	*dê*	demos	*deem*[2]
ir	*vá*	*vás*	*vá*	*vamos*	*vão*
querer	*queira*	*queiras*	*queira*	*queiramos*	*queiram*
saber	*saiba*	*saibas*	*saiba*	*saibamos*	*saibam*

---

[1] EP: Also *oiça* *oiças* *oiça* *oiçamos* *oiçam*

[2] Portuguese no longer uses a circumflex over the first *e* of *ee*.

PAST (IMPERFECT) SUBJUNCTIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove 3rd-pers. plur. preterite ending, then add:)					
-AR	-asse	-asses	-asse	-ássemos	-assem
-ER	-esse	-esses	-esse	-êssemos	-essem
-IR	-isse	-isses	-isse	-íssemos	-issem
(acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / u*)					
-AIR / -UIR					
sair	*saísse*	*saísses*	*saísse*	*saíssemos*	*saíssem*
-fluir	*-fluísse*	*-fluísses*	*-fluísse*	*-fluíssemos*	*-fluíssem*
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (derived from irregular 3rd-pers. plur. preterite)					
haver	*houvesse*	*houvesses*	*houvesse*	*houvéssemos*	*houvessem*
caber	*coubesse*	*coubesses*	*coubesse*	*coubéssemos*	*coubessem*
saber	*soubesse*	*soubesses*	*soubesse*	*soubéssemos*	*soubessem*
trazer	*trouxesse*	*trouxesses*	*trouxesse*	*trouxéssemos*	*trouxessem*
dizer	*dissesse*	*dissesses*	*dissesse*	*disséssemos*	*dissessem*
querer	*quisesse*	*quisesses*	*quisesse*	*quiséssemos*	*quisessem*
ter	*tivesse*	*tivesses*	*tivesse*	*tivéssemos*	*tivessem*
estar	*estivesse*	*estivesses*	*estivesse*	*estivéssemos*	*estivessem*
fazer	*fizesse*	*fizesses*	*fizesse*	*fizéssemos*	*fizessem*
poder	*pudesse*	*pudesses*	*pudesse*	*pudéssemos*	*pudessem*
pôr	*pusesse*	*pusesses*	*pusesse*	*puséssemos*	*pusessem*
dar	*desse*	*desses*	*desse*	*déssemos*	*dessem*
ver	*visse*	*visses*	*visse*	*víssemos*	*vissem*
vir	*viesse*	*viesses*	*viesse*	*viéssemos*	*viessem*
ir	*fosse*	*fosses*	*fosse*	*fôssemos*	*fossem*
ser	*fosse*	*fosses*	*fosse*	*fôssemos*	*fossem*

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
REGULAR VERBS (remove 3rd-pers. plur. preterite ending, then add:)					
-AR	-ar	-ares	-ar	-armos	-arem
-ER	-er	-eres	-er	-ermos	-erem
-IR	-ir	-ires	-ir	-irmos	-irem
(acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / u*)					
-AIR / -UIR					
sair	sair	*saíres*	sair	sairmos	*saírem*
-fluir	-fluir	*-fluíres*	-fluir	-fluirmos	*-fluírem*
SEMI-IRREGULAR VERBS (derived from irregular 3rd-pers. plur. preterite)					
haver	*houver*	*houveres*	*houver*	*houvermos*	*houverem*
caber	*couber*	*couberes*	*couber*	*coubermos*	*couberem*
saber	*souber*	*souberes*	*souber*	*soubermos*	*souberem*
trazer	*trouxer*	*trouxeres*	*trouxer*	*trouxermos*	*trouxerem*
dizer	*disser*	*disseres*	*disser*	*dissermos*	*disserem*
querer	*quiser*	*quiseres*	*quiser*	*quisermos*	*quiserem*
ter	*tiver*	*tiveres*	*tiver*	*tivermos*	*tiverem*
estar	*estiver*	*estiveres*	*estiver*	*estivermos*	*estiverem*
fazer	*fizer*	*fizeres*	*fizer*	*fizermos*	*fizerem*
poder	*puder*	*puderes*	*puder*	*pudermos*	*puderem*
pôr	*puser*	*puseres*	*puser*	*pusermos*	*puserem*
dar	*der*	*deres*	*der*	*dermos*	*derem*
ver	*vir*	*vires*	*vir*	*virmos*	*virem*
vir	*vier*	*vieres*	*vier*	*viermos*	*vierem*
ir	*for*	*fores*	*for*	*formos*	*forem*
ser	*for*	*fores*	*for*	*formos*	*forem*

PERSONAL INFINITIVE

	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ //* *ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS //* *ELES / ELAS*
PERSONAL INFINITIVES (to infinitive, add:)					
-AR	-	-es	-	-mos	-em
-ER	-	-es	-	-mos	-em
-IR	-	-es	-	-mos	-em
pôr	pôr[1]	*pores*	pôr[1]	*pormos*	*porem*

---

[1] Personal infinitive forms of verbs derived from *pôr* are not marked with a circumflex (**compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**).

PAST PARTICIPLE

REGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES
(remove infinitive ending, then add:)

-AR	-ado
-ER	-ido
-IR	-ido

(acute accent over stressed *i* preceded by *a / o / u*)

-AIR / -UIR / -OER

sair	*saído*
-fluir	*-fluído*
moer	*moído*

other verbs: **-cair**, **-trair**; **-cluir**, **poluir**, **possuir**, **-stituir**, **-struir**, **-tribuir**; **doer**, **(cor)roer**

TRUE IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES

abrir[1]	*aberto*
cobrir[2]	*coberto*
dizer[3]	*dito*
escrever[4]	*escrito*
fazer[5]	*feito*
pôr[6]	*posto*
ver[7]	*visto*
vir[8]	*vindo*

Also derived verbs:
[1] **entreabrir**, **reabrir**
[2] **descobrir**, **encobrir**, **recobrir**
[3] **predizer**, **redizer**
[4] **descrever**, **inscrever**, **transcrever**
[5] **desfazer**, **refazer**, **satisfazer**
[6] **compor**, **depor**, **impor**, **opor**, **pospor**, **repor**, **sotopor**, **supor**
[7] **prever**, **rever**
[8] **convir**, **revir**

VERBS WITH DUAL PAST PARTICIPLE FORMS

	REGULAR FORM (with ***ter / haver***)	IRREGULAR FORM (adjective)[1]
absorver	absorvido	*absorto*
aceitar	aceitado	*aceito* (EP: *aceite*)
acender	acendido	*aceso*
afligir	afligido	*aflito*
agradecer	agradecido	*grato*
atender	atendido	*atento*
benzer	benzido	*bento*
cegar	cegado	*cego*
-cluir	-cluído	*-cluso (concluso, incluso)*
completar	completado	*completo*
confundir	confundido	*confuso*
convencer	convencido	*convicto*
corrigir	corrigido	*correto*
corromper	corrompido	*corrupto*
cultivar	cultivado	*culto*
descalçar	descalçado	*descalço*
dispersar	dispersado	*disperso*
dissolver	dissolvido	*dissoluto*
eleger	elegido	*eleito*
encher	enchido	*cheio*
entregar	entregado	*entregue*
(des)envolver	(des)envolvido	*(des)envolto*
enxugar	enxugado	*enxuto*
erigir	erigido	*ere(c)to*
exaurir	exaurido	*exausto*
exaustar	exaustado	*exausto*
expelir	expelido	*expulso*
expressar	expressado	*expresso*
exprimir	exprimido	*expresso*
expulsar	expulsado	*expulso*
fartar	fartado	*farto*
findar	findado	*findo*
fixar	fixado	*fixo*
frigir	frigido	*frito*
fritar	fritado	*frito*

---

[1] In colloquial Portuguese, the regular form often replaces the irregular one when used in the passive voice; most irregular forms, however, are still widely used as adjectives.

(cont.)

	REGULAR FORM (with ***ter / haver***)	IRREGULAR FORM (adjective)
ganhar	ganhado[1]	*ganho*
gastar	gastado[1]	*gasto*
imprimir	imprimido	*impresso*
infe(c)tar	infe(c)tado	*infe(c)to*
inserir	inserido	*inserto*
isentar	isentado	*isento*
juntar	juntado	*junto*
libertar	libertado	*liberto*
limpar	limpado	*limpo*
manifestar	manifestado	*manifesto*
matar	matado	*morto*
-mergir	-mergido	*-merso (emerso, imerso, submerso)*
morrer	morrido	*morto*
murchar	murchado	*murcho*
nascer	nascido	*nato, nado*
ocultar	ocultado	*oculto*
omitir	omitido	*omisso*
pagar	pagado[1]	*pago*
prender	prendido	*preso*
romper	rompido	*roto*
salvar	salvado	*salvo*
secar	secado	*seco*
segurar	segurado	*seguro*
soltar	soltado	*solto*
sujeitar	sujeitado	*sujeito*
suprimir	suprimido	*supresso*
surpreender	surpreendido	*surpreso*
suspeitar	suspeitado	*suspeito*
suspender	suspendido	*suspenso*
tingir	tingido	*tinto*
-tinguir	-tinguido	*-tinto (distinto, extinto)*
torcer	torcido	*torto*
vagar	vagado	*vago*

---

[1] The irregular form is also used with *ter / haver.*

COMPOUND TENSES

COMPOUND TENSE (***ter*** / ***haver*** + masc. sing. past participle of any verb)	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ // ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS // ELES / ELAS*	+ **past part**.
Indicative						
present perfect	tenho	tens	tem	temos	têm	**ido**
compound past perfect	tinha	tinhas	tinha	tínhamos	tinham	**ido**
future perfect	terei	terás	terá	teremos	terão	**ido**
conditional perfect	teria	terias	teria	teríamos	teriam	**ido**
Subjunctive	(que)	(que)	(que)	(que)	(que)	
present perfect	tenha	tenhas	tenha	tenhamos	tenham	**ido**
past perfect	tivesse	tivesses	tivesse	tivéssemos	tivessem	**ido**
future perfect	tiver	tiveres	tiver	tivermos	tiverem	**ido**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND PROGRESSIVE TENSES[1]

PRESENT PARTICIPLES (remove infinitive ending, then add:)	
-AR	-ando
-ER	-endo
-IR	-indo
pôr	*pondo*[2]

---

[1] See p. 211nn1–2 concerning the terms *present participle* and *gerund*.
[2] The present participle of *pôr* (and derived verbs) is not marked with a circumflex.

PROGRESSIVE TENSE (***estar*** + present participle of any verb)	1st sing. *EU*	2nd sing. *TU*	3rd sing. *VOCÊ // ELE / ELA*	1st plur. *NÓS*	3rd plur. *VOCÊS // ELES / ELAS*	+ **pres. part.**
Indicative						
present progressive	estou	estás	está	estamos	estão	**indo**
imperfect progressive	estava	estavas	estava	estávamos	estavam	**indo**
preterite progressive	estive	estiveste	esteve	estivemos	estiveram	**indo**
future progressive	estarei	estarás	estará	estaremos	estarão	**indo**
conditional progressive	estaria	estarias	estaria	estaríamos	estariam	**indo**
Subjunctive	(que)	(que)	(que)	(que)	(que)	
present progressive	esteja	estejas	esteja	estejamos	estejam	**indo**
past (imperfect) progressive	estivesse	estivesses	estivesse	estivéssemos	estivessem	**indo**
future progressive	estiver	estiveres	estiver	estivermos	estiverem	**indo**

IMPERATIVE (COMMAND FORMS)[1]

TYPE OF IMPERATIVE:				COINCIDES WITH // IS:		
standard	*tu*	affirmative	=	3rd-person	singular	present indicative[2]
standard	*tu*	negative	=	2nd-person	singular	present subjunctive
standard	*você*[3]	affirmative / negative	=	3rd-person	singular	present subjunctive
standard	*vocês*[3]	affirmative / negative	=	3rd-person	plural	present subjunctive
formal	*nós*	affirmative / negative	=	1st-person	plural	present subjunctive

---

[1] Listed are the standard imperative forms, which are used in EP and formal BP; the colloquial BP forms are detailed on pp. 214–216.
[2] Only exception: *sê (< ser)*.
[3] This form is also the standard formal imperative used with *o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)* in BP (colloquial / formal) and EP.

	TU (aff.)	*TU* **não** (neg.)	*VOCÊ* (aff. / neg.)	*VOCÊS* (aff. / neg.)	*NÓS* (aff. / neg.)
REGULAR VERBS (remove 1st-pers. sing. present indicative // infinitive ending, then add:)					
-AR	-a	-es	-e	-em	-emos
-ER	-e	-as	-a	-am	-amos
-IR	-e	-as	-a	-am	-amos

	TU (aff.)	*TU* ***não*** (neg.)	*VOCÊ* (aff. / neg.)	*VOCÊS* (aff. / neg.)	*NÓS* (aff. / neg.)
SEMI- / TRUE IRREGULAR VERBS					
caber	cabe	não *caibas*	*caiba*	*caibam*	*caibamos*
cair	cai	não *caias*	*caia*	*caiam*	*caiamos*
chegar	chega	não *chegues*	*chegue*	*cheguem*	*cheguemos*
conhecer	conhece	não *conheças*	*conheça*	*conheçam*	*conheçamos*
crer	crê	não *creias*	*creia*	*creiam*	*creiamos*
dançar	dança	não *dances*	*dance*	*dancem*	*dancemos*
dar	dá	não *dês*	*dê*	*deem*	demos
dirigir	dirige	não *dirijas*	*dirija*	*dirijam*	*dirijamos*
dizer	diz(e)	não *digas*	*diga*	*digam*	*digamos*
dormir	dorme	não *durmas*	*durma*	*durmam*	*durmamos*
estar	está	não *estejas*	*esteja*	*estejam*	*estejamos*
extinguir	extingue	não *extingas*	*extinga*	*extingam*	*extingamos*
fazer	faz(e)	não *faças*	*faça*	*façam*	*façamos*
fugir	foge	não *fujas*	*fuja*	*fujam*	*fujamos*
ir	vai	não *vás*	*vá*	*vão*	*vamos*
ler	lê	não *leias*	*leia*	*leiam*	*leiamos*
medir	mede	não *meças*	*meça*	*meçam*	*meçamos*
ouvir	ouve	não *ouças*	*ouça*	*ouçam*	*ouçamos*
passear	passeia	não *passeies*	*passeie*	*passeiem*	passeemos
pedir	pede	não *peças*	*peça*	*peçam*	*peçamos*
perder	perde	não *percas*	*perca*	*percam*	*percamos*
poder	pode	não *possas*	*possa*	*possam*	*possamos*
pôr	põe	não *ponhas*	*ponha*	*ponham*	*ponhamos*
proteger	protege	não *protejas*	*proteja*	*protejam*	*protejamos*
(re)querer	(re)quer(e)	não *(re)queiras*	*(re)queira*	*(re)queiram*	*(re)queiramos*
repetir	repete	não *repitas*	*repita*	*repitam*	*repitamos*
(sor)rir	(sor)ri	não *(sor)rias*	*(sor)ria*	*(sor)riam*	*(sor)riamos*
saber	sabe	não *saibas*	*saiba*	*saibam*	*saibamos*
sair	sai	não *saias*	*saia*	*saiam*	*saiamos*
seguir	segue	não *sigas*	*siga*	*sigam*	*sigamos*
sentir	sente	não *sintas*	*sinta*	*sintam*	*sintamos*
ser	*sê*	não *sejas*	*seja*	*sejam*	*sejamos*
ter	tem	não *tenhas*	*tenha*	*tenham*	*tenhamos*
tocar	toca	não *toques*	*toque*	*toquem*	*toquemos*
trazer	traz(e)	não *tragas*	*traga*	*tragam*	*tragamos*
valer	vale	não *valhas*	*valha*	*valham*	*valhamos*
ver	vê	não *vejas*	*veja*	*vejam*	*vejamos*
vir	vem	não *venhas*	*venha*	*venham*	*venhamos*

VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS THAT REQUIRE THE SUBJUNCTIVE[1]

CATEGORY	+ SUBJUNCTIVE (aff. / neg.)	ENGLISH (aff. / neg.)
HOPE	*esperar que*	to wait, hope that
	oxalá (que)	hopefully...
	tomara que (BP)	hopefully...
JOY / SADNESS	*alegrar*[2] (+ direct object) *que*	to make (someone) happy that
	estar contente / triste (etc.) *que*[3, 4]	to be happy / sad (etc.) that
REGRET /	*lamentar que*[4]	to regret, be sorry that
SORROW	*sentir que*[5]	to be sorry that[5]
FEAR / DREAD	*recear que*	to fear, dread that
	temer que	to fear, dread that
	ter / estar com medo (de) que	to fear, be afraid that
ANGER	*ter / estar com raiva (de) que*[3]	to be angry that
IRRITATION	*estar chateado que*[3]	to be annoyed that
SURPRISE	*surpreender*[2] (+ direct object) *que*	to surprise (someone) that
DESIRE / WISH	*querer que*	to want, wish that
	desejar que	to desire, want, wish that
APPROVAL	*gostar (de) que*	to like that
PREFERENCE	*preferir que*	to prefer that
NEED	*precisar que*	to need that
DEMAND	*exigir que*[4]	to demand, require that
	fazer com que[4]	to make (someone / something)...
COMMAND /	*mandar que*[4]	to command, order that
ORDER	*dizer* (+ indirect object) *que*[4]	to tell (someone) to
INSISTENCE	*insistir (em) que*[4, 6]	to insist that
REQUEST	*pedir* (+ indirect object) *que*[4]	to request, ask (someone) that
ADVICE	*aconselhar* (+ indirect object) *que*[4]	to counsel, advise (someone) that
	recomendar que[4]	to recommend that
	sugerir que[4]	to suggest that
PERMISSION	*permitir que*[4]	to permit that
	deixar que[4]	to let, allow, permit that
PROHIBITION	*proibir que*[4]	to prohibit that
HINDRANCE	*impedir que*[4]	to impede, hinder, prevent from
AVOIDANCE	*evitar que*	to avoid that

---

[1] The subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause.
[2] Only the 3rd-pers. sing. form (of any tense) may be used.
[3] The indicative is occasionally used in the subordinate clause.
[4] A personal infinitive often replaces the subjunctive subordinate clause;
in English, "(*for* +) object + *to*" often replaces the (subjunctive) subordinate clause.
[5] When *sentir que* means "to feel that," the indicative is used (see p. 273).
[6] When *insistir (em) que* conveys assurance or conviction, the indicative is used.

CATEGORY			
	+ SUBJUNCTIVE (neg.)	ENGLISH (neg.)	+ INDICATIVE (aff.)
DISBELIEF[1]	*não crer que*	to not believe that	*crer que*
	não acreditar que	to not believe that	*acreditar que*
	não achar que	to not think, find that	*achar que*
	não pensar que	to not think that	*pensar que*
	não sentir que	to not feel that	*sentir que*
IGNORANCE[1]	*não saber que*	to not know that	*saber que*
UNCERTAINTY[1]	*não estar seguro (de) que*	to not be sure that	*estar seguro (de) que*
	não ter certeza (de) que	to not be certain that	*ter certeza (de) que*
	não estar certo (de) que	to not be certain that	*estar certo (de) que*
	não ser certo que[2]	to not be certain that	*ser certo que*
	não ser claro que[2]	to not be clear that	*ser claro que*
	não ser óbvio que[2]	to not be obvious that	*ser óbvio que*
	não ser verdade que[2]	to not be true that	*ser verdade que*
	não parecer que[2]	to not appear, seem that	*parecer que*
	+ SUBJUNCTIVE (aff.)	ENGLISH (aff.)	+ INDICATIVE (neg.)
DENIAL[3]	*negar que*	to deny that	*não negar que*
DOUBT[3]	*duvidar que*	to doubt that	*não duvidar que*
	+ SUBJUNCTIVE (aff. / neg.)	ENGLISH (aff. / neg.)	+ INDICATIVE (aff. / neg.)
ADVERBS OF DOUBT[4]	*talvez*	perhaps, maybe	*talvez*
	quiçá	perhaps, maybe	*quiçá*

---

[1] The indicative is occasionally used in the subordinate clause after a negative verb form; this mood conveys less disbelief / uncertainty / doubt than the subjunctive.
[2] Only the 3rd-pers. sing. form (of any tense) may be used in these impersonal expressions (see p. 220: 2 for details).
[3] The subjunctive is occasionally used in the subordinate clause after a negative verb form; this mood conveys more disbelief / uncertainty / doubt than the indicative.
[4] When *talvez / quiçá*
(a) precede the verb, they require the <u>subjunctive</u> *(talvez <u>chova</u> amanhã);*
(b) follow the verb, they require the <u>indicative</u> *(<u>choveu</u> ontem, quiçá).*

IMPERSONAL VERBS / EXPRESSIONS[1, 2, 3]	+ SUBJUNCTIVE (aff. / neg.)	ENGLISH (aff. / neg.)
	bastar que	to be enough that
	convir que	to be convenient, fitting, suitable that
	poder ser que	to be possible that
	ser + adj. / noun *que*	to be...that
	poder ser + adj. / noun *que*	to be possibly...that
	parecer + adj. / noun *que*	to appear, seem...that
EXAMPLES:[4]	*ser bom / mau que*	to be good / bad that
	ser melhor / pior que	to be better / worse that
	ser ótimo / péssimo que	to be great, wonderful / awful that
	parecer absurdo que	to appear, seem absurd that
	ser aconselhável que	to be advisable that
	ser conveniente que	to be convenient, fitting, suitable that
	ser uma desgraça que	to be a disgrace, unfortunate that
	ser essencial que	to be essential that
	ser estranho que	to be strange that
	poder ser fácil / difícil que	to be possibly easy / difficult that
	ser horrível / horroroso que	to be horrible that
	ser importante que	to be important that
	ser incrível que	to be incredible that
	ser interessante que	to be interesting that
	ser lamentável que	to be deplorable, regrettable that
	ser natural que	to be natural that
	poder ser necessário que	to be possibly necessary that
	ser (uma) pena que	to be a pity, shame that
	parecer possível que	to appear, seem possible that
	ser preciso que	to be necessary that
	poder ser preferível que	to be possibly preferable that
	ser provável que	to be probable that
	ser prudente que	to be prudent that
	parecer ridículo que	to appear, seem ridiculous that
	ser triste que	to be sad that
	ser útil que	to be useful that

---

[1] Only the 3rd-pers. sing. form (of any tense) may be used (see p. 220: 2 for details).
[2] If the adjective / noun following the main verb expresses knowledge / belief / certainty, the indicative is used.
[3] A personal infinitive often replaces the subjunctive subordinate clause; in English, "(*for* +) object + *to*" often replaces the (subjunctive) subordinate clause.
[4] Any (personal) form of *crer / achar / considerar* may replace *poder ser / parecer / ser.*

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND POSSESSIVES

PERSON / NUMBER[1]	ENG. SUBJ. PRON.	PORT. SUBJ. PRON.	PREP. OBJ. PRON.[2]	REFL. PREP. OBJ. PRON.[2]	REFL. (IN)DIR. OBJ. PRON.	DIR. OBJ. PRON.	INDIR. OBJ. PRON.	POSSESSIVES	
1st sing. (m/f)	I	*eu*	*mim*	*mim*	*me*	*me*	*me*	*meu(s)*	*minha(s)*
1st plur. (m/f)	we[3]	*nós*	*nós*	*nós*	*nos*	*nos*	*nos*	*nosso(s)*	*nossa(s)*
2nd sing. (m/f)	you	*tu*	*ti*	*ti*	*te*	*te*	*te*	*teu(s)*	*tua(s)*
2nd plur. (m/f)	you (all)	*vós*	*vós*	*vós*	*vos*	*vos*	*vos*	*vosso(s)*	*vossa(s)*
2nd sing. (m/f)	you	*você*	*você*	*si*	*se*	*o* / *a*	*lhe*	*seu(s)*	*sua(s)*
2nd plur. (m/f)	you (all)	*vocês*	*vocês*	*si*	*se*	*os* / *as*	*lhes*	*seu(s)*	*sua(s)*
2nd sing. (m)	you	*o senhor*	*o senhor*	*si*	*se*	*o*	*lhe*	*do senhor*	
2nd sing. (f)	you	*a senhora*	*a senhora*	*si*	*se*	*a*	*lhe*	*da senhora*	
2nd plur. (m)	you (all)	*os senhores*	*os senhores*	*si*	*se*	*os*	*lhes*	*dos senhores*	
2nd plur. (f)	you (all)	*as senhoras*	*as senhoras*	*si*	*se*	*as*	*lhes*	*das senhoras*	
3rd sing. (m)	he / it	*ele*	*ele*	*si*	*se*	*o*	*lhe*	*dele*	
3rd sing. (f)	she / it	*ela*	*ela*	*si*	*se*	*a*	*lhe*	*dela*	
3rd plur. (m)	they	*eles*	*eles*	*si*	*se*	*os*	*lhes*	*deles*	
3rd plur. (f)	they	*elas*	*elas*	*si*	*se*	*as*	*lhes*	*delas*	

---

[1] *você(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s)* are in effect 2nd-pers. pronouns but take 3rd-pers. verbs and correspond to 3rd-pers. object pronouns (see pp. 85: 2, 86n2 for details).

[2] The following contractions of *com* + prepositional pronouns are obligatory in Portuguese:

com	+	*mim*	=	*comigo*	*com*	+	*nós*	=	*conosco* (EP: *con<u>n</u>osco*)
com	+	*ti*	=	*contigo*	*com*	+	*vós*	=	*convosco*
com	+	*si*	=	*consigo*	*com*	+	*si*	=	*consigo*

[3] *a gente* (= colloquial synonym of *nós)* and *da gente* (= possessive) should be avoided in formal Portuguese.

CONTRACTIONS OF DIRECT WITH INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS[1]

SUBJECT PRONOUN	INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN	+ DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS	= CONTRACTIONS	ENGLISH	
eu	*me*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*mo(s) / ma(s)*	him / her / it / them	to me
nós	*nos*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*no-lo(s) / no-la(s)*	him / her / it / them	to us
tu	*te*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*to(s) / ta(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you
vós	*vos*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*vo-lo(s) / vo-la(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you (all)
você	*lhe*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you
vocês	*lhes*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you (all)
o senhor	*lhe*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you
a senhora	*lhe*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you
os senhores	*lhes*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you (all)
as senhoras	*lhes*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to you (all)
ele	*lhe*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to him
ela	*lhe*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to her
eles	*lhes*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to them
elas	*lhes*	*o(s) / a(s)*	*lho(s) / lha(s)*	him / her / it / them	to them

---

[1] These contractions are used in formal and literary EP.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS, AND CONTRACTIONS

ENG.	MASC. ADJ.	FEM. ADJ.	INVAR. PRON.	+ PREP.	= CONTRACTIONS (= **obligatory**)			CORRESPONDING ADVERB(S)	CORRESPONDING POSSESSIVE(S)	
this / these	*este(s)*	*esta(s)*	*isto*	*de* *em*	*deste(s)* *neste(s)*	*desta(s)* *nesta(s)*	*disto* *nisto*	*aqui / cá* (here) [near speaker]	*meu(s)* *nosso(s)*[1]	*minha(s)* *nossa(s)*[1]
that / those	*esse(s)*	*essa(s)*	*isso*	*de* *em*	*desse(s)* *nesse(s)*	*dessa(s)* *nessa(s)*	*disso* *nisso*	*aí* (there) [near listener]	*teu(s)* *vosso(s)* *seu(s)* *do(s) senhor(es)* *da(s) senhora(s)*	*tua(s)* *vossa(s)* *sua(s)*
that / those	*aquele(s)*	*aquela(s)*	*aquilo*	*de* *em* *a*	*daquele(s)* *naquele(s)* *àquele(s)*	*daquela(s)* *naquela(s)* *àquela(s)*	*daquilo* *naquilo* *àquilo*	*ali / lá / acolá* ([over] there) [not near speaker / listener]	*dele(s)* *dela(s)*	

[1] *da gente* is the colloquial synonym of *nosso(s) / nossa(s)* and should be avoided in formal Portuguese.

DEMONSTR. ADJ.	+ *OUTRO(S)/A(S):*[1]	+ *DE:*[1]	+ *EM:*[1]	+ *A:*[1]
este(s)/a(s) *esse(s)/a(s)* *aquele(s)/a(s)*	*estoutro(s)/a(s)* *essoutro(s)/a(s)* *aqueloutro(s)/a(s)*	*destoutro(s)/a(s)* *dessoutro(s)/a(s)* *daqueloutro(s)/a(s)*	*nestoutro(s)/a(s)* *nessoutro(s)/a(s)* *naqueloutro(s)/a(s)*	*àqueloutro(s)/a(s)*

[1] These contractions are all optional; they are considered somewhat archaic and appear primarily in literary Portuguese.

CONTRACTIONS OF PREPOSITIONS

PREP.	+ DEF. ARTICLES: (= **obligatory**)		+ INDEF. ARTICLES: (= optional)		+ DEMONSTRATIVES: (= **obligatory**)			+ PREP. OBJECT PRONOUNS: (= **obligatory**)	
a	*ao(s)*	*à(s)*			*àquele(s)*	*àquela(s)*	*àquilo*		
de[1, 2, 3]	*do(s)*	*da(s)*	*dum (duns)*	*duma(s)*	*deste(s)* *desse(s)* *daquele(s)*	*desta(s)* *dessa(s)* *daquela(s)*	*disto* *disso* *daquilo*	*dele(s)*	*dela(s)*
em[2]	*no(s)*	*na(s)*	*num (nuns)*	*numa(s)*	*neste(s)* *nesse(s)* *naquele(s)*	*nesta(s)* *nessa(s)* *naquela(s)*	*nisto* *nisso* *naquilo*	*nele(s)*	*nela(s)*
por	*pelo(s)*	*pela(s)*							
para[3, 4]									
com								*comigo* *contigo* *consigo*	*conosco* (EP: *connosco*) *convosco* *consigo*

---

[1] Contractions of *de* + indefinite articles occur more in EP than in BP; they should be avoided in formal BP.
[2] The following contractions of *de / em* + *outro* are optional; those of *de* + *outro* occur more in EP than in BP:
doutro(s) / *doutra(s)*
noutro(s) / *noutra(s)*
[3] *de / para* + *você(s)* = *docê(s) / procê(s)* in colloquial BP; these contractions should be avoided in formal BP.
[4] The following colloquial contractions of *para* + definite articles should be avoided in formal Portuguese:
pro(s) / *pra(s)*

RELATIVE WORDS

MASC.	FEM.	INVARIABLE	ENGLISH	GRAM. CAT.
cujo(s)	*cuja(s)*		whose	adj.
		onde *para onde* *aonde* *de onde* (EP: *donde*)	where to where [longer stay] to where [shorter stay] from where	adv. adv. phrase adv. adv. phrase
o qual *(os quais)*	*a qual* *(as quais)*		which, who(m)	pron.
		quanto	all that, however much	pron.
quanto(s)	*quanta(s)*		all that, all who(m)	pron.
		que *o que*	that, which, who(m) what, that which	pron. pron.
o(s) que	*a(s) que*		(s)he / those who(m), the one(s) that	pron.
		quem	whom, (s)he / those who(m)	pron.

INTERROGATIVE WORDS

GENDER-VARIABLE	INVARIABLE	ENGLISH	GRAM. CAT.
	como?	how? what...like?	adv.
	onde?	where?	adv.
	para onde?	to where? [longer stay]	adv. phrase
	aonde?	to where? [shorter stay]	adv.
	de onde? (EP: *donde*)	from where?	adv. phrase
	qual? (quais?)	which?	adj. / pron.
	quando?	when?	adv.
quanto/a?		how much?	adj. / pron.
quantos/as?		how many?	adj. / pron.
	quanto?	how much?	adv.
	a quanto? (+ *estar*)	how much? [= *a que preço / a como*]	adv. phrase
	que? (+ noun)	what? which? what kind of? [begins sentence / clause]	adj.
	(o) que? (+ verb)	what? [begins sentence / clause]	pron.
	(o) quê?	what? [stands alone]	pron.
	o quê?	what? [ends sentence]	pron.
	de que? (+ verb)	what...made of? [begins sentence / clause]	adj. phrase
	de quê?	of what? [ends sentence]	adj. phrase
	para que?	for what purpose?	adv. phrase
	por que? (EP: *porque*)	why? [begins sentence / clause]	adv. phrase
	por quê? (EP: *porquê*)	why? [stands alone / ends sentence]	adv. phrase
	quem?	who(m)?	pron.
	de quem?	whose? of whom?	adj. phrase
	para quem?	for whom?	adv. phrase
	por quem?	by / because of whom? on whose behalf?	adv. phrase

AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE WORDS

AFFIRMATIVE	ENGLISH	NEGATIVE	ENGLISH	GRAM. CAT.
sim	yes	*não*	no, not	adverb
com	with	*sem*	without	preposition
também	also	*também não / tampouco*[1]	neither	adverb
(ou...) ou	(either...) or	*(nem...) nem*	(neither...) nor	conjunction
alguém	anyone, someone	*ninguém*	no one	invar. pron.
algo *algo*	anything, something somewhat	*nada* *nada*	nothing not (at all), in no way	invar. pron. adverb
algum(a)	a(n), any, some	*nenhum(a)*	no(ne), not...any	var. adj. / pron.
algures / em algum lugar / em alguma parte	somewhere, in some place	*nenhures / em nenhum lugar / em nenhuma parte*	nowhere, in no place	adverb (phrase) adverb phrase
de algum jeito / modo // de alguma forma / maneira	by any / some means, (in) any / some way / manner	*de nenhum jeito / modo // de nenhuma forma / maneira*	by no means, (in) no way / manner	adverb phrase adverb phrase
alguma vez *sempre*	ever, at any / some time always	*nenhuma vez / nunca / jamais* *nem sempre*	never, at no time not always	adverb (phrase) adverb
ainda *já*	still, yet already, yet	*já não* *ainda não*	no longer still not, not...yet	adverb adverb

[1] EP: Written *tão-pouco.*

INDEFINITE WORDS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	INVAR.	ENGLISH	GRAM. CAT.
um (uns)	*uma(s)*		a(n), any, some	adj. / pron.
algum (-uns)	*alguma(s)*		a(n), any, some	adj. / pron.
		algures	somewhere	adv.
		alhures	elsewhere	adv.
		alguém	anyone, someone	pron.
		algo	anything, something	pron.
		algo	somewhat	adv.
nenhum (-uns)	*nenhuma(s)*		no(ne), not...any	adj. / pron.
		nenhures	nowhere	adv.
		ninguém	no one	pron.
		nada	nothing	pron.
		nada	not (at all), in no way	adv.
muito(s)	*muita(s)*		much, many, a lot of	adj. / pron.
		muito	a lot, very	adv.
		mais	more	adj. / pron.
		mais	more	adv.
		demais[1]	too much, too many	adj. / pron.
		demais[1]	too (much)	adv.
demasiado(s)	*demasiada(s)*		too much, too many	adj. / pron.
		demasiado	too (much)	adv.
pouco(s)	*pouca(s)*		(a) little, (a) few	adj. / pron.
		pouco	(a) little, not very, somewhat	adv.
		menos	less, fewer	adj. / pron.
		menos	less	adv.
		de menos	too little	adj. / pron. phrase
		de menos	too little, not...enough	adv. phrase

[1] EP: Written *de mais* (two words).

(cont.)

MASCULINE	FEMININE	INVARIABLE	ENGLISH	GRAM. CAT.
ambos	*ambas*		both	adj. / pron.
		assaz	rather, sufficiently	adv.
		bastante(s) *bastante*	enough enough, quite, sufficiently	adj. / pron. adv.
		cada	each, every	adj.
certo(s)	*certa(s)*		(a) certain	adj.
diverso(s)	*diversa(s)*		diverse, various, varied, several, different	adj. / pron.
outro(s)	*outra(s)*	*outrem*	another, some other, the other someone else, other people	adj. / pron. pron.
		qualquer (quaisquer)	any...at all / what(so)ever	adj. / pron.
quanto(s)	*quanta(s)*	*quanto* *quão*	how much, how many how much how	adj. / pron. adv. adv.
		quase	almost	adv.
		quem quer	who(m)ever	pron.
		tal (tais)	such (a)	adj. / pron.
tanto(s)	*tanta(s)*	*tanto* *tão*	so much, so many so much so	adj. / pron. adv. adv.
todo(s)	*toda(s)*	*tudo*	all, each, every; whole, entire all, everything	adj. / pron. pron.
único(s)	*única(s)*		unique, only	adj. / pron.
vário(s)	*vária(s)*		various, varied, diverse, several, different	adj. / pron.

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND RELATIVE SUPERLATIVES

ADJ.	ENGLISH	ADV.	ENGLISH	COMPARATIVE[1]	ENGLISH	SUPERLATIVE[1]	ENGLISH
muito/a *muitos/as*	much / a lot of many / a lot of	*muito*	a lot	*mais*[2] *mais*[2]	more / -er more / -er	*o/a mais* *os/as mais*	the most / -est the most / -est
pouco/a *poucos/as*	(a) little (a) few	*pouco*	(a) little	*menos*[2] *menos*[2]	less fewer	*o/a menos* *os/as menos*	the least the fewest
bom / boa *bons / boas*	good good	*bem*	well	*melhor* *melhores*	better better	*o/a melhor* *os/as melhores*	the best the best
mau / má *maus / más*	bad bad	*mal*	badly / poorly	*pior* *piores*	worse worse	*o/a pior* *os/as piores*	the worst the worst
grande *grandes*	large / great large / great			*maior* *maiores*	larger / greater larger / greater	*o/a maior* *os/as maiores*	the largest / greatest the largest / greatest
pequeno/a *pequenos/as*	small small			*menor* *menores*	smaller smaller	*o/a menor* *os/as menores*	the smallest the smallest

[1] Comparatives / superlatives in *-or* are invariable in gender; adjectives are variable in number, and adverbs are invariable.
[2] *mais / menos* are invariable in gender and number.

"SYNTHETIC" ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES[1, 2]

TO FORM A REGULAR "SYNTHETIC" ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE, ADD ***-ÍSSIMO/A(S)*** ACCORDING TO THE FOLLOWING PATTERNS:

ADJECTIVE ENDING	PATTERN	ADJECTIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE[3, 4]
consonant + vowel	drop final vowel	*rápido/a*	*rapidíssimo/a*
		triste	*tristíssimo/a*
	c > *qu*	*rico/a*	*riquíssimo/a*
	g > *gu*	*largo/a*	*larguíssimo/a*
consonant + *io/ia*	drop final *o/a*	*macio/a*	*maciíssimo/a*
		sério/a	*seriíssimo/a*
e + *io/ia*	drop final *io/ia*	*cheio/a*	*cheíssimo/a*
		feio/a	*feíssimo/a*
-s	keep *s*	*cortês*	*cortesíssimo/a*
-r	keep *r*	*regular*	*regularíssimo/a*
-l	keep *l*	*azul*	*azulíssimo/a*
-vel	*-vel* > *bil*	*adorável*	*adorabilíssimo/a*
		agradável	*agradabilíssimo/a*
		amável	*amabilíssimo/a*
		horrível	*horribilíssimo/a*
		lamentável	*lamentabilíssimo/a*
		miserável	*miserabilíssimo/a*
		móvel	*mobilíssimo/a*
		possível	*possibilíssimo/a*
		razoável	*razoabilíssimo/a*
		sensível	*sensibilíssimo/a*
		terrível	*terribilíssimo/a*
		visível	*visibilíssimo/a*
		vulnerável	*vulnerabilíssimo/a*

---

[1] There are two constructions of absolute superlatives adjectives in Portuguese:
(a) "synthetic" (= adjective + *-íssimo*)
(b) "analytic" (= *muito / pouco* + adjective)
[2] See 1st chart on p. 289 for formation of absolute superlative adverbs.
[3] All absolute superlatives are gender-variable.
[4] Any circumflex / acute accent in the adjective disappears in the absolute superlative.

(cont.)

ADJECTIVE ENDING	PATTERN	ADJECTIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE
-ão / -ã	*-ão / -ã* > *an*	*cristão / cristã*	*cristianíssimo/a*
		pagão / pagã	*paganíssimo/a*
		são / sã	*saníssimo/a*
		vão / vã	*vaníssimo/a*
-m	*-m* > *n*	*comum*	*comuníssimo/a*
-z	*-z* > *c*	*atroz*	*atrocíssimo/a*
		audaz	*audacíssimo/a*
		capaz	*capacíssimo/a*
		eficaz	*eficacíssimo/a*
		feliz	*felicíssimo/a*
		feroz	*ferocíssimo/a*
		perspicaz	*perspicacíssimo/a*
		tenaz	*tenacíssimo/a*
		veloz	*velocíssimo/a*
		vivaz	*vivacíssimo/a*
		voraz	*voracíssimo/a*

IRREGULAR "SYNTHETIC" ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES			
SUPERLATIVE ENDING	ADJECTIVE	(FORMAL) IRREGULAR ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE	(COLLOQUIAL) REGULAR ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE
-ÍSSIMO	*agudo*	*acutíssimo*	*agudíssimo*
	amargo	*amaríssimo*	*amarguíssimo*
	amigo	*amicíssimo*	*amiguíssimo*
	antigo	*antiquíssimo*[1]	*antiguíssimo*
	antipático	*antipaticíssimo*	*antipatiquíssimo*
	benéfico	*beneficentíssimo*	
	benévolo / benevolente	*benevolentíssimo*	
	(in)crível	*(in)credibilíssimo*	
	cruel	*crudelíssimo*	*cruelíssimo*
	doce	*dulcíssimo*	*docíssimo*
	(in)fiel	*(in)fidelíssimo*	*(in)fielíssimo*
	frio	*frigidíssimo*	*friíssimo*
	geral	*generalíssimo*	*geralíssimo*
	inimigo	*inimicíssimo*	*inimiguíssimo*
	jovem	*juveníssimo*	
	louvável	*laudabilíssimo*	
	magnífico	*magnificentíssimo*	
	maléfico	*maleficentíssimo*	
	malévolo / malevolente	*malevolentíssimo*	
	miúdo / minuto	*minutíssimo*	*miudíssimo*
	nobre	*nobilíssimo*	*nobríssimo*
	(im)pessoal	*(im)personalíssimo*	*(im)pessoalíssimo*
	pródigo	*prodigalíssimo*	
	(im)provável	*(im)probabilíssimo*	
	público	*publicíssimo*	
	sábio	*sapientíssimo*	
	sagrado	*sacratíssimo*	*sagradíssimo*
	simpático	*simpaticíssimo*	*simpatiquíssimo*
	simples	*simplicíssimo*	*simplíssimo*
	soberbo	*superbíssimo*	*soberbíssimo*

---

[1] Portuguese no longer uses a dieresis (¨) over the *u* of *qu* to transcribe [k^u].

SUPERLATIVE ENDING	ADJECTIVE	(FORMAL) IRREGULAR ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE	(COLLOQUIAL) REGULAR ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE
-ÉRRIMO[1]	*acre*	*acérrimo*	*acríssimo*
	áspero	*aspérrimo*	*asperíssimo*
	célebre	*celebérrimo*	*celebríssimo*
	integro	*integérrimo*	*integríssimo*
	livre	*libérrimo*	*livríssimo*
	magro	*macérrimo*	*magríssimo*
	mísero	*misérrimo*	*miseríssimo*
	negro	*nigérrimo*	*negríssimo*
	pobre	*paupérrimo*	*pobríssimo*
	próspero	*prospérrimo*	*prosperíssimo*
	(in)salubre	*(in)salubérrimo*	*(in)salubríssimo*
-ÍLIMO	*ágil*	*agílimo*	*agilíssimo*
	difícil	*dificílimo*	*dificilíssimo*
	dócil	*docílimo*	*docilíssimo*
	fácil	*facílimo*	*facilíssimo*
	frágil	*fragílimo*	*fragilíssimo*
	humilde	*humílimo*	*humildíssimo*
	semelhante	*simílimo*	*semelhantíssimo*
-IMO / -EMO	*bom*	*ótimo*	*boníssimo*
	mau	*péssimo*	*malíssimo*
	grande	*máximo*	*grandíssimo*
	pequeno	*mínimo*	*pequeníssimo*
	inferior	*ínfimo*	*inferioríssimo*
	superior	*supremo*	*superioríssimo*

---

[1] This ending is gaining popularity in colloquial Portuguese, as seen in the following examples:

chato	*chatérrimo*	*chatíssimo*
chique	*chiquérrimo*	*chiquíssimo*
elegante	*elegantérrimo*	*elegantíssimo*

ADVERBS AND ADVERB PHRASES

TO FORM AN ADVERB, ADD -***MENTE*** TO:	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
singular form of gender-invariable adjective[1]	*triste* *cortês* *amável*	*tristemente* *cortesmente* *amavelmente*
feminine singular form of gender-variable adjective[1, 2]	*cômodo* *rápido*	*comod<u>a</u>mente* *rapid<u>a</u>mente*
feminine singular form of absolute superlative adjective[1, 2, 3]	*rapidíssimo*	*rapidissim<u>a</u>mente*

[1] Any circumflex / acute accent in the adjective disappears in the adverb.
[2] In colloquial Portuguese, the masculine singular form of an adjective is often used as an adverb.
[3] See pp. 285–288 for formation of absolute superlative adjectives.

ADVERB CATEGORY[1, 2]	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
INTERROGATION[3]	*como?* *onde?* *quando?* *quanto?*	how? what...like? where? when? how much?
INCLUSION	*inclusive / inclusivamente* *até* *mesmo* *também*	including, inclusively even even also
EXCLUSION	*exclusive / exclusivamente* *nem sequer* *[< se quer]* *também não* *tampouco* (EP: *tão-pouco*)	excluding, exclusively not even neither, not...either neither, not...either
	apenas *só / tão-só* *somente / tão-somente* *unicamente*	only, just only, merely, solely, singly only, just, merely, solely only, solely

[1] With few exceptions, regular adverbs formed from adjectives (e.g., *certamente / certo*) are not listed in this series of charts.
[2] Many of these adverbs / adverb phrases become compound prepositions when followed by a simple preposition (often *de*); see compound-preposition charts on pp. 298–300.
[3] See p. 280 for list of interrogative adverb phrases.

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
AFFIRMATION[1] / CERTAINTY	*sim*	yes
	decerto / por certo	certainly, for certain, surely
	com certeza	certainly, assuredly, of course
	claro	clearly, certainly
	sem dúvida (alguma)	without (any) doubt
NEGATION[1]	*não*	no, not
	nem	not (even), neither
	de forma nenhuma / alguma //	nohow, by no means,
	de jeito nenhum / algum //	(in) no way / manner
	de maneira nenhuma / alguma //	
	de modo nenhum / algum	
DOUBT	*(por) acaso /*	perhaps, maybe, possibly,
	porventura /	by chance, perchance
	quiçá /	
	talvez	
QUANTITY / INTENSITY (how much)	*quanto*	how much
	quão [= que / como]	how
	tanto	so much, as much
	tão (pouco)	so (little), as (little)
	algo	somewhat
	nada	not (at all), in no way
	muito	a lot, very
	pouco	(a) little, not very, somewhat
	mais	more
	menos	less
	demais (EP: *de mais*)	too (much)
	demasiado	too (much)
	de menos	too little, not...enough
	bem	very, really
	mal	not quite, scarcely
	assaz	rather, sufficiently
	bastante	enough, quite, sufficiently
	mesmo	really
	quase	almost

[1] See p. 281 for list of affirmative / negative words.

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
MEANS / MANNER (how)	*como*	how
	bem	well
	mal	badly, poorly
	melhor	better
	pior	worse
	em todo (o) caso	in any case
	de todos jeitos / modos // de todas formas / maneiras	anyhow, in any case
	de qualquer jeito / modo // de qualquer forma / maneira	anyhow, by any means (at all), (in) any way / manner (what[so]ever)
	de algum jeito / modo // de alguma forma / maneira	somehow, by any / some means, (in) any / some way / manner
	de nenhum jeito / modo // de nenhuma forma / maneira	nohow, by no means, (in) no way / manner
	de outro jeito / modo // de outra forma / maneira	otherwise
	do contrário	otherwise
	senão	otherwise
	assim	thus, so, in this way / manner
	tal	thus, so
	tal qual	exactly, precisely
	justamente / justo	exactly
	conforme	accordingly
	direito	directly, straight, right(ly)
	sobretudo	above all
	aliás	rather [correction to something], as a matter of fact, coincidentally
	ao invés / revés	on the contrary
	ao / pelo contrário	on the contrary
	ao contrário	upside down, inside out, backwards
	às avessas // ao / pelo avesso	upside down, inside out, backwards
	ao revés	upside down, inside out, backwards

(cont.)

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
MEANS / MANNER (how)	*às pressas*	in a hurry
	depressa	quickly
	devagar	slowly
	de avião	by plane
	a pé	by / on foot
	à mão	by hand
	à máquina	by machine
	à vontade	at ease, at home, comfortably
	de boa / má vontade	willingly, gladly / unwillingly, reluctantly
	de bom / mau grado	willingly, gladly / unwillingly, reluctantly
	às claras	publicly, openly, frankly
	às direitas	honestly, uprightly
	em vão	in vain
	debalde	in vain
	à toa	at random, randomly, aimlessly
	ao léu	at random, randomly, aimlessly
	em geral	in general
	em regra	generally, ordinarily, usually
	de acordo	in agreement
	de acordo!	agreed!
	de cor	by heart
	à força	by force, forcibly
	ao fundo	deeply, thoroughly, fully
	no fundo	at heart
	a prazos	on time, in installments
	de propósito [= adrede]	on purpose
	a respeito	in that respect
	de longe em / a longe	at long intervals
	de mão em mão	from hand to hand
	boca a boca	mouth to mouth
	lado a lado	side by side
	passo a passo	step by step
	ponto a ponto	point by point
	pouco a pouco	little by little

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH	
PLACE[1] (where)	*onde*	where	
	cá	here	[near speaker]
	lá / acolá	(way over) there	[not near speaker / listener]
	aqui	here	[near speaker]
	aí	there	[near listener]
	ali	(over) there	[not near speaker / listener]
	daqui *[< de aqui]*	from here	
	daí *[< de aí]*	from there	
	dali *[< de ali]*	from (over) there	
	aquém	on this side	
	além	on that / the other side, ahead, beyond, farther	
	acima / em cima	up, above, overhead, on / at the top	
	abaixo	down, below, under(neath), beneath	
	debaixo / embaixo (em baixo)	below, under(neath), beneath	
	defronte *[= frente a frente]*	in front; face to face	
	à / na frente	at the front, in front, ahead	
	em frente	in front, ahead	
	diante	in front, ahead	
	adiante	in front, ahead, forward	
	adiante! *[= avante!]*	forward!	
	em diante	forward, forth, on(ward)	
	atrás / detrás	(in) back, in the rear, behind	
	fora	outside, without [place only]	
	dentro	inside, within	
	à distância	at a / in the distance, distantly, afar	
	longe	far (off), a long way (off), distant	
	ao longe	afar, far off / away, in the distance	
	perto	near(by), close (by)	
	próximo	near(by), close (by)	
	junto	jointly, together	

---

[1] Many of these adverbs connote:
(a) "to" / "toward" / "-ward" when preceded by *a / para*
(b) "from" when preceded by *de*
(c) "around" / "through" when preceded by *por*

(cont.)

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
PLACE (where)	*ao lado*	to one side, on the side
	de lado	to one side, aside, sideways
	no topo	at the top
	no cimo	at the top
	no fundo	at the bottom
	ao / em redor	around
	em torno	around
	em / à volta	around
	à direita	to the right
	à esquerda	to the left
	através	through
	embora	away [after *ir / vir / mandar,* etc.]
	de lugar em lugar	from place to place
	de sítio em sítio	from place to place
	em qualquer lugar / em qualquer parte	anywhere (at all), in any place (what[so]ever)
	em algum lugar / em alguma parte / algures	somewhere, in some place
	em nenhum lugar / em nenhuma parte / nenhures	nowhere, in no place
	em outro lugar / em outra parte / alhures	elsewhere, somewhere else
	em todo lugar / em toda (a) parte	everywhere, in each / every place, in all places

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
TIME (when)	*quando*	when
	antes	before
	após	after, since
	depois	after, then
	cedo	early
	tarde	late
	hoje	today
	ontem	yesterday
	anteontem	day before yesterday
	amanhã	tomorrow
	depois de amanhã	day after tomorrow
	agora	now
	agora mesmo	right now
	por agora	for the moment, for the present
	ora	presently; now [also figurative]
	hoje em dia	nowadays
	de vez em quando / de quando em quando / de tempos em tempos	from time to time, occasionally, once in a while, now and then
	muitas vezes	many times
	repetidas vezes	repeatedly
	às vezes	at times
	algumas vezes	sometimes
	alguma vez	ever, at any / some time
	nenhuma vez	never, at no time
	nunca (mais)	never (again), at no time
	jamais	never (again), at no time
	sempre	always
	nem sempre	not always
	ainda	still, yet
	ainda não	still not, not...yet
	já	already, yet
	já não	no longer
	não...mais	no longer

(cont.)

ADVERB CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
TIME (when)	*entretanto*	meanwhile, in the meantime
	então	then, at that time
	dantes	(from) before, formerly
	antigamente	formerly
	outrora	formerly
	ultimamente	lately
	recentemente	recently, lately
	recém- (+ past participle)	recently, newly (+ past participle)
	(em) breve	soon, shortly
	dentro em breve	soon, presently, before long, shortly
	dentro em pouco	soon, presently, before long, shortly
	daqui a pouco	soon, presently, before long, shortly
	logo	soon, presently, before long, shortly; at once, right away, immediately
	logo depois	soon after, right after
	atrás	ago, back
	em diante	forward, forth, on(ward)
	daí *[< de aí]*	thence(forth)
	dali *[< de ali]*	thence(forth)
	daqui *[< de aqui]*	hence(forth)
	daqui em / por diante	henceforth, from here / now on
	de hoje em diante	henceforth, from today / now on
	de agora em diante	henceforth, from now on
	doravante *[< de ora avante]*	henceforth, from now on
	no começo	in the beginning
	no início	in the beginning
	no fim	in the end, finally
	enfim (em fim) / por fim	finally, at last, in short, after all
	afinal	finally, at last, in the end
	de dia	during the day
	de / pela manhã	in the morning
	à / de / pela tarde	in the afternoon
	à / de / pela noite	at night

PREPOSITIONS

SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS	
PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
a	to; at
ante *[= perante]*	before [person / place / thing], in the presence of
após	after, since
até	until, to [time / place]
com	with
conforme *[= consoante / segundo]*	in conformity with, according to
consoante *[= conforme / segundo]*	in consonance with, according to
contra	against
de	of; from
desde	since, from [time / place]
durante	during, for
em	in, on, at
entre	between, among
exce(p)to *[= menos / salvo]*	except
mediante *[= por meio do]*	by means of
menos *[= exce(p)to / salvo]*	minus, except
para	for; to, toward, -ward
perante *[= ante]*	before [person / place / thing], in the presence of
por	per; because / on account of; by; for; along, through
salvo *[= exce(p)to / menos]*	save, except
segundo *[= conforme / consoante]*	according to
sem	without
sob	under [figurative]
sobre	on (top of), above; about, concerning

COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS			
PREP. CATEGORY[1]	PORTUGUESE		ENGLISH
QUANTITY (+ number)	*mais de* *menos de*		more than less than
APPROXIMATION (+ number)	*cerca de* *perto de* *ao / em redor de* *em torno a / de* *à / por volta de*		about, approximately, close to about, approximately, close to about, around about, around about, around
COMPARISON	*igual a*	*[= como]*	equal to, like
CONTRAST	*contrário a* *ao contrário de //* *à diferença de //* *ao invés / revés de*		contrary to, counter to contrary to, to the contrary of, unlike, (as) opposed to, in contrast to
SUBSTITUTION	*em lugar de* *em vez de* *ao invés de*		instead of, in lieu of, in place of instead of, in lieu of, in place of instead of, in lieu of, in place of
PURPOSE	*a fim de*	*[= para]*	for the purpose of
CAUSE	*por causa de*	*[= por]*	because of
BENEFICIARY	*em prol de //* *a / em favor de*	 *[= por]*	in favor of, on behalf of, to the advantage of
PLACE	*aquém de* *além de*		on this side of on that / the other side of, ahead of, beyond
	acima / em cima de *abaixo / debaixo /* *embaixo (em baixo) de*	*[= sobre]*	above, over, on (top of) below, under(neath), beneath

---

[1] Many prepositions—especially those indicating place—also have a figurative meaning.

(cont.)

PREP. CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
PLACE	*à / na frente de*	at the front of, in front of, ahead of, at the head of, before, opposite, facing
	em frente a / de	in front of, ahead of, opposite, facing
	defronte a / de	in front of, before, opposite, facing, face to face with
	frente a	in the face of
	diante de [= (per)ante]	ahead of; in front of, before, in the presence of
	atrás / detrás de	in back of, in the rear of, behind, after
	fora de	outside, without [place only]
	dentro de	inside, within
	à distância de	distant / a distance from, far from
	longe de	far from, a (long) way from, distant / a distance from
	perto de	near, close to
	próximo de / a	near, close to
	junto a	near, next to
	junto de	beside, next to
	junto com	jointly with, together with, along with
	ao longo de	beside, along, alongside
	ao lado de	beside, alongside, on / at the side of
	de lado de	to one side of
	no topo de	at the top of
	no cimo de	at the top of
	no fundo de	at the bottom of
	ao / em redor de	around
	em torno a / de	around
	em / à volta de	around
	à direita de	to the right of
	à esquerda de	to the left of
	dentre (de entre)	from among; amidst, in the midst of
	por entre	between, among; through
	através de	through
	a partir de	(departing) from

PREP. CATEGORY	PORTUGUESE		ENGLISH
TIME	*antes de*		before
	depois de		after
	no começo de		at the beginning of
	no início de		at the beginning of
	ao / no fim de		at the end of
	ao final de		at the end of
	a partir de	*[= desde]*	from, since
	por volta de		about, around [non-specific time]
THEME / REGARD / RELATION	*acerca de //*		about, on, concerning, regarding, with respect to, in relation to
	a respeito de //		
	com respeito a //		
	em / com relação a	*[= sobre]*	
	para com		to(ward) [person / animal]
	(em) quanto a		as for, as far as...concerned
OTHER PREPOSITIONS	*devido a*		due to
	graças a		thanks to
	a despeito de /		in spite of, despite
	apesar de	*[= não obstante]*	
	além de		besides, in addition to
	à / com a exceção de	*[= exce(p)to]*	with the exception of
	de acordo com		in accordance with
	em busca de		in search of
	com direito a		with the right to
	a par de		up-to-date about, well informed about, current with / about
	a(o) ponto de		to / on the point of, on the verge of, almost, nearly

VERB LIST

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
abolir	to abolish
aborrecer	to abhor; to annoy, bore
abreviar	to abbreviate
abrir	to open
absorver	to absorb
abster	to abstain
abstrair	to abstract
acabar (com)	to terminate, (put an) end (to), finish (off) (to liquidate, kill)
acabar de (+ infinitive)	to have just (+ past participle)
acabar por (+ infinitive)	to end up (+ present participle)
aceitar	to accept
acender	to turn on [light]
achar	to think; to find, discover
acompanhar	to accompany
aconselhar (a)	to counsel, advise... (to...)
acontecer	to happen
acordar	to wake up, awaken
acostumar(-se a)	to (be) accustom(ed) (to)
acreditar (em)	to believe (in)
acudir	to assist, give succor, rush to
aderir (a)	to adhere (to)
admitir	to admit
adorar	to adore
adormecer	to fall asleep
adotar	to adopt
adquirir	to acquire
advertir	to warn, give notice
afastar(-se de)	to remove, push (draw) away (from)
afligir	to afflict
afluir (em)	to flow, pour (in)
agir	to act (on), proceed
agradar	to gratify, (be) please(d); to be pleasing
agradecer	to thank
agredir	to attack, assault, provoke
aguardar	to wait for, await, expect, look for(ward to)
aguentar	to bear, endure, tolerate; to support
ajudar (a)	to help, assist... (to...)
alegrar(-se)	to make... (to be) happy
almoçar	to eat lunch
amanhecer	to grow / turn light [at dawn / daybreak]; to awaken, be [somewhere at daybreak]
amar	to love
ampli(fic)ar	to amplify, enlarge

andar	to walk
animar (a)	to animate, encourage... (to...)
anoitecer	to grow / turn dark [at dusk / evening]; to be [somewhere in the evening]
ansiar	to be anxious, worry, agonize
anunciar	to announce
apagar	to turn off [light], erase
apaixonar(-se por)	to impassion (to fall in love / become infatuated with)
apanhar	to get, catch [illness, etc.]
aparecer	to appear
aperceber(-se de)	to perceive, notice, take into account
apetecer	to feel like [doing], crave; to appeal, be tempting
apiedar-se de	to (take) pity (on), feel sorry for
apodrecer	to rot
apoiar	to support, uphold
apontar (para)	to take note, point (at / out), aim (at)
apreciar	to appreciate
aprender (a)	to learn (to)
aprovar	to approve; to pass [course / exam, etc.]
aproveitar(-se de)	to profit (from), benefit (from), take advantage (of)
aproximar(-se de)	to draw near (to), approach
aquecer	to heat, warm (up); to become hot / warm
arrefecer	to (become) cool
arrepender(-se de)	to repent, regret
ascender	to ascend, go up
aspirar (a)	to aspirate, inhale, breathe (in); to vacuum (to aspire to)
assistir (a)	to assist; to attend, be present (at); to watch [TV, etc.]
assombrar	to awe, astonish, amaze; to scare, frighten, terrify
atar	to tie (up), bind
atender (a)	to (at)tend, be attentive (to), assist; to answer [door / telephone]
atingir	to achieve, attain, reach
atrair	to attract
atrever(-se a)	to dare (to)
atribuir	to attribute
atuar	to act; to activate, put into action
barbear(-se)	to shave
basear(-se em)	to (be) base(d), found(ed) (on)
bastar	to be enough
bater	to beat, hit
beber	to drink
beijar	to kiss
benzer	to bless
brilhar	to shine, emit light
brincar	to play [with toy, etc.]
bronzear(-se)	to (become) tan

buscar	to look / search for, seek
caber	to fit (in[to] something)
cair	to fall
calar(-se)	to silence (to be quiet, stop talking, shut up)
candidatar-se (a)	to be a candidate, run (for), apply (for)
cansar(-se de)	to tire (of)
cantar	to sing
carregar	to load [vehicle / vessel / gun, etc.]; to transport [a load]; to oppress, burden
casar(-se com)	to (get) marry (married to)
cear	to eat supper, sup
ceder (a)	to cede, concede, yield (to)
cegar	to blind
cessar (*de* + infinitive)	to cease, stop (+ present participle)
chamar(-se)	to call (to be called / named)
chatear(-se de)	to (be) annoy(ed) (at)
chegar (a / em)	to arrive (at)
cheirar (a)	to smell (of / like)
chilrar	to chirp, twitter [bird]
chorar	to cry
chover	to rain
chuviscar	to drizzle, sprinkle
cobrir	to cover
colecionar	to collect
colher	to collect, gather, harvest
começar (*a* + infinitive)	to commence, begin, start (+ infinitive / present participle)
comer	to eat
comparecer	to appear, attend, show up
compelir (a)	to compel... (to...)
competir	to compete; to behoove
completar	to complete, finish
compor	to compose
comportar(-se)	to put up with, permit (to behave)
comprar	to buy
concluir	to conclude
concordar (com // em)	to agree (with // on / to)
conduzir	to conduct, lead; to drive [vehicle]
conferir	to confer
confiar (em)	to confide, trust, place one's faith (in)
confundir	to confuse, confound
conhecer	to know [person / place]; to be acquainted with [person / place / thing]
conquistar	to conquer, capture
conseguir	to accomplish, achieve, obtain, get, succeed in
consentir (em)	to consent (to), agree (on / to)

considerar	to consider
consistir (em)	to consist (of)
constituir	to constitute
construir	to construct, build
consumir	to consume
contar (com)	to count (to count / depend on)
contentar(-se com / em)	to make... (to be) content, satisfied (with)
conter	to contain
continuar (a)	to continue (to)
contribuir (para)	to contribute (to)
convencer (a)	to convince... (to...)
convencer-se de	to be convinced / persuaded of
convergir	to converge
convidar (a / para)	to invite... (to...)
convir	to be convenient / fitting / suitable; to agree to
correr	to run
corrigir	to correct
corroer	to corrode
corromper	to corrupt
cortar	to cut
coser	to sew [a particular thing]
costurar	to sew [in general]
cozer	to cook [a particular thing], boil
cozinhar	to cook [in general]
cremar	to cremate, incinerate
crer (em)	to believe (in)
criar	to create, nurture, bring up, raise [person / animal]
culpar	to blame, accuse, charge, indict
cultivar	to cultivate, farm, grow [crop]
cuspir	to spit
custar	to cost
danar	to damage, injure, harm; to damn
dançar	to dance
dar	to give
dar-se conta (de)	to realize, become aware (of)
decair	to decay, decline, deteriorate
decidir(-se a)	to decide, resolve (to)
dedicar(-se a)	to (be) dedicate(d), devote(d) (to)
deduzir	to deduce
deferir (a)	to defer, concede, yield (to)
deitar(-se)	to put (to go) to bed
deixar	to abandon, leave [person / thing]; to allow, permit
deixar de (+ infinitive)	to cease, stop (+ present participle)
demorar(-se em)	to take...[one's time] in / to, linger, (be) delay(ed)
depender (de)	to depend (on)

depor	to depose, dethrone, abdicate, renounce
derreter(-se)	to melt, soften, thaw
desaparecer	to disappear
desatar(-se)	to untie, cut (break) loose
desatar-se a (+ infinitive)	to burst out, begin, start (+ infinitive / present participle)
descalçar(-se)	to remove, take off [shoe, etc.]
descer (de)	to descend, go down (to get off / out of [vehicle])
descobrir	to discover
desconhecer	to not know, be ignorant (of), unaware (of)
descrever	to describe
desculpar(-se por)	to excuse, pardon, forgive (to apologize for)
desejar	to desire, want, wish
desesperar(-se de)	to cause despair (to despair about / over)
desfazer(-se de)	to undo, unmake, break, take apart (to get rid of, give up)
desistir (de)	to desist (from), renounce
desligar	to turn off [appliance], disconnect, unfasten, hang up [telephone]
desobedecer	to disobey
despedir(-se de)	to dismiss, fire (to say goodbye to)
despir(-se)	to (get) undress(ed)
desprender	to unfasten, detach, undo, loosen
destruir	to destruct, destroy
desvestir(-se)	to (get) undress(ed)
deter	to detain, deter
dever (+ infinitive)	to owe (to have to, must, should [do something])
diferir	to differ
digerir	to digest
dirigir(-se a)	to direct, administer, guide; to drive [vehicle] (to address [person])
dispersar	to disperse
dissolver	to dissolve
dissuadir (de)	to dissuade (from)
distar (de)	to be distant (from)
distinguir	to distinguish
distrair	to distract
distribuir	to distribute
divergir	to diverge
divertir(-se)	to divert, amuse, entertain (to enjoy oneself, have fun)
dizer	to say, tell
dobrar	to double, duplicate; to fold; to turn
doer	to hurt [pain]
dormir	to sleep
duvidar (de)	to doubt, have doubts (about)
editar	to edit, publish
eleger	to elect
elogiar	to eulogize, praise

emagrecer	to lose weight
embranquecer	to whiten
emergir	to emerge
empobrecer(-se)	to impoverish, make...poor (to become impoverished / poor)
empregar	to employ, hire, (make) use (of)
emprestar (a / para)	to lend (to)
empurrar	to push, shove
empuxar	to push, shove
encarregar(-se de)	to put in (to take) charge (of)
encher	to fill
enclausurar	to cloister
encobrir	to cover, conceal, hide
encontrar(-se com)	to encounter (to meet up with)
enegrecer	to blacken, darken
enfraquecer	to become weak, weaken
engolir	to swallow, gulp (down)
engordar	to gain weight
enjoar	to become ill / nauseous
enriquecer(-se)	to enrich, make...rich (to become rich)
ensinar (a)	to teach... (to...)
entender	to understand
entrar (em) (EP: *entrar a*)	to enter
entreabrir	to open slightly, half-open [door / eyes, etc.]
entregar	to deliver, turn in, hand in / over
entristecer(-se)	to sadden (to become sad)
envelhecer	to age, become old, make...old
enviar	to send, forward
envolver	to involve; to envelop, incase
enxugar(-se)	to dry (off), wipe dry (to become dry)
erguer	to erect, build, raise, lift (up)
erigir	to erect, build, found
esconder	to hide
escovar	to brush, scrub
escrever	to write
esforçar(-se por / em)	to strengthen, invigorate (to make an effort to)
esfriar	to (become) cool
especializar(-se em)	to designate especially (to specialize in)
esperar (por)	to wait (for), await; to hope
espernear	to kick one's legs
esquecer(-se de)	to forget
estabelecer	to establish
estar	to be [temporary / transitory]; to look [appear]; to feel [ill, etc.]
estimular	to stimulate
estudar	to study
evitar	to avoid

exaurir	to exhaust
exaustar	to exhaust
excitar	to excite
excluir	to exclude
exigir	to demand, require
existir	to exist
expelir	to expel
expressar	to express
exprimir	to express
expulsar	to expel
exsicar	to exsiccate, desiccate, dry (up)
extinguir	to extinguish
extrair	to extract
falar	to speak
falecer	to die; to be insufficient / lacking in
fartar(-se de)	to (become) sate(d), satiate(d)
	(to gorge oneself, become sick / tired of)
fazer(-se)	to do, make (to become, change / turn into)
ferir	to wound, injure, hurt, harm
fiar	to spin [thread]
ficar (em)	to become, get [ill, etc.]; to (still) be, remain, stay (in / at)
ficar com	to keep [in one's possession]
finalizar	to finalize
findar	to finish, end, die
fingir	to pretend
fixar	to fix, rivet [attention / eyes, etc.]; to fasten, attach; to set
florescer	to flourish, bloom, blossom, thrive
fluir	to flow
folhear	to foliate; to leaf through, skim [book, etc.]
forçar (a)	to force... (to...)
fornecer	to furnish, supply
frequentar	to frequent, attend [class, etc.]
frigir	to fry
fritar	to fry
fugir	to flee
fumar	to smoke
funcionar	to function, work [thing]
ganhar	to gain, win, earn
gastar	to spend
gemer	to moan, groan, wail
gerir	to administer, direct
glorificar	to glorify
gostar (de)	to like, love
gravar	to record
guarnecer	to garnish; to furnish, equip, garrison

guiar	to guide, direct; to drive [vehicle]
haver	there to be [to exist]
haver (+ past participle)	to have (+ past participle)
haver de (+ infinitive)	to have to, must [do something]
haver que (+ infinitive)	one + to have to, must [do something]
hesitar (em)	to hesitate (to / in)
hidratar	to hydrate
idealizar	to idealize
iluminar	to illuminate
ilustrar	to illustrate
imergir	to immerse
impedir	to impede, hinder, prevent from
impor	to impose
importar(-se com)	to import; to be important, matter (to take notice of, care about)
imprimir	to print
incendiar(-se)	to set on (catch) fire
inchar	to swell
incluir	to include
indignar(-se de)	to cause indignation (to become indignant about / over)
induzir	to induce
infe(c)tar	to infect
inferir	to infer
influir (em)	to (have) influence (on); to flow (in)
ingerir	to ingest
iniciar	to initiate, start
injetar	to inject
inscrever(-se em)	to inscribe (to matriculate, enroll [oneself] in)
inserir	to insert
insistir (em)	to insist (on)
instigar	to instigate, start
instruir	to instruct, teach
interessar(-se por / em)	to (be of) interest (to be interested in)
interferir	to interfere
interrogar	to interrogate
interromper	to interrupt
introduzir	to introduce
investigar	to investigate
investir	to invest
ir	to go
isentar	to exempt
jantar	to eat dinner, dine
jazer	to lie, rest [also in grave, etc.]
jogar	to play [game / cards, etc.], gamble; to throw
julgar	to judge, think
juntar	to join, put together

laborar	to labor
lamentar(-se de)	to lament, regret, be sorry (to complain about)
lavar	to wash
legislar	to legislate
lembrar(-se de)	to remind (to remember)
ler	to read
levantar(-se)	to raise (to get up)
levar	to take (away), carry, transport
libertar	to liberate, (set) free
ligar (para)	to turn on [appliance], connect, fasten (to telephone, call)
limpar	to clean
luar	to shine [moon]
lutar (por)	to fight (for)
luzir	to shine, emit light
magnificar	to magnify
mandar	to command, order, lead, rule; to send, forward, ship, mail
manifestar	to manifest
manter	to maintain, sustain, support [financially / morally]
matar	to kill
mediar	to mediate
medir	to measure
meditar	to meditate
mentir	to lie
merecer	to merit, deserve
meter(-se a)	to put, place, insert (to involve oneself in, set out to)
mexer	to mix (up), move, disturb
miar	to meow
moer	to mill, grind
morar (em)	to reside, live (in / at)
morrer	to die
mostrar	to show, display
mover	to move, set in motion
mudar(-se)	to move, remove, modify, alter, mutate (to move elsewhere, change one's residence)
murchar	to wilt, fade, shrivel
nacionalizar	to nationalize
nascer	to be born
negar(-se a)	to negate, deny, refuse (to)
negociar	to negotiate
nevar	to snow
nomear	to nominate, appoint
obedecer	to obey
obrigar (a)	to oblige, obligate... (to...)
ocorrer	to occur, happen
ocultar	to occult, obscure, conceal, hide

ocupar(-se de)	to occupy (to be occupied / busy with)
ocupar-se com	to look after, see to
odiar	to hate, detest
oferecer	to offer
olhar (para)	to look (at)
omitir	to omit
opor(-se a)	to (be) oppose(d) (to)
optar	to opt, choose
ouvir	to hear
pagar	to pay
parar (*de* + infinitive)	to stop, cease (+ present participle)
parecer(-se com)	to appear, seem (to look like, resemble)
participar (em / de)	to participate (in)
partir	to depart, leave [place]; to divide, crush, break (in[to] pieces)
passar (por)	to pass (to pass by; to pick up; to pass as / for [appear to be])
passar bem / mal	to have a good / bad time
passar-se com	to happen to / with
passear(-se)	to take a walk
pedir	to ask for, request, order [something]
pegar	to get, pick up; to catch, transmit [illness, etc.]
pelar	to peel, skin, husk, remove hair from
pensar (em)	to think (of / about)
pentear(-se)	to comb [one's hair]
perceber	to perceive, detect, sense, notice, understand
perder	to lose
perguntar (por)	to ask question (to ask for / about, inquire about)
permitir	to permit
perseguir	to persecute, pursue
persistir (em)	to persist (in)
persuadir (a)	to persuade... (to...)
persuadir-se de	to be persuaded / convinced of
pertencer	to belong; to pertain, concern
pesar	to weigh
pintar	to paint
poder (+ infinitive)	to be able (+ infinitive)
poluir	to pollute
pôr	to put, place
pospor	to place after; to postpone, defer
possuir	to possess
poupar	to save [money]
precisar (+ infinitive)	to need (+ infinitive)
precisar de (+ noun)	to need [something / someone]
predizer	to predict, foretell, prophesy
preencher	to fill in [form, etc.]
preferir	to prefer

pregar	to preach, lecture; to nail, fasten, attach, affix
premiar	to award [prize]
prender	to apprehend, seize, arrest; to fasten, attach
preocupar(-se com)	to (be) preoccupy (preoccupied), worry (worried), concern(ed) (about)
preparar(-se para)	to prepare (to get ready to)
pressentir	to have a presentiment, predict, suspect
pretender	to intend, aspire to
prevenir	to prevent; to (fore)warn
prever	to foresee, anticipate
principiar (por)	to begin (by)
produzir	to produce
proferir	to proffer, offer [something intangible]; to declare [decree, etc.], deliver [speech, etc.]
progredir	to progress
proibir	to prohibit
prolongar	to prolong
prometer	to promise
promover	to promote
prosseguir	to prosecute, pursue; to proceed
proteger	to protect
puxar	to pull
quebrar	to break, fragment
queixar-se (de)	to complain (about)
querer	to want, wish, desire
rasgar	to tear (up), rip
reabilitar	to rehabilitate
reabrir	to reopen
reagir	to react
realizar(-se)	to achieve, accomplish (to take place, happen)
recair	to fall back / again, relapse
recear(-se de)	to fear, dread, be apprehensive (about)
receber	to receive
receitar	to prescribe
rechear	to stuff [poultry, etc.], fill, add a filling
recitar	to recite
reclamar (de)	to complain (about)
recluir	to seclude
recobrir	to re-cover, cover again
recomendar	to recommend
reconhecer	to recognize
recusar(-se a)	to reject, deny, refuse (to)
redizer	to say over and over, repeat
reduzir	to reduce
refazer(-se)	to redo, remake, repair, fix (to recover, rally)

referir(-se a)	to refer, relate, allude (to)
refletir	to reflect
refluir	to flow back, ebb, recede
regist(r)ar	to register
regressar	to return
relampejar	to lighten [lightning]
remediar	to remedy
repelir	to repel
repetir	to repeat
repor(-se)	to replace, (be) restore(d)
reproduzir	to reproduce
reprovar	to reprove, disapprove, reproach; to fail, flunk [course / exam]
requerer	to require
reservar	to reserve
resignar(-se a)	to (be) resign(ed) (to)
resistir(-se a)	to resist
resolver(-se a)	to resolve, decide (to)
respeitar	to respect
respirar	to breathe
ressentir(-se de)	to resent (to be resentful about / over)
reter	to retain, keep, hold
rever	to review, see again, examine, check, proofread
revestir(-se de)	to dress in, put on; to overlay, plate (to be marked by)
revir	to return, come back
rir(-se de)	to laugh (at)
rodear	to surround, encircle
roer	to gnaw, corrode, erode
rogar	to pray, beg, plead, entreat, implore
romper (com)	to break (up with)
roubar	to rob, steal
saber	to know [thing]
saber (+ infinitive)	to know how (+ infinitive)
saborear	to savor
sacudir	to shake
sair (de)	to depart, leave [place], exit
salvar	to save [person / thing]
satisfazer	to satisfy
secar	to dry
seduzir	to seduce
seguir	to follow, continue
segurar	to secure
selecionar	to select
semear	to seed, sow, plant
sentar(-se)	to seat (to sit down)
sentir(-se)	to feel; to feel / be sorry

ser	to be [permanent / inherent]
servir	to serve
sofrer	to suffer
soltar	to loosen, release, let go
sonhar (com)	to dream (about)
sorrir (para)	to smile (at)
sotopor	to put / place beneath / under / below; to postpone, defer
suar	to sweat
subir (em)	to go up (to get on / in [vehicle])
submergir	to submerge
subtrair	to subtract
sugerir	to suggest
suicidar-se	to commit suicide
sujeitar	to subject
sumir	to vanish, disappear
supor	to suppose
suportar	to support, bear, uphold; to put up with, tolerate
suprimir	to suppress
surpreender	to surprise
suspeitar	to suspect; to distrust, mistrust
suspender	to suspend
suspirar (por)	to sigh (to long for)
sustentar	to sustain, maintain, support
suster	to sustain, support
tardar (em)	to take...[one's time] in / to, linger, (be) delay(ed)
tecer	to weave, spin
teimar (em)	to insist (on), be stubborn (about)
telefonar (para)	to telephone, call
temer	to fear, dread
temperar	to season, flavor
ter	to have, possess, own; to be, feel [ill, etc.]; there to be [to exist]
ter (+ past participle)	to have (+ past participle)
ter de (+ infinitive)	to have to, must [do something]
ter que (+ infinitive)	to have to, must [do something]
terminar	to terminate, finish, end
tingir	to tint, dye
tirar	to take (out / off / away), remove; to throw; to pull
tocar	to touch; to play [instrument]
tomar	to grasp; to take [medicine, etc.]; to eat, drink
torcer (por)	to twist (to root for)
tornar(-se)	to return; to change, transform (to become, change / turn into)
tornar a (+ infinitive)	to...again
tossir	to cough
trabalhar	to work [person]

traduzir	to translate
trair	to betray
transcrever	to transcribe
transferir	to transfer
transpirar	to sweat
tratar(-se de)	to treat, be about, deal with, concern
trazer	to bring
tropeçar (em)	to trip, stumble (over)
trovejar	to thunder
untar	to anoint; to grease, oil
usar	to use
vacilar (em)	to vacillate (in), hesitate (to / in)
vagar	to vacate, become vacant; to roam, wander, drift, rove
vaguear	to wander, rove, roam, ramble, stroll; to loiter, loaf
valer	to be worth(y)
varrer	to sweep
vencer	to vanquish, conquer, triumph, defeat, overcome
vender	to sell
ventar	to be windy
ver	to see
vestir(-se)	to (get) dress(ed)
viajar	to travel
vingar(-se de)	to avenge, take / wreak vengeance (on)
vir	to come
viver	to live, be alive
voar	to fly
voltar	to return
voltar a (+ infinitive)	to...again

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

WORKS CONSULTED

REFERENCE WORKS

Acordo ortográfico: Guia prático. Porto: Porto Editora, 2008.

Azevedo, Milton M. *Portuguese: A Linguistic Introduction.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Bergström, Magnus, and Neves Reis. *Prontuário ortográfico e Guia da língua portuguesa.* Lisbon: Editorial Notícias, 1997.

Butt, John, and Carmen Benjamin. *A New Reference Grammar of Modern Spanish.* London: Edward Arnold, 1988.

Camara, J. Mattoso, Jr. *The Portuguese Language.* Trans. Anthony J. Naro. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1972.

Castagnaro, R. Anthony. *A Portuguese Primer.* New York: Peter Lang, 1989.

Cunha, Celso, and Lindley Cintra. *Nova gramática do Português contemporâneo.* 2nd ed. Rio de Janeiro: Nova Fronteira, 1985.

Garcia, Frederick C. H. *A Handbook of Portuguese Grammar.* West Point NY: U.S. Military Academy, 1983.

Hartmann, R. R. K., and F. C. Stork. *Dictionary of Language and Linguistics.* London: Applied Science Publishers, 1976.

Hutchinson, Amélia, and Janet Lloyd. *Portuguese: An Essential Grammar.* London: Routledge, 1996.

Masip, Vicente. *Gramática de Português como língua estrangeira: Fonologia, ortografia e morfossintaxe.* São Paulo: Editora Pedagógica e Universitária (EPU), 2000.

Mateus, Maria Helena, and Ernesto d'Andrade. *The Phonology of Portuguese.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Menéndez Pidal, Ramón. *Manual de gramática histórica española.* 11th ed. Madrid: Espasa-Calpe, 1962.

Pei, Mario A., and Frank Gaynor. *A Dictionary of Linguistics.* New York: Philosophical Library, 1954.

Perini, Mário A. *Modern Portuguese: A Reference Grammar.* New Haven: Yale University Press, 2002.

Portal da Língua Portuguesa. *Acordo Ortográfico de 1990.* www.portaldalinguaportuguesa.org/index.php?action=acordo&version=1990

———. *Nomenclatura Gramatical Brasileira.* www.portaldalinguaportuguesa.org/?action=ngbras

———. *Nomenclatura Gramatical Portuguesa.* www.portaldalinguaportuguesa.org/?action=nomenclatura

———. *Vocabulário de Mudança.* www.portaldalinguaportuguesa.org/index.php?action=novoacordo&act=list&version=all

Quilis, Antonio, and Joseph A. Fernández. *Curso de fonética y fonología españolas para estudiantes angloamericanos.* Madrid: CSIC, 1964.

Solé, Yolanda, and Carlos Solé. *Modern Spanish Syntax: A Study in Contrast.* Lexington MA: D. C. Heath, 1977.

Thomas, Earl W. *The Syntax of Spoken Brazilian Portuguese.* Nashville: Vanderbilt University Press, 1969.

Tyson-Ward, Sue. *Portuguese: Verbs and Essentials of Grammar.* Chicago: NTC / Contemporary Publishing Group, 1997.

Ulsh, Jack L. *From Spanish to Portuguese.* Washington DC: Dept. of State, Foreign Service Institute, 1971.

Vázquez Cuesta, Pilar, and Maria Albertina Mendes da Luz. *Gramática portuguesa.* 3rd ed. 2 vols. Madrid: Gredos, 1987.

Ventura, Helena, and Manuela Caseiro. *Guia prático de verbos com preposições.* Lisbon: LIDEL, 1996.

TEXTBOOKS

Abreu, Maria Isabel, and Cléa Rameh. *Português contemporâneo.* 2 vols. Washington DC: Georgetown University Press, 1972–73.

Coudry, Pierre, and Elizabeth Fontão. *Fala Brasil!* Campinas SP: Pontes Editores, 1997.

Garcia, Frederick C. H. *Brasília.* 2 vols. West Point NY: U.S. Military Academy, 1983.

King, Larry D., and Margarita Suñor. *Para a Frente! An Intermediate Course in Portuguese.* Newark DE: LinguaText, 1991.

Klobucka, Anna, et. al. *Ponto de Encontro: Portuguese as a World Language.* Upper Saddle River NJ: Prentice Hall, Pearson Education, 2007.

Lathrop, Tom, and Eduardo M. Dias. *Brasil! Língua e cultura.* Newark DE: LinguaText, 2002.

———. *Portugal! Língua e cultura*. Newark DE: LinguaText, 1995.

Leroy, Claude E., et al. *Português para principiantes.* Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1993.

Lima, Emma Eberlein, and Samira Abirad Iunes. *Falar...Ler...Escrever...Português: Um curso para estrangeiros.* São Paulo: Editora Pedagógica e Universitária (EPU), 1999.

Marchant, Elizabeth. *Português para estrangeiros.* Porto Alegre: Editora Sulina, 1979.

Matos, Márcia, and Sara Neto-Kalife. *Bom Dia! Portuguese Language Textbook.* Levels 1–2. New Bedford MA: Spinner Publications, 2004, 2008.

Matos, Maria de Fátima Braga de. *Portuguesíssimo.* Porto: Porto Editora, 2000.

Ponce, Maria Harumi Otuki de, et. al. *Bem-Vindo! A língua portuguesa no mundo da comunicação.* São Paulo: Special Book Services (SBS), 2006.

———. *Tudo Bem? Português para a nova geração.* 2 vols. São Paulo: Special Book Services (SBS), 2005.

Rodrigues, Fernando José, and Peter Humphreys. *Falar é Aprender: Português para estrangeiros.* Porto: Porto Editora, 2000.

Rosa, Leonel Melo. *Vamos lá começar: Explicações e exercícios de gramática: Nível elementar.* Lisbon: LIDEL, 2002.

———. *Vamos lá continuar: Explicações e exercícios de gramática: Nível intermédio e avançado.* Lisbon: LIDEL, 1998.

Simões, Antônio R. M. *Com Licença! Brazilian Portuguese for Speakers of Spanish*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1992.

———. *Pois Não: Brazilian Portuguese Course for Spanish Speakers, with Basic Reference Grammar*. Austin: University of Texas Press, 2008.

Slade, Rejane de Oliveira. *Português básico para estrangeiros.* 2nd ed. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1999.

Tolman, Jon, John B. Jensen, et al. *Travessia.* 2 vols. Washington DC: Georgetown University Press, 1988–89.

INDEX OF TOPICS

Accent marks xvii, xxv, xxxii–xxxiii, 2, 22–23, 25–28
Accentuation 25–28
Active voice xxv, 98, 147, 148–150
Address, forms of 88
Adjectives 57–66, 68–70
    abbreviated forms 57
    cognate patterns 40–45, 47
    demonstratives 103–106, 139
        contractions 106, 121n7, 277, 278
    gender xxvi, 57, 62–67
    number / plural xxvii, 57, 58–61
    past participles (used as) 144–145, 147
    placement 68
    possessives 100–102, 103, 275, 277
Adverbs and adverb phrases 75–76, 103, 289–296
    cognate patterns 47
Affirmative words 117–119, 281
Alphabet 12–15
Arithmetical operations 74
Articles (definite / indefinite) 54–56, 64n6, 65, 68, 81, 101, 138, 139
    contractions 56, 278
Augmentatives 59n2, 70
Capitalization 20
Cardinal numbers: see *Numbers*
Clauses, subordinate (see also specific tenses) xxv, xxx
    indicative clauses 151
        adjective clauses 201–202
        adverb clauses 203–206
        conditional clauses 208
        noun clauses 197, 198n3, 199nn2–3, 200n4, 220
    interrogative clauses 113–116
    nonrestrictive (adjective) clauses xxvii, 108n2, 109n1
    relative clauses 107–112
    replaced by personal infinitives 124, 140–141
    restrictive (adjective) clauses xxix, 108n2
    subjunctive clauses 184–185, 197–209
        adjective clauses 184–185, 201–202
        adverb clauses 184–185, 203–206
        conditional clauses 176, 180, 183, 207–208
        noun clauses 184–185, 197–200, 220
    with subordinating conjunctions 133–134, 197–208

Cognates xxv, 29–52
compared / contrasted regarding:
conjugations 38
gender 67
letters used to transcribe sounds 31–38
prefixes 39
sounds 31–38
stress 48
suffixes 40–47
true / partial / false cognates 49–52
Colors 60, 66
Command forms: see *Imperative mood*
Comparatives 77–80
comparisons of equality 77
comparisons of superiority / inferiority 64, 78–80, 284
Compound future 177
Compound past perfect indicative tense:
see *Past perfect indicative tense*
Compound tenses / forms (see also specific tenses / forms) 146, 228, 268
Conditional perfect tense 174, 183, 207n2
Conditional sentences xxv, 176, 180, 183, 207–208
Conditional tense 179–182
forms 179, 259
placement of object pronouns with 93n3, 180
uses 165, 180–182, 207n2
Conjunctions (coordinating / subordinating) 132–134, 141
with subordinate clauses 197–208
Consonants 8–10, 16–19, 32–37
Contractions of:
demonstratives / prepositions with *outro* 121nn6–7, 277
direct with indirect object pronouns 276
prepositions with articles 56, 278
prepositions with demonstratives 106, 277, 278
prepositions with prepositional (object) pronouns 89, 278
Demonstrative adjectives / pronouns 68, 103–106, 139
contractions 106, 121n7, 277, 278
Diacritical marks xvii, xxv, xxxii–xxxiii, 2, 22–23, 25–28
Diminutives 5, 6, 69
Diphthongs xxv, 4, 26n2
nasal diphthongs 5, 6, 7, 16–19, 22, 31
oral diphthongs 4, 7, 37, 58
Direct object pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Discourse (direct / indirect) 180n3

English (compared / contrasted with Portuguese):
cognate patterns 30–47, 49–52
letters used to transcribe sounds 12–15, 31–36
prefixes 39
sounds 2, 8–10, 31–36
suffixes 40–47
Expressions, impersonal 140, 197, 199, 220
Expressions of time 229–231
Expressions that require subjunctive 272–274
Forms of address 88
Fractions 74
Future indicative tense 175–177
compound future 177
forms 175, 258
placement of object pronouns with 93n3, 176
uses 160, 176–177, 180n3, 218
Future perfect indicative tense 178
Future perfect subjunctive tense 185, 196
Future subjunctive tense 194–195
forms 137n2, 194–195, 263
uses 176, 185, 195, 196, 202, 204n1, 205nn2–3, 206–207

Gender: see under *Adjectives / Cognates / Nouns*
Gerunds 211nn1–2
Glides: see *Semivowels*
Grammatical categories: see specific categories
Hiatus xxvi, 4, 6, 26n2
Homographs xxvi, 3, 23
Hyphenation xxxiv–xxxv
Imperative mood xxvii, 214–219
corresponding to subject pronoun(s):
nós 136, 217, 218, 270
o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s) 136, 216, 217
tu 136, 214–215, 270
você(s) 136, 214, 216, 217, 270
vós 136, 215
future indicative tense (used as) 176, 218
imperatives (charts) 270–271
impersonal infinitive (used as) 139, 218
indirect commands 184, 218
phonetic changes with direct object pronouns 93, 218
placement of object pronouns with 92, 218
"softened" commands 219

Imperfect indicative tense 162–165
forms 162–163, 254
uses 164–165, 181, 207n2
vs. preterite indicative tense 170–171
Imperfect subjunctive tense: see *Past subjunctive tense*
Impersonal expressions 140, 197, 199, 220
Impersonal verbs 220
Indefinite words 117–123, 282–283
with adjective clauses 201–202
Indicative clauses: see under *Clauses, subordinate*
Indicative mood (see also specific tenses) xxvii, 151–183
vs. subjunctive mood 184, 197–208
Indirect object pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Infinitives 124, 137–142, 197, 210, 211
compound infinitives 142
conjugated infinitives: see *personal infinitives* below
impersonal infinitives 136, 137–140, 184, 218
inflected infinitives: see *personal infinitives* below
personal infinitives 137–138, 140–142, 194n1, 198n2, 199n1, 203n1, 220, 264
Interrogative words 68, 113–116, 280
Letters (orth.) xxxiii, 8–10, 12–20, 31–38, 62
capital letters 20
syllables / word division 24, 25–28
Markers (see also specific linguistic categories) xxvi
Multiples (numeric) 74
Nasal: see under *Diphthongs / Vowels*
Negative words 117–119, 281
with adjective clauses 201–202
Nominalization xxvii, 54, 57, 101, 147
Nonrestrictive clauses: see under *Clauses, subordinate*
Nouns 58–70
cognate patterns 40–46
gender xxvi, 62–67
number / plural xxvii, 58–61
placement of adjectives with 68
Number (gram.): see under *Adjectives / Nouns / Verbs*
Numbers 62, 66, 71–74, 79
Numerals 71–74
Object pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Oral: see under *Diphthongs / Vowels*
Ordinal numbers: see *Numbers*
Orthographic reforms xxxii–xxxv
Orthography: see *Writing system*

Oxytones xxviii, 28
Paroxytones xxviii, 27
Participles: see *Past participles / Present participles*
Passive voice xxviii, 144, 147, 148–150
    reflexive passive 98, 150
    "true" passive 98, 144–145, 147, 148–150
Past participles 143–147
    forms 143–145, 265–267
    in "absolute" participial phrases 147
    in compound tenses / forms 146, 228, 268
    in "true" passive voice 98, 147, 148–150
Past perfect indicative tense 172–174
    compound past perfect indicative tense: forms 173
    simple past perfect indicative tense: forms 172–173, 257
    uses 174, 183, 207n2
Past perfect subjunctive tense 183, 185, 193, 207–208
Past subjunctive tense 191–192
    forms 191–192, 262
    uses 180, 185, 190n1, 192, 193, 198–200, 202, 204–209
Patronymics 88n2
Perfect tenses / forms: see *Compound tenses / forms*
Personal pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Phonetic symbols xviii–xix
Pluperfect indicative tense: see *Past perfect indicative tense*
Pluperfect subjunctive tense: see *Past perfect subjunctive tense*
Plural: see under *Adjectives / Nouns / Verbs*
Possessive adjectives / pronouns 100–102, 103, 275, 277
Prefixes 39
Prepositional phrases xxix, 61, 102, 124
Prepositional (object) pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Prepositions (see also specific prepositions) 124–131, 141, 297–300
    contractions with:
        articles 56, 278
        demonstratives 106, 277, 278
        outro 121n6, 277
        prepositional (object) pronouns 89, 278
    placement 107, 113, 124
    used after specific verbs 99, 129–131
Present indicative tense 152–160
    forms 152–159, 249–253
    uses 160, 177

Present participles 138, 210–213, 269
compound present participles 213
"true" present participles 211n2
vs. gerunds 211nn1–2
Present perfect indicative tense 161
Present perfect subjunctive tense 185, 190
Present subjunctive tense 186–189
forms 186–189, 260–261
uses 185, 189, 190, 198–200, 202, 204–205, 206nn1–2, 209
Preterite imperfect indicative tense:
see *Imperfect indicative tense*
Preterite indicative tense 166–169
forms 166–168, 255–256
uses 169
vs. imperfect indicative tense 170–171
Preterite perfect indicative tense: see *Preterite indicative tense*
Probability (ways of expressing) 177, 178, 182, 183
Progressive tenses / forms xxix, 160n1, 164n1, 212–213, 269
Pronouns:
demonstratives 103–106, 139
contractions 106, 121n7, 277, 278
personal pronouns 84–99, 275
direct object pronouns 84, 90
contractions with indirect object pronouns 276
phonetic changes with verbs 93, 218
placement 92–94, 176, 180, 218
indirect object pronouns 84, 91
contractions with direct object pronouns 276
placement 92–94, 176, 180, 218
prepositional (object) pronouns 84, 89
contractions 89, 278
reflexive pronouns xxix, 84, 92, 95–99
subject pronouns 84, 85–87, 89, 90, 98, 100
corresponding imperatives 214–217
person / corresponding verb forms xxviii, 85, 86nn1–2, 135
possessives 100–102, 103, 275, 277
Proparoxytones xxix, 26
Punctuation marks 21
Reflexive passive 98, 150
Reflexive pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Reflexive verbs xxix, 99
Relative clauses: see under *Clauses, subordinate*
Relative words 68, 107–112, 113, 279

Restrictive clauses: see under *Clauses, subordinate*
Semivowels xxx, 4, 6
Sentences, conditional xxv, 176, 180, 183, 207–208
Simple future indicative tense: see *Future indicative tense*
Simple past perfect indicative tense:
see *Past perfect indicative tense*
Sound system (see also *Consonants / Diphthongs / Vowels*) 1–10
Spanish (compared / contrasted with Portuguese)
(see also the numerous *Notes to Spanish Speakers* throughout this book):
accentuation 26–28
cognate patterns 30–52
conjugations 38
gender 67
letters used to transcribe sounds 12–15, 31–38
past participles 143–145
prefixes 39
sounds 7, 8–10, 31–38
stress 48
suffixes 40–47
Stress (stressed syllables) xxx, 24–28, 48, 75, 82
Subject pronouns: see under *Pronouns*
Subjunctive clauses: see under *Clauses, subordinate*
Subjunctive mood (see also specific tenses) xxvii, 184–209
in common expressions 209
tense sequence 185, 198, 200, 202, 204–209
uses 176, 180, 183, 184–185, 197–209, 272–274
vs. indicative mood 184, 197–208
Subordinate clauses: see *Clauses, subordinate*
Suffixes 40–47
augmentative suffixes 70
diminutive suffixes 69
Superlatives 81–83
absolute superlatives (analytic / synthetic) 82–83, 285–288, 289
relative superlatives 68, 81, 284
Syllables 4, 6, 24, 25–28
Time, expressions of 229–231
Triphthongs 4n6, 6n4
Typographic symbols 21
Verbals (see also *Infinitives, Past participles, Present participles*) xxxi, 135–136

Verbs (see also specific moods / tenses / forms / verbs, as well as Verb List) 135–274
- charts 136, 235–274
- cognate patterns 47
- compound tenses / forms 146, 228, 268
- conjugations xxv, 38, 136
- corresponding prepositions 99, 129–131
- endings 135
- forms 136
- impersonal verbs 220
- moods xxvii, 135–136
- number / plural xxvii, 61, 135
- person / corresponding subject pronouns xxviii, 85, 86nn1–2, 135
- placement of object pronouns with 92–94, 176, 180, 218
- progressive tenses / forms xxix, 160n1, 164n1, 212–213, 269
- reflexive verbs xxix, 99
- tense sequence 185, 198, 200, 202, 204–209
- tenses xxx, 135–136
- verbals 135–136
- verbs of perception 138, 210
- verbs that require subjunctive 272–274
- verbs that take indirect object without direct object 221

Vowels 4, 10n1
- nasal vowels 5, 6, 16–19, 22, 31
- oral vowels 2–3, 4, 7, 16–19, 37–38

Word division 4, 24, 26n2

Words:
- affirmative words 117–119, 281
- indefinite words 117–123, 282–283
  - with adjective clauses 201–202
- interrogative words 68, 113–116, 280
- negative words 117–119, 281
  - with adjective clauses 201–202
- relative words 68, 107–112, 113, 279

Writing system 11–28

INDEX OF PORTUGUESE WORDS AND PHRASES[1]

a(s) (def. article) 54, 56
a(s) (dir. obj. pron.) 84, 90, 93
a (prep.) 91, 94, 96, 125, 126, 221, 297
    after specific verbs 129
    contracted with:
        definite articles 22, 56, 278
        demonstratives 106, 277, 278
    in comparisons of superiority / inferiority 80
    "personal *a*" 90n1
    vs. *para* 125, 126
    a fim de que 133, 141, 205
    a menos que / a não ser que 133, 205
    ao (before infinitives) 125
    às vezes 164
acabar 232
achar 198n3, 199
acolá 103
acreditar 198n3
aí 103
ainda 119, 132n2, 281
    ainda não 119, 169, 174, 281
    ainda que 133, 205
algo 118, 201, 281, 282
alguém 118, 201, 281, 282
algum (alguns) / alguma(s) 68, 118, 122, 201, 281, 282
    alguma coisa / pessoa 118, 201
    alguma vez 119, 281
    algumas vezes 119n3, 164
    de algum jeito / modo // de alguma forma / maneira 119, 281
    em algum lugar / em alguma parte 119, 281
algures 119, 281, 282
alhures 119n1, 282
ali 103
ambos 54, 121, 283
andar (in progressive tenses / forms) 213
ante 125, 297
antes 164
    antes que 134, 141, 205
antigamente 164
aonde 112, 115

---

[1] Not listed are references to irregular verb tenses and forms; see the Index of Topics for a particular tense / form, or the charts of irregular verbs (pp. 240–247) for a particular verb.

apesar de que 133, 141, 205
após 125, 297
aquele(s) / aquela(s) 103–106, 121n7, 277
aqui 103
aquilo 103–106, 123, 277
arroba (f) 21n4
assaz 120, 283
assim que 134, 206
até 125, 126, 297
    até quando 134, 204
    até que 134, 141, 204
atrás 229, 231
bastar 199, 220n4
    bastante 120, 283
bem 76, 80, 284
bilhão (m) 73
bom (bons) / boa(s) 66, 76, 80, 83, 284
bondade (ter a...de) 219
cá 103
cada 121, 123, 283
    cada vez mais / menos 121n3
casa (para...) 125, 126
caso 134, 141, 205n3
    no caso (de) que 134, 141, 205
causa (por...de) 116n1, 127
cem / cento 66, 73
    centena (f) 73
certo 68, 121, 283
    estar certo 198n3
chover 220
coisa (f):
    alguma / nenhuma coisa 118, 201
    qualquer coisa 118n3, 122n2
com 118, 125, 281, 297
    after specific verbs 129
    contracted with prepositional (object) pronouns 89, 278
como 298
    exclamation 115n1
    in comparisons of equality 77
    interrogative adverb 115, 280
    subordinating conjunction 134, 206
    como se 208
    tal como 122n5
    tanto / tão (pouco)...como 77

conforme 125, 297
conhecer 233, 234
preterite vs. imperfect indicative 171
vs. *saber* 233, 234
considerar 199
consoante 125, 297
contanto que 133, 205
contra 125, 297
contudo 132
convicto 144n3
convir 199, 220n4
crer 198n3, 199
cujo 112, 279
dado que 141
de 125, 297
after specific verbs 130
contracted with:
articles 56, 278
demonstratives 106, 277, 278
outro 121n6
prepositional (object) pronouns 89, 278
in comparisons of superiority / inferiority 78–79
in possessive prepositional phrases 102
in relative superlatives 81
with numbers 73, 74, 79
da (after specific hour) 125
de algum / nenhum jeito / modo 119, 281
de alguma / nenhuma forma / maneira 119, 281
de forma / jeito / maneira / modo que 133, 141, 204
de outro jeito / modo // de outra forma / maneira 119n2
de qualquer forma / jeito / maneira / modo 119n2
de todos jeitos / modos // de todas formas / maneiras 119n2
demais / de menos 79, 120, 282
do que: see under *que*
demasiado 120, 282
depois:
depois de 125
depois que 134, 141, 206
desde 126, 231, 297, 300
desde que 133, 134, 204
dever 177, 182, 219
devido (a) que 141
dezena (f) 73
diverso 121, 283

dividido por 74
dobro (m) 74
dois / duas 72
Dom / Dona 55, 88
duplo 74
durante 126, 297
e 73, 132
eis 159n5
ele(s) / ela(s) 84, 85, 89, 90, 102–103, 135
em 126, 297
    after specific verbs 131
    contracted with:
        articles 56, 278
        demonstratives 106, 277, 278
        outro 121n6
        prepositional (object) pronouns 89, 278
    em algum / nenhum lugar 119, 281
    em alguma / nenhuma parte 119, 281
    em outro lugar / em outra parte 119n1
    em qualquer lugar / parte 119n1
    em todo lugar / em toda (a) parte 119n1
    na semana passada // no mês / ano passado 169
    no caso (de) que 134, 141, 205
    no passado 164
embora 134, 205
enquanto 134, 164, 206
entre 89, 126, 297
    entre si 97
esse(s) / essa(s) 103–106, 121n7, 277
estar 144–145, 147, 220, 222, 224, 226, 227
    in progressive tenses / forms 212, 269
    vs. *ser* 222, 225
    estar certo 198n3
este(s) / esta(s) 103–106, 121n7, 277
eu 84, 85, 135
exce(p)to 89, 126, 297, 300
fa(c)to (pelo...[de] que) 141
favor:
    é favor (de) 218
    faz favor / fazer o favor de / por favor 219
fazer 220, 224
    in expressions of time 229–231
    faz favor / fazer o favor de 219
fêmea (f) 62, 65n1

ficar 144–145, 147, 223, 224, 226, 227
in progressive tenses / forms 213, 226
fim (a...de que) 133, 141, 205
forma (f):
de alguma / nenhuma forma 119, 281
de forma que 133, 141, 204
de outra / qualquer forma // de todas formas 119n2
frequentemente 164
a gente 85, 102
gentileza (ter a...de) 219
gostar 180, 221n3
grande 57, 68, 80, 83, 284
grão / grã 57
haver 33n2, 175, 179, 227–228
in compound tenses / forms 144–146, 228, 266–267, 268
(see also specific tenses / forms)
in expressions of time 229–231
haver de 177, 181, 228
haver que 228
igual a 74
inferior 80, 83
ínfimo 83
inteiro 123
ir 159n6, 177, 181
in progressive tenses / forms 213
vamos (in imperative) 217
isso 103–106, 123, 277
isto 103–106, 123, 277
já 119, 169, 174, 281
já não 119, 281
já que 133
jamais 119, 281
jeito (m):
de algum / nenhum jeito 119, 281
de jeito que 133, 141, 204
de outro / qualquer jeito // de todos jeitos 119n2
lá 103
lhe(s) 84, 90, 91
logo que 134, 206
lugar (m):
em algum / nenhum lugar 119, 281
em outro / qualquer / todo lugar 119n1
macho (m) 63

maior 57, 80, 81, 284
mor 57
mais 60, 66, 74, 80, 120, 282
in comparisons of superiority / inferiority 78–80, 284
in relative superlatives 81, 284
cada vez mais 121n3
demais / demasiado 79, 120, 282
jamais 119
mais...(do) que 78, 80
mais de 79
não...mais 119
quanto mais...mais 111n1
mal 76, 80, 284
maneira (f):
de alguma / nenhuma maneira 119, 281
de maneira que 133, 141, 204
de outra / qualquer maneira // de todas maneiras 119n2
mas 132
mau(s) / má(s) 66, 76, 80, 83, 284
máximo 83
me 84, 90, 91, 92n1, 95
mediante 126, 297
meia (used instead of *seis*) 72
meio (por...de) 126, 297
melhor 80, 81, 284
Menina / a menina 88n4
menor 80, 81, 284
menos 60, 66, 74, 80, 89, 120, 126, 282, 297
in comparisons of superiority / inferiority 78–80, 284
in relative superlatives 81, 284
a menos que 133, 205
cada vez menos 121n3
de menos 79, 120, 282
menos...(do) que 78, 80
menos de 79
quanto menos...menos 111n1
mesmo 68, 96, 97
mesmo que 133, 205
meu(s) / minha(s) 100–101, 103
mil 66, 73
milhar (m) 73
milhão (m) 73
mim 84, 89, 95
mínimo 83

modo (m):
de algum / nenhum modo 119, 281
de modo que 133, 141, 204
de outro / qualquer modo // de todos modos 119n2
mor 57
muito 76, 80, 120, 161, 282, 284
in absolute superlatives 82
muitas vezes 164
multiplicado por 74
mundo (todo...) 118n2, 123n3
mutuamente 97
(o) nada 118, 201, 281, 282
não 92, 117, 118, 218, 281
a não ser que 133, 205
ainda não 119, 169, 174, 281
já não 119, 281
não...mais 119
não obstante 132, 300
também não 119, 281
nem 118, 132, 281
nem que 133, 205
nem sempre 119, 281
nenhum (nenhuns) / nenhuma(s) 118, 201, 281, 282
de nenhum jeito / modo // de nenhuma forma / maneira 119, 281
em nenhum lugar / em nenhuma parte 119, 281
nenhuma coisa / pessoa 118, 201
nenhuma vez 119, 281
nenhures 119, 281, 282
nevar 220
ninguém 118, 201, 281, 282
nos 84, 90, 91, 92n1, 93, 95, 218
nós 84, 85, 89, 95, 102, 135, 136, 217, 218, 270
nosso 100–101, 103
nunca 119, 281
o(s) (def. article) 54, 56
o(s) (dir. obj. pron.) 84, 90, 93
o qual: see *qual*
o que: see *que*
obstante (não...) 132, 300
onde:
interrogative adverb 115, 280
relative adverb 112, 279
subordinating conjunction 134, 206

ótimo 83
ou 118, 132, 208, 281
    ou seja 209
outrem 121, 283
outro 121, 277, 283
    de outro jeito / modo // de outra forma / maneira 119n2
    em outro lugar / em outra parte 119n1
    um (uns) ao(s) outro(s) / uma(s) à(s) outra(s) 97
oxalá (que) 200
para 91, 94, 96, 125, 126, 297, 298
    after specific verbs 131
    contracted with definite articles 56n2
    contracted with prepositional (object) pronouns 89n5
    vs. *a* 125, 126
    vs. *por* 126–127, 128
    para que 126, 133, 141, 205
parecer 140, 199, 220
parte (f):
    em alguma / nenhuma parte 119, 281
    em outra / qualquer / toda (a) parte 119n1
passado:
    na semana passada // no mês / ano passado 169
    no passado 164
pensar 198n3
pequeno 80, 83, 284
perante 125, 297
péssimo 83
pessoa (f):
    alguma / nenhuma pessoa 118, 201
    qualquer pessoa 118n2, 122n2
pior 80, 81, 284
pobre 68
poder 219
    preterite vs. imperfect indicative 171
    poder ser 140, 199, 220
por 116n1, 127, 231, 297, 298
    after specific verbs 131
    contracted with definite articles 56
    in "true" passive voice 98, 148–150
    vs. *para* 126–127, 128

pelo fa(c)to (de) que 141
por...que (*mais / menos,* etc.) 205
por causa de 116n1, 127
por favor 219
por que / por quê 116, 127
porque 116n1, 133, 141
porquê (m) 116n1
pôr (and derived verbs) 136n1
porém 132
porque 116n1, 133, 141
porquê (m) 116n1
pouco 76, 80, 120, 282, 284
in absolute superlatives 82
in comparisons of equality 77n5
tampouco 119, 281
tão pouco...quanto / como 77n5
próprio 97
quádruplo 74
(o) qual (quais):
interrogative pronoun 115, 280
relative pronoun 108nn2–3, 109nn1–2, 111, 112, 279
qualquer (quaisquer) 122, 201, 283
de qualquer forma / jeito / maneira / modo 119n2
em qualquer lugar / parte 119n1
qualquer coisa 118n3, 122n2
qualquer pessoa 118n2, 122n2
quando:
interrogative adverb 115, 280
subordinating conjunction 134, 206, 208
até quando 134, 204
quanto:
exclamation 115n1, 120
in comparisons of equality 77
indefinite word 120, 283
interrogative pronoun / adverb 115, 280
relative pronoun / subordinating conjunction 111, 134, 206, 279
enquanto 134, 164, 206
quanto mais / menos...mais / menos 111n1
tanto / tão (pouco)...quanto 77
todo / tudo quanto 111, 123
quão 120n4, 283
quase 283

(o) que:
exclamation 114n3
in expressions of time 229–230
interrogative pronoun 114, 280
relative pronoun 108–110, 112, 279
subordinating conjunction 133, 141, 197, 199, 201, 218
(do) que (in comparisons of superiority / inferiority) 78, 80
por...que (*mais / menos,* etc.) 205
(pelo) que...saber 209
será que 177n2
tudo o que 123
(o) quê 114
quem:
interrogative pronoun 114, 280
relative pronoun 108, 110, 112, 279
quem quer 122, 201, 283
querer 180, 219
preterite vs. imperfect indicative 171
queira(m) (in "softened" commands) 219
quiçá 200
quíntuplo 74
recentemente 161
reciprocamente 97
repetidas vezes 161
ruim 6n2
saber 233
preterite vs. imperfect indicative 171
vs. *conhecer* 233, 234
(pelo) que...saber 209
salvo 89, 127, 297
Santo / São 57
se (refl. pron.) 84, 92n1, 95–98, 150
se (subordinating conj.) 134, 176, 180, 183, 207–208
como se 208
segundo 127, 297
sem 118, 127, 281, 297
sem que 133, 141, 205
sempre 119, 164, 281
nem sempre 119, 281
sempre que 133, 205, 206
senão 132n1
Senhor(es) / Senhora(s) // o(s) senhor(es) / a(s) senhora(s) 84, 85, 86, 88, 90, 102–103, 135, 136, 216, 217
Senhorita / a senhorita 88

ser 222–223, 226
in impersonal expressions 140, 199, 220
in "true" passive voice 98, 144–145, 147–150
vs. *estar* 222, 225
a não ser que 133, 205
é favor (de) 218
ou seja 209
poder ser 140, 199, 220
será que 177n2
seu(s) / sua(s) 100–103
Seu 55, 88
si 84, 89, 95
entre si 97
sim 118, 281
só / somente 66, 122, 289
sob 127, 297
sobre 127, 297, 298, 300
super (in absolute superlatives) 82n2
superior 80, 83
supremo 83
tal (tais) 122, 283
tal como 122n5
talvez 200
também / também não 119, 281
tampouco 119, 281
tanto:
in comparisons of equality 77
indefinite word / exclamation 120, 283
contanto que 133, 205
tanto...quanto / como 77
tão:
in comparisons of equality 77
indefinite word / exclamation 120n4, 283
tampouco 119, 281
tão...quanto / como 77
tão pouco...quanto / como 77n5
te 84, 90, 91, 92n1, 95
ter (and derived verbs) 23, 224, 226, 227–228
in compound tenses / forms 144–146, 228, 266–267, 268
(see also specific tenses / forms)
preterite vs. imperfect indicative 171
ter a bondade / gentileza de 219
ter de 177, 181, 228
ter que 177, 181, 228

terminar 232
teu(s) / tua(s) 100–101, 103
ti 84, 89, 95
todavia 132
todo 54, 68, 111, 121, 123, 201, 283
    de todos jeitos / modos // de todas formas / maneiras 119n2
    em todo lugar / em toda (a) parte 119n1
    todas as semanas // todos os dias / meses / anos 164
    todo mundo 118n2, 123n3
    todo quanto 111, 123
tomara que 200
triplo 74
tu 84, 85, 86, 135, 136, 214–215, 270
tudo 105, 111, 118n3, 123, 201, 283
    contudo 132
    tudo o que 123
    tudo quanto 111, 123
ultimamente 161
um (uns) / uma(s) 54, 56, 72, 118, 201, 282
    um (uns) ao(s) outro(s) / uma(s) à(s) outra(s) 97
único 68, 122, 283
unidade (f) 73
vário 121, 283
ventar 220
vez (f) 74
    alguma vez 119, 281
    algumas vezes 119n3, 164
    às vezes 164
    cada vez mais / menos 121n3
    muitas vezes 164
    nenhuma vez 119, 281
    repetidas vezes 161
    talvez 200
vir (and derived verbs) 23; 177nn1, 3; 181nn1–2
    in progressive tenses / forms 213
visto que 133
você(s) 84, 85, 86, 89n5, 90, 91, 100, 135, 136, 214, 216, 217, 270
vos 84, 90, 91, 95
vós 84, 85, 86, 89, 95, 135, 136, 215
vosso 100–101, 103
    Vossa Excelência 87, 100
    Vossa Mercê 86n2
    Vossa Senhoria 87, 100